Cell Engineering 8

Mohamed Al-Rubeai
Mariam Naciri *Editors*

Stem Cells and Cell Therapy

Springer

Cell Engineering

Mohamed Al-Rubeai • Mariam Naciri
Editors

Stem Cells and Cell Therapy

Volume 8

Springer

Editors
Mohamed Al-Rubeai
School of Chemical
and Bioprocess Engineering
University College Dublin
Dublin
Ireland

Mariam Naciri
School of Chemical
and Bioprocess Engineering
University College Dublin
Dublin
Ireland

Department of Biology
Faculty of Science
University of Mohammed V-Agdal
Rabat
Morocco

ISBN 978-94-007-7195-6 ISBN 978-94-007-7196-3 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-7196-3
Springer Dordrecht Heidelberg New York London

Library of Congress Control Number: 2013948876

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

Contents

Contributors

Mohamed Al-Rubeai School of Chemical and Bioprocess Engineering, University College Dublin, Dublin, Ireland

Paula M. Alves Animal Cell Technology Unit, Instituto de Biologia Experimental e Tecnológica (IBET), Oeiras, Portugal

Érica Sara Souza de Araújo National Laboratory for Embryonic Stem Cell Research (LaNCE), Department of Genetics and Evolutionary Biology, University of São Paulo, São Paulo, Brazil

Catarina Brito Animal Cell Technology Unit, Instituto de Biologia Experimental e Tecnológica (IBET), Oeiras, Portugal

Susan M. Browne School of Chemical and Bioprocess Engineering, and Conway Institute for Biomedical and Biomolecular Research, Dublin, Ireland

Joaquim M.S. Cabral Department of Bioengineering, Institute for Biotechnology and Bioengineering, Centre for Biological and Chemical Engineering, Instituto Superior Técnico, Technical University of Lisbon, Lisbon, Portugal

Cláudia Correia Animal Cell Technology Unit, Instituto de Biologia Experimental e Tecnológica (IBET), Oeiras, Portugal

Maria Margarida Diogo Department of Bioengineering, Institute for Biotechnology and Bioengineering, Centre for Biological and Chemical Engineering, Instituto Superior Técnico, Technical University of Lisbon, Lisbon, Portugal

Simone A.S. Fonseca National Laboratory for Embryonic Stem Cell Research (LaNCE), Department of Genetics and Evolutionary Biology, University of São Paulo, São Paulo, Brazil

Ana Maria Fraga National Laboratory for Embryonic Stem Cell Research (LaNCE), Department of Genetics and Evolutionary Biology, University of São Paulo, São Paulo, Brazil

Seung U. Kim Division of Neurology, Department of Medicine, UBC Hospital, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

Hong J. Lee Division of Neurology, Department of Medicine, UBC Hospital, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

Ruei-Zeng Lin Department of Cardiac Surgery, Boston Children's Hospital, Boston, MA, USA

Juan M. Melero-Martin Department of Cardiac Surgery, Boston Children's Hospital, Boston, MA, USA

Rafael Moreno-Luna Department of Cardiac Surgery, Boston Children's Hospital, Boston, MA, USA

Lygia V. Pereira National Laboratory for Embryonic Stem Cell Research (LaNCE), Department of Genetics and Evolutionary Biology, University of São Paulo, São Paulo, Brazil

Margarida Serra Animal Cell Technology Unit, Instituto de Biologia Experimental e Tecnológica (IBET), Oeiras, Portugal

Cláudia Lobato da Silva Department of Bioengineering, Institute for Biotechnology and Bioengineering, Centre for Biological and Chemical Engineering, Instituto Superior Técnico, Technical University of Lisbon, Lisbon, Portugal

Farlan S. Veraitch Department of Biochemical Engineering, University College London, London, UK

Naja Vergani National Laboratory for Embryonic Stem Cell Research (LaNCE), Department of Genetics and Evolutionary Biology, University of São Paulo, São Paulo, Brazil

Benjamin D. Weil Department of Biochemical Engineering, University College London, London, UK

Chapter 1
Use of Human Embryonic Stem Cells in Therapy

Ana Maria Fraga, Érica Sara Souza de Araújo, Naja Vergani, Simone A.S. Fonseca, and Lygia V. Pereira

Abstract Pluripotent stem cells (PSCs) are defined by their potential of unlimited self-renewal and the ability to differentiate – both *in vitro* and *in vivo* – into all cell types of endodermal, mesodermal and ectodermal origins, rendering them a promising applicability in cell replacement therapies. These characteristics also make PSCs powerful tools for studying the molecular mechanisms underlying cellular differentiation, as well as for accessing the biological effects of pharmaceutical compounds on the normal embryo development, and also on virtually any differentiated cell type. PSCs can be obtained from early stage embryos – usually from the inner cell mass of blastocysts – and adapted for propagation in culture in the laboratory, thus resulting in the establishment of an Embryonic Stem Cell (ESC) line. They can also be artificially obtained in the laboratory through the use of techniques that induce the reprogramming of somatic, differentiated cell types (i.e. dermal fibroblasts) into undifferentiated, pluripotent stem cells (Induced Pluripotent Stem Cells – iPSCs). In this chapter we discuss the potential advantages and disadvantages of the use of these two PSC types in regenerative medicine, and give an overview of the current status of cell therapy studies and clinical trials in humans. We also comment on a more recently developed alternative source of cells for use in therapy – the direct reprogrammed cells – and finally, we discuss the potential applications of PSCs and directly reprogrammed cells in drug screening assays.

Keywords Cell-based therapy • Regenerative medicine • Human embryonic stem cell • Pluripotent stem cell • Induced pluripotent stem cell

A.M. Fraga • É.S.S. de Araújo • N. Vergani • S.A.S. Fonseca • L.V. Pereira (✉)
National Laboratory for Embryonic Stem Cell Research (LaNCE),
Department of Genetics and Evolutionary Biology,
University of São Paulo, São Paulo, Brazil
e-mail: lpereira@usp.br

M. Al-Rubeai, M. Naciri (eds.), *Stem Cells and Cell Therapy*, Cell Engineering 8,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-7196-3_1,

1.1 Promises of Human ESCs in Cell Therapy

Stem cells have been obtained from distinct sources, and have differential potential to form the innumerous cell types from a multicellular organism. Adult Stem Cells (ASCs) obtained from different types of tissues (bone marrow, dental pulp, neural progenitor cells, umbilical cord blood, amniotic fluid cells, among others) can be differentiated into a variety of cell types. However, the range of differentiation properties of an adult cell is limited, and usually they can only form cell types from the same lineage as the original tissue (multipotent stem cells).

Adult stem cells have been extensively employed for cell-based therapy; several preclinical trials demonstrated that transplantation of autologous bone marrow cells or precursor cells improved cardiac function after myocardial infarction and in chronic coronary heart disease (reviewed in Strauer et al. 2009). In animal models of spinal cord injuries, ASCs provided sensorimotor benefits (reviewed in Thomas and Moon 2011). However, in the vast majority of the cases, positive results could not be reproduced by other laboratories, and, in such models, the mechanism(s) underlying the beneficial outcomes were not well understood. Functional recoveries could be attributed to cell fusion or the release of paracrine factors that could signal the neighboring cells either favoring differentiation (reviewed in Wollert and Drexler 2005) or protecting the cells from apoptosis (Kocher et al. 2001). Only in exceptional cases it has been shown that functional recovery causally depends on the survival and differentiation of the transplanted cells (reviewed in Thomas and Moon 2011).

Several clinical trials using ASCs have been conducted to treat heart diseases (reviewed in Menasche 2007; Meyer et al. 2006; Schuleri et al. 2007) diabetes (Jiang et al. 2011), spinal cord injury (Knoller et al. 2005; Callera and do Nascimento 2006; Lima et al. 2006; Moviglia et al. 2006; Yoon et al. 2007), neurological disorders (Heile and Brinker 2011; Titomanlio et al. 2011; Connick et al. 2012; Mazzini et al. 2012; Savitz 2012), hepatic and intestinal diseases (Burra et al. 2011), retinal injury (Stern and Temple 2011) and muscular dystrophies (Vilquin et al. 2011). In these trials, cells from many distinct origins were employed but, once again, temporary and/or modest improvements in health conditions indicated that the positive outcomes could not be attributed strictly to the differential properties of the injected cells, and anti-inflammatory, paracrine effects were also or mainly taking part in the healing process (Uccelli et al. 2011; Wang et al. 2012).

Human ESCs (hESCs) are derived from the inner cell mass (ICM) of developing blastocyst-stage embryos (Fig. 1.1), are capable of unlimited expansion *in vitro*, and can be maintained in culture indefinitely in their undifferentiated state. In appropriated culture conditions, these cells can spontaneously differentiate into cell types that are representative of the three germ layers: ectoderm, mesoderm and endoderm (reviewed in Trounson 2006). One important characteristic of hESC is their ability to generate teratomas when injected into immunocompromised mice; normally this type of assay is used to demonstrate the pluripotency capability of these cells.

Compared to ASCs, hESC are a more suitable source of cells for therapy since they have unquestioned differentiation potential. The constant interest in these cells can be clearly evidenced by the fact that, since the derivation of the first hESC lines

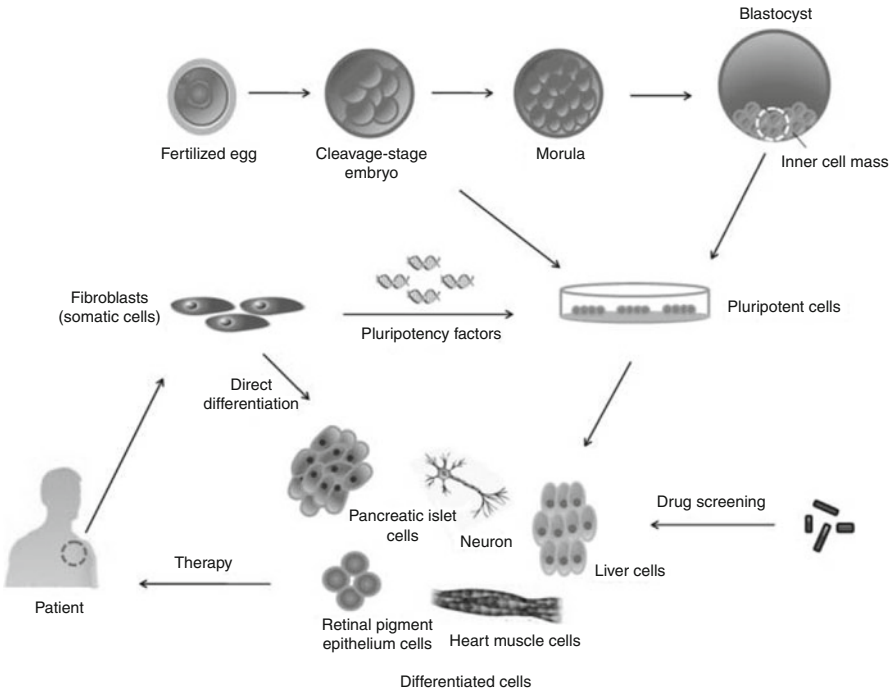


Fig. 1.1 Sources and applications of pluripotent stem cells (PSCs) in therapy and drug screening. Embryonic stem cells are derivated from blastomeres (cleavage-stage embryo) or from the inner cell mass of blastocysts. As an alternative source, PSCs can also be generated from somatic cells by inducing the expression of pluripotency factors. PSCs can be differentiated into the cell type of interest (neurons, pancreatic islet cells) and can be used in cell therapy or drug screening. Direct conversion of somatic cells avoids the reprogramming step to originate PSCs

in 1998 by Thomson's group, the number of different hESC lines registered on the stem cell databases rapidly increased, and more than 800 different hESC lines are now currently available (Fraga et al. 2011a).

Traditionally, the use of hESC in research and cell therapy was controversial due to political, religious and ethical implications about the use of human embryos. Part of the public opinion was against hESC research based on the argument that preimplantation embryos should share the same rights to life as any already-born person, regardless of being in a culture dish or in a woman's body (Hyun 2010). Additionally, there were also concerns about a possible commerce of embryos that could be generated when cell therapy would become a common practice. Nowadays, the ethical controversy over the origin and use of human embryos has been mostly overcome; generally, in permissive countries, surplus embryos from *in vitro* fertilization clinics are used for hESC derivation with parental informed consent. In countries like China and Belgium, that have even more permissive laws, it is also possible to derive new hESCs lines from embryos produced specifically for research purposes (Pennings 2003).

1.1.1 hESC Optimal Conditions for Derivation and Culture

In order to be able to use these cells in therapy, rigorous conditions must be followed during the derivation and culture maintenance of a pluripotent cell line. So far, it is not well established which would be the most effective method for the derivation of new hESC lines (Fraga et al. 2011a). However, thinking about their future application in cell-based therapy, the consensus is that the culture conditions for hESCs should be preferably defined and free of animal-derived contaminants.

The use of animal derived components in hESC cultures has became a major concern after the discovery of the potentially immunogenic nonhuman sialic acid, Neu5Gc, on hESC lines co-cultured with animal cells or in animal serum products (Martin et al. 2005). So, there is a continuous effort to establish non-animal (xeno-free) cellular supports (matrices), completely defined cell culture media, and proper cell culturing procedures (Unger et al. 2008). However, most of the currently available hESCs lines were not derived or maintained under these optimal conditions, as the methodologies employed for the establishment of the majority of these lines were traditionally developed based on mouse ESC (mESC) derivation protocols. It is important to note that the first clinical trial using hESCs for spinal cord injury is being conducted using a hESC line derived under the use of animal components in cell culture (Thomson et al. 1998); this hESC line was further adapted to xeno-free conditions before transplantation into patients, but even so the treatment must be considered as a xeno-transplantation.

Another aspect to consider is that the continuous propagation of PSCs in the laboratory could give rise to abnormal cell populations, as it could progressive select for cells that are most adapted to the employed culture conditions (Baker et al. 2007). It is well documented that the most frequent chromosomal aberrations found in long-term cultured hESC are gains of chromosomes 12 and 17 (Brimble et al. 2004; Baker et al. 2007; Draper et al. 2003). Other authors have also described the gain of one or more X chromosomes in these cell populations (Mitalipova et al. 2005; Ludwig et al. 2006). Recently, the International Stem Cell Initiative published the results from the analysis of 125 hESC lines, where the amplification of the 20q11.21 region was found in more than 20 % of the cell lines (International Stem Cell Initiative 2011). The same findings were previously reported by Lefort and coworkers (2008). The 20q11.21 region contains the *BCL2L1* gene, whose product is an inhibitor of apoptosis, and thus, a strong candidate for driving the adaptation of hESC lines in culture (International Stem Cell Initiative 2011).

1.1.2 hESC-Derived Differentiated Cells

In spite of the continuous improvements observed in the field, there are several distinct protocols available in the literature for the generation of specific differentiated

cell types from hESCs. The great majority of them require extensive manipulation in culture and the use of various reagents (Ramirez et al. 2010), which makes *in vitro* differentiation a laborious procedure. Additionally, many of the available differentiation protocols are not always reproducible, as significant culture-to-culture variability can be observed even when using identical conditions. For these reasons, several groups around the world are currently investing their efforts to develop low-cost, robust, scalable methods for the production of highly homogeneous populations of pre-differentiated and differentiated hESC-derived cells. Indeed, many improvements were achieved in this field in the past 10 years (Ilic et al. 2012; Krawetz and Rancourt 2012).

However, there are some cell types that are still difficult to obtain by current *in vitro* differentiation methodologies, such as pancreatic cells and germinative-derived cells. For instance, the challenge to produce pancreatic cells is due to the fact that they should be able to synthesize, store and acutely secrete insulin when exposed to glucose. Baetge's group developed *in vitro* endocrine cells from hESCs, and, when these cells were injected into mice, they demonstrated the ability to differentiate into glucose-responsive insulin-secreting pancreatic cells (D'Amour et al. 2006; Kroon et al. 2008). Although promising, others investigators failed to reproduce this protocol when using different hESC lines (Cho et al. 2008; Mfopou et al. 2010), and further studies become necessary.

1.1.3 Risk of Teratoma Formation

Perhaps the most important issue concerning hESC-based therapy is related to its clinical safety; more specifically, the intrinsic potential of pluripotent cells to originate teratomas or teratocarcinomas when injected into the patient. On the other hand, this adverse effect could be avoided by pre-differentiating these cells *in vitro* before using them in cell therapy procedures. However, the achievement of a completely homogeneous population of pre-differentiated cells in the laboratory is not such an easy task, as the presence of a small population of non-compromised cells in the material used for injection could potentially lead to the formation of teratomas or teratocarcinomas in the patient.

Nevertheless, preclinical trials have shown that hESC-derived pre-differentiated cells could be safely injected into allogeneic model organisms like rats, mice and guinea pigs without the emergence of teratomas (see Table 1.1), and this counts in favor of hESC-based therapies. On the other hand, Erdö and coworkers (2003) reported that, in animal stroke models, rats that received undifferentiated or differentiated mESCs did not develop tumors while mice did, which demonstrated that different outcomes can be observed in xeno- and homologous transplantations. Thus, extensive clinical trials must be performed with hESCs in order to exclude the possibility of tumor formation in humans.

Table 1.1 Preclinical studies using hESC-derivates in animal models

hESC-derived cell type	Animal	Model	Outcome	Reference
Oligodendrocyte progenitor cells	Rat	Cervical spinal cord injury	Attenuated lesion pathogenesis; improved recovery of forelimb function	Sharp et al. (2010)
	Rat	Spinal cord injury	Enhanced remyelination and improved locomotor ability	Keirstead et al. (2005)
	Mouse	Shiverer model of dysmyelination	Integration, differentiation into oligodendrocytes, and compact myelin formation	Nistor et al. (2005)
Dopaminergic neurons	Rat Mouse	Parkinson's disease	Functional recovery	Kriks et al. (2011)
	Rhsesus monkey		Engrafted cells, dopaminergic neurons survival	
Cardiomyocytes	Guinea pig	Intrinsic heart rate suppressed	Pacemaker activity of the hESC-derived cardiomyocytes	Xue et al. (2005)
	Mouse	Infarcted heart	Improved heart function	Kofidis et al. (2006)
	Rat		Stable cardiomyocyte grafts, attenuation of the remodeling process, and functional benefits	Caspi et al. (2007)
	Rat		Myocardial remuscularization, attenuated heart failure	Laflamme et al. (2007)
Retinal pigmented epithelium	Rat	Retinal degeneration	Improvement in visual performance; photoreceptor integrity for prolonged period	Lund et al. (2006), Lu et al. (2009)
	Mouse	Stargardt's disease	Increase in the visual acuity	Lu et al. (2009)
Keratinocytes	Mouse	Wound healing skin	Construction of a pluristratified epidermis	Guenou et al. (2009)
Osteogenic cells	Rat	Bone regeneration	Extensive bone formation	Kuznetsov et al. (2011)
Lung-epithelial lineage-specific cells	Mouse	Pulmonary fibrosis	Engraftment, reduced fibrosis and lung inflammation	Banerjee et al. (2012)

1.1.4 Preclinical Studies on hESC-Based Therapy

Transplanted organs and cells must find an appropriate environment to engraft, proliferate and successfully improve host's health. So far, results from preclinical studies using hESC-derivatives are exciting, and clinical trials for the treatment of several health conditions and diseases have been progressing (Table 1.1).

Keirstead and coworkers (2005) showed that oligodendrocytes progenitor cells (OPCs) generated from hESCs enhance remyelination and improve motor function after spinal cord injury at the thoracic level in rats. In 2010, Sharp and coworkers published another preclinical trial using OPCs and, this time, the improved recovery was seen in rats with cervical spinal cord injury.

Lu and colleagues (2009) conducted a preclinical study using retinal pigment epithelium cells from purified, spontaneously differentiated hESCs in murine models of macular degeneration. The injected cells were shown to survive more than 8 months without evidence of pathological consequences, and were also able to rescue visual functions.

Additionally, promising results were recently achieved using lung-epithelial lineage-specific cells derived from a hESC line (Banerjee et al. 2012). The authors reported that commercial media used in pulmonary cell culture could successfully induce differentiation of hESCs to a lung phenotype, and the addition of certain molecules in the culture medium could skew differentiation into various proportions of lung cell types. Most importantly, when transplanted into mice previously treated with bleomycin – a drug that causes lung fibrosis -, the hESC-derived pulmonary cells were shown to be able to reverse fibrosis. The authors concluded that transplanted cells may reduce fibrosis either directly by replacing fibrotic tissue or indirectly by paracrine secretion of factors that reduce the deposition of collagen and other components of the extracellular matrix, like laminin and fibronectin.

Woo and coworkers (2012) recently described that hepatocyte-like cells derived from hESCs contributed to the recovery of injured liver tissues in mice, not only by cell replacement but also by delivering trophic factors that support endogenous liver regeneration.

For cardiac regeneration, several reports provide exciting proof-of-principle studies and corroborate with the potential therapeutic use of hESC-derived cardiomyocytes. Laflamme and coworkers (2007) observed consistent formation of myocardial grafts when hESC-derived cardiomyocytes were injected into an infarcted rat model. In addition, infarcted mice transplanted with human cardiomyocytes also had good outcomes (Kofidis et al. 2006), and in guinea pig with suppressed intrinsic heart rates, hESC-derived cardiomyocytes acted as a pacemaker (Xue et al. 2005).

Nevertheless, it is important to note that although humans and mice share 99 % of their genes, it is challenging to correlate phenotypes and treatment responses between these organisms, since there is an intrinsic variation due evolutionary distances between species (Rosenthal and Brown 2007; Schofield et al. 2011). These findings point to a possible limitation in the use of preclinical data for an accurate evaluation of the efficacy of cell therapy in humans. In spite of preclinical

limitations, successful outcomes in animal models justify the implementation of clinical trials in humans. The aforementioned and other preclinical tests are listed in Table 1.1.

1.1.5 HLA Match

The very potent immune response towards foreign transplants occurs most frequently due to recognition of the graft foreign MHC proteins – encoded by the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) – by the T cells of the recipient (reviewed in Wood and Goto 2012).The required level of HLA matches differs among organs or tissues to be transplanted. For example, unrelated donor haemopoietic-cell transplantation requires a stricter matching of HLA (Fleischhauer et al. 2012), whereas liver transplant outcome has not been found to be improved by HLA matching (Muro et al. 2012).

In undifferentiated hESCs, only low levels of MHC-I are expressed, whereas spontaneous differentiation leads to a two to fourfold increase in MHC expression at the embryoid body stage, and a eight to tenfold at the teratoma stage. However, these levels are still lower if compared to the levels observed in somatic cells (Drukker et al. 2002). Currently, it is not clear whether the undifferentiated hESCs and their differentiated derivatives have immunogenic potential (reviewed in Kadereit and Trounson 2011). However, even if they prove to be immunogenic, therapeutic banks of hESC, capable of providing an HLA match for most potential patients, could be generated in order to overcome this issue.

Taylor and coworkers (2005) estimated that 150 hESC lines are needed to cover HLA matching in the UK population. Later studies reported similar results for Japanese (Nakajima et al. 2007) and Chinese (Lin et al. 2009) populations. In Korea, the 29 hESC lines evaluated were shown to be able to serve the most part of the population depending on the level of mismatch permitted (Lee et al. 2010).

It is also worth noting that, one of the implications of the use of supernumerary embryos for the establishment of new lines of hESC is the possible limited genetic diversity of these embryos, that may not attend the whole ethnic admixture of a given population. Some articles have described restricted HLA profiles and genetic backgrounds of the hESC lines established worldwide, which are mainly of European and East-Asian ethnicity (Snyder and Loring 2006; Mosher et al. 2010; Laurent et al. 2010; Fraga et al. 2011b). Thus, it will be important to obtain ethnically diverse embryos for the derivation of new hESC lines with distinct genetic backgrounds and different HLA types. In an HLA-compatibility context, hESC-derived dendritic cells (DCs), the most potent antigen presenting cells, could persuade the immune system of the patients subjected to cell therapy to tolerate allogeneic tissues differentiated from the same hESC line (Silk et al. 2011). This could prolong the acceptance of hESC-derivatives by the treated patient with minimal use of immunosuppressive drugs (Lui et al. 2009).

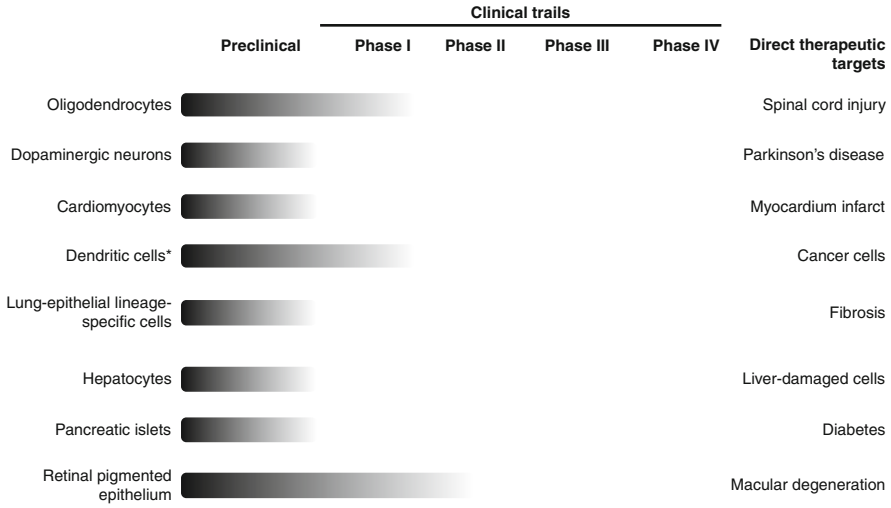


Fig. 1.2 Preclinical and clinical trials using hESCs as therapeutic agents in regenerative medicine. Differentiated cells generated from hESCs are listed on the *left*, and the current stage of the trials is represented by *soft-edges rectangles*. On the *right*, potential therapeutic targets of the hESC-derivated cells. *Dentritic cells are cited here for their potential use as vaccines in cancer treatment

1.1.6 hESC-Based Therapy: Clinical Trials

Until 2012, three health conditions were the main targets of hESC-based therapy trials: spinal cord injury, Stargardt's macular dystrophy and dry-age macular degeneration. In 2009, the American Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved the first clinical trial using hESC-derived cells, oligodendrocytes, by Geron Corporation. Patients with neurologically complete traumatic spinal cord injuries (between T3 and T11) received a single administration of oligodendrocyte progenitor cells (GRNOPC1) derived from a hESC line, 7–14 days post trauma. The results obtained in the Phase I safety study were presented recently at the "2011 American Congress of Rehabilitation Medicine": administered cells were well tolerated and did not cause any serious adverse effect (www.geron.com). Due to financial issues, in November 2011 Geron interrupted the trials, but the treated patients will be followed up for 15 years.

Advanced Cell Technology (Massachusetts, USA) started clinical studies for dry age-related macular degeneration and Stargardt's macular dystrophy in 2011. The non randomized, sequential, multi center safety and tolerability Phase I/II trial will serve to evaluate the effect of subretinal delivery of hESC-derived retinal pigmented epithelium cells in patients with macular degeneration. Preliminary results from two treated patients have been already reported: no tumor formation was detected during the 4-month follow up period (Schwartz et al. 2012).

Figure 1.2 shows the current scenario of preclinical and clinical trials using hESCs differentiated cells for therapeutic purposes. Most of the studies are still

preclinical and being conducted in animal models, and thus will require further investigation.

ViaCyte Inc is a preclinical therapeutic company focused on cell-based therapy for treatment of diabetes, based on the differentiation of stem cells into pancreatic beta cell precursors. The goal of this type of therapy is to abolish the dependence of insulin in Type I and II diabetes patients on a long term basis, reducing or eliminating hypoglycemia, microvasculature, and weight-related cardiovascular complications through the subcutaneous implantation of pancreatic beta cell precursors in an encapsulation device that protects transplanted cells from the host immune system (www.viacyte.com).

The company has already completed their first Phase I/II clinical trials (2005–2010) using multiple human pancreases isolated from compatible human organ donors. In these first trials, PEG (polyethilenoglicol)-Encapsulated Islet allografts were transplanted into the patients without the requirement of immunosuppressive drugs administration after the implant (Clinical Trials ID: NCT00260234). Currently, the company is developing insulin-producing cells from hESCs, and using in preclinical studies.

1.2 Human iPSC in Cell Therapy: Personalized Medicine

Induced Pluripotent Stem Cells (iPSCs) are generated by techniques that promote the de-differentiation of a somatic cell into a pluripotent state (Fig. 1.1). Besides pluripotency, they share many other features with ESCs, such as cell and colony morphology, unlimited capacity of proliferation, and the ability to form teratomas when injected in immunodepressed mice (Takahashi and Yamanaka 2006), rendering them a great potential for use in cell therapy. However, although iPSCs are very similar to ESCs, they are not identical. Induced PSCs show differences in gene expression and DNA methylation profiles, and present lower efficiencies to differentiate into some specific lineages when compared to ESCs (Chin et al. 2009; Deng et al. 2009; Feng et al. 2009).

Mouse iPSCs were first generated by Takahashi and Yamanaka (2006) through the exogenous expression – driven by retroviral vectors – of four transcription factors, Oct4, Sox2, Klf4 and c-Myc, in both mouse embryonic and adult fibroblasts.

One year after the publication of this work, the first human iPSC lines were established from human adult and fetal fibroblasts through the viral expression of two different sets of transcription factors, respectively: OCT3/4, SOX2, KLF4, c-MYC (Takahashi et al. 2007) and OCT3/4, SOX2, NANOG and LIN28 (Yu et al. 2007). Since then, many other somatic cell types have been proven to be able to undergo reprogramming, and different sets of distinct transcription factors – or even the use of a single one – have been shown to be effective in the generation of iPSC lines.

It is worth noting that both c-Myc and Klf4 are oncogenes, and thus, their use in reprogramming protocols renders to the iPSC a higher potential of tumor formation. In fact, mouse iPSC-derived chimeras have shown to develop tumors as a result of

the reactivation of c-Myc and Klf4 oncogenes (Okita et al. 2007; Markoulaki et al. 2009). Moreover, even if the viral transgenes have been show to undergo nearly complete silencing in the host cells after reprogramming (Yu et al. 2007), the use of retroviral/lentiviral vectors itself represents a higher risk of tumor formation, since the random integration of the viral genetic material into the host cell genome may alter the expression of endogenous genes, making the cells tumorigenic (Hochedlinger et al. 2005). Since the increased risk of tumor development represents a great concern in terms of cell therapy, in order to overcome this problem, many groups worldwide have been directing their efforts to generate human iPSCs without viral integration through the application of transient and/or non-integrative methodologies that use plasmids (Okita et al. 2008), episomal vectors (Yu et al. 2009), adenoviral vectors (Stadtfeld et al. 2008), and, more recently, mRNA (Bosnali and Edenhofer 2008; Kim et al. 2009; Zhou et al. 2009) and Sendai virus vector (Fusaki et al. 2009).

Similarly to hESC, the use of iPSC in cell therapy also confers a risk of teratoma formation if they are injected into the patient in an undifferentiated state. Thus, the *in vitro* pre-differentiation of the human iPSCs before their use in cell therapy is also a requirement. However, their use in regenerative medicine offers an advantage over hESCs in terms of the concern around the use of human embryos. Furthermore, since iPSCs can potentially be generated from any individual – and thus can be generated from somatic cells extracted from the person who is meant to undergo cell therapy – their use in regenerative medicine abolishes the risks of immune rejection. However, this could imply in the need of deriving a new iPSC line for each patient to be treated, turning iPSC-based cell therapy into a much more laborious and an expensive treatment. Although several cell-therapy studies using mouse iPSCs have already been conducted, no clinical trials employing human iPSCs have started yet.

1.3 Perspectives in Cell-Based Therapy

Since the first hESCs lines derivation in 1998, constant work from many laboratories have elucidated many aspects of the molecular events that govern pluripotency, differentiation and cellular plasticity. Next, we present novel strategies in cell-based therapy.

1.3.1 PSCs in Disease Modeling

Since hESCs lines are usually derived from donated embryos from IVF clinics, it is possible to generate *in vitro* disease models from affected embryos diagnosed by preimplantation genetic diagnosis (PGD), a procedure that allows for the detection of a genetic defect at the level of an embryo fertilized *in vitro* (Sermon et al. 2004).

Several articles reported the derivation of hESCs lines carrying causal mutations of Huntington disease (Mateizel et al. 2006; Niclis et al. 2009), Myotonic Dystrophy Type I (Mateizel et al. 2006), Fragile X Syndrome (Urbach et al. 2010), among others (for a detailed review, see Grskovic et al. 2011). Similarly, iPSC lines can also constitute *in vitro* disease models. Indeed, as several hESCs lines, iPSCs lines that manifest cellular phenotypes have been established for numerous monogenic diseases (reviewed in Grskovic et al. 2011). However, given the possibility of being established from adults, iPSCs can likewise be used for phenotype-based drug screens in complex diseases for which the underlying genetic mechanism is unknown.

1.3.2 Drug Screening

Due to its ability to give rise to all cells in the organism, PSCs represent a powerful *in vitro* model for the study of embryonic development; and many aspects of cell differentiation can potentially be clarified through the examination of ESCs' responses to chemical (molecular compounds) and physical (adherence, cell contact, oxygen tension) stimuli. Thus, PSCs-derivatives can serve as tools for drug screening, as well as to evaluate drug toxicity's consequences in cell fate decisions (reviewed in Maury et al. 2012 – Fig. 1.1). Yahata and coworkers (2011), using an iPSC line tested potential drugs for Alzheimer disease in neurons derived from the pluripotent cells. Currently, there are several groups testing drugs using iPSC lines modeling human diseases, mainly in neurological and cardiac disorders (reviewed in Song et al. 2012).

1.3.3 Direct Cell Conversion

Another, more recent approach that can be used to generate cells for cell therapy is the direct conversion of cell types. It consists in the transdifferentiation of a somatic cell into another cell type (i.e. fibroblasts into functional neurons) through the differential expression of defined factors, without passing the cells through a pluripotent state, and thus eliminating the risk of teratoma formation (Fig. 1.1). Since the converted cells can be produced from the patient's own somatic cells, it also avoids the risk of immune rejection, and there is no concern around the use of human embryos. Thus, the direct converted cells potentially represent a new, safer tool for cell therapy compared to hESC and human iPSC.

Although direct conversion of cell types is still a very recent approach, the ability of transdifferentiation of some human cells types has already been documented. In 2010, Szabo and coworkers demonstrated that human dermal fibroblasts could be reprogrammed into progenitors of the myeloid, erythroid and megakaryocytic lineages without establishing pluripotency via lentiviral-mediated overexpression of OCT4 and addition of growth factors and cytokines in the culture medium.

Son and coworkers (2011), reported that the forced expression of a combination of transcription factors could convert mouse and human fibroblasts into functional motor neurons that displayed morphology, gene expression signature, electrophysiology, synaptic functionality, *in vivo* engraftment capacity and sensitivity to degenerative stimuli, similar to motor neurons derived from embryos. The conversion of human fibroblasts into motor neurons was made possible by retroviral transduction of eight distinct transcription factors and addition of GDNF, BDNF and CNTF to the culture media.

Before applying converted cells in regenerative medicine, there are many issues that need to be addressed. It is necessary to assure that the epigenetic changes triggered by the methodology employed are occurring in a precise and controlled manner, and are resulting in the irreversible switch of one cell type to another. Moreover, there should be a concern about the safety of the methodology used, since transient and/or non-integrative methods are preferable. In order to use converted cells for clinical purposes, it is necessary to perform additional experiments to understand the exact molecular mechanisms of these conversions, which could result in highly efficient direct conversion protocols.

1.4 Final Considerations

Donor cells generated from hESCs can act as a source of tissue in regenerative medicine, arise as a solution to the limited number of organ donors, and also to nervous system regeneration and wounded-tissue replacement. Until now, preclinical and clinical trials suggest that these cells present both relevant biological activity and low risk for early or long-term toxicity.

In spite of the promising data, some facts hinder the broad acceptance of hESC in therapy; the most critical is regarding their potential to form teratomas when injected into patients. Other sources of human cells for therapy are currently known – ASCs, iPSCs, and converted cells – but in each case their benefits in regenerative medicine can be balanced by their disadvantages. Currently, no one can state that there is a perfect cell type for the treatment of all health problems; since it certainly depends on the disease to be treated. Therefore, in order to fulfill the many promises of cell therapy, basic and translational research with all types of cells should continue to be promoted.

References

Baker DE, Harrison NJ, Maltby E, Smith K, Moore HD, Shaw PJ, Heath PR, Holden H, Andrews PW (2007) Adaptation to culture of human embryonic stem cells and oncogenesis in vivo. Nat Biotechnol 25(2):207–215

Banerjee ER, Laflamme MA, Papayannopoulou T, Kahn M, Murry CE, Henderson WR Jr (2012) Human embryonic stem cells differentiated to lung lineage-specific cells ameliorate pulmonary fibrosis in a xenograft transplant mouse model. PLoS One 7(3):e33165

Bosnali M, Edenhofer F (2008) Generation of transducible versions of transcription factors Oct4 and Sox2. Biol Chem 389(7):851–861

Brimble SN, Zeng X, Weiler DA, Luo Y, Liu Y, Lyons IG, Freed WJ, Robins AJ, Rao MS, Schulz TC (2004) Karyotypic stability, genotyping, differentiation, feeder-free maintenance, and gene expression sampling in three human embryonic stem cell lines derived prior to August 9, 2001. Stem Cells Dev 13:585–597

Burra P, Bizzaro D, Ciccocioppo R, Marra F, Piscaglia AC, Porretti L, Gasbarrini A, Russo FP (2011) Therapeutic application of stem cells in gastroenterology: an up-date. World J Gastroenterol 17(34):3870–3880

Callera F, do Nascimento RX (2006) Delivery of autologous bone marrow precursor cells into the spinal cord via lumbar puncture technique in patients with spinal cord injury: a preliminary safety study. Exp Hematol 34(2):130–131

Caspi O, Itzhaki I, Kehat I, Gepstein A, Arbel G, Huber I, Satin J, Gepstein L (2009) *In vitro* electrophysiological drug testing using human embryonic stem cell derived cardiomyocytes. Stem Cells Dev 18(1):161–172

Chin MH, Mason MJ, Xie W, Volinia S, Singer M, Peterson C, Ambartsumyan G, Aimiuwu O, Richter L, Zhang J, Khvorostov I, Ott V, Grunstein M, Lavon N, Benvenisty N, Croce CM, Clark AT, Baxter T, Pyle AD, Teitell MA, Pelegrini M, Plath K, Lowry WE (2009) Induced pluripotent stem cells and embryonic stem cells are distinguished by gene expression signatures. Cell Stem Cell 5:111–123

Cho YM, Lim JM, Yoo DH, Kim JH, Chung SS, Park SG, Kim TH, Oh SK, Choi YM, Moon SY, Park KS, Lee HK (2008) Betacellulin and nicotinamide sustain PDX1 expression and induce pancreatic beta-cell differentiation in human embryonic stem cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 366(1):129–134

Connick P, Kolappan M, Crawley C, Webber DJ, Patani R, Michell AW, Du MQ, Luan SL, Altmann DR, Thompson AJ, Compston A, Scott MA, Miller DH, Chandran S (2012) Autologous mesenchymal stem cells for the treatment of secondary progressive multiple sclerosis: an open-label phase 2a proof-of-concept study. Lancet Neurol 11(2):150–156

D'Amour KA, Bang AG, Eliazer S, Kelly OG, Agulnick AD, Smart NG, Moorman MA, Kroon E, Carpenter MK, Baetge EE (2006) Production of pancreatic hormone-expressing endocrine cells from human embryonic stem cells. Nat Biotechnol 24(11):1392–1401

Deng J, Shoemaker R, Xie B, Gore A, LeProust EM, Antosiewicz-Bourget J, Egli D, Maherali N, Park IH, Yu J, Daley GQ, Eggan K, Hochedlinger K, Thomson J, Wang W, Gao Y, Zhang K (2009) Targeted bisulfite sequencing reveals changes in DNA methylation associated with nuclear reprogramming. Nat Biotechnol 27:353–360

Draper JS, Smith K, Gokhale P, Moore HD, Maltby E, Johnson J, Meisner L, Zwaka TP, Thomson JA, Andrews PW (2003) Recurrent gain of chromosomes 17q and 12 in cultured human embryonic stem cells. Nat Biotechnol 22:53–54

Drukker M, Katz G, Urbach A, Schuldiner M, Markel G, Itskovitz-Eldor J, Reubinoff B, Mandelboim O, Benvenisty N (2002) Characterization of the expression of MHC proteins in human embryonic stem cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 99:9864–9869

Erdö F, Bührle C, Blunk J, Hoehn M, Xia Y, Fleischmann B, Föcking M, Küstermann E, Kolossov E, Hescheler J, Hossmann KA, Trapp T (2003) Host-dependent tumorigenesis of embryonic stem cell transplantation in experimental stroke. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 23(7):780–785

Feng B, Jiang J, Kraus P, Ng JH, Heng JC, Chan YS, Yaw LP, Zhang W, Loh YH, Han J, Vega VB, Cacheux-Rataboul V, Lim B, Lufkin T, Ng H-H (2009) Reprogramming of fibroblasts into induced pluripotent stem cells with orphan nuclear receptor Esrrb. Nat Cell Biol 11:197–203

Fleischhauer K, Shaw BE, Gooley T, Malkki M, Bardy P, Bignon JD, Dubois V, Horowitz MM, Madrigal JA, Morishima Y, Oudshoorn M, Ringden O, Spellman S, Velardi A, Zino E, Petersdorf EW, on behalf of the International Histocompatibility Working Group in Hematopoietic Cell Transplantation (2012) Effect of T-cell-epitope matching at HLA-DPB1 in recipients of unrelated-donor haemopoietic-cell transplantation: a retrospective study. Lancet Oncol 13(4):366–374

Fraga AM, Araújo ESS, Stabellini R, Vergani N, Pereira LV (2011a) A Survey of Parameters Involved in the Establishment of New Lines of Human Embryonic Stem Cells. Stem Cell Rev 7(4):775–781

Fraga AM, Sukoyan M, Rajan P, Braga DP, Iaconelli A Jr, Franco JG Jr, Borges E Jr, Pereira LV (2011b) Establishment of a Brazilian line of human embryonic stem cells in defined medium: implications for cell therapy in an ethnically diverse population. Cell Transplant 20(3): 431–440

Fusaki N, Ban H, Nishiyama A, Saeki K, Hasegawa M (2009) Efficient induction of transgene-free human pluripotent stem cells using a vector based on Sendai virus, an RNA virus that does not integrate into the host genome. Proc Jpn Acad Ser B Phys Biol Sci 85:348–362

Grskovic M, Javaherian A, Strulovici B, Daley GQ (2011) Induced pluripotent stem cells – opportunities for disease modelling and drug discovery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 10(12):915–929

Guenou H, Nissan X, Larcher F, Feteira J, Lemaitre G, Saidani M, Del Rio M, Barrault CC, Bernard FX, Peschanski M, Baldeschi C, Waksman G (2009) Human embryonic stem-cell derivatives for full reconstruction of the pluristratified epidermis: a preclinical study. Lancet 374(9703):1745–1753

Heile A, Brinker T (2011) Clinical translation of stem cell therapy in traumatic brain injury: the potential of encapsulated mesenchymal cell biodelivery of glucagon-like peptide-1. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 13(3):279–286

Hochedlinger K, Yamada Y, Beard C, Jaenisch R (2005) Ectopic expression ofOct-4 blocks progenitor-cell differentiation and causes dysplasia in epithelial tissues. Cell 121:465–477

Hyun I (2010) The bioethics of stem cell research and therapy. J Clin Invest 120(1):71–75

Ilic D, Stephenson E, Wood V, Jacquet L, Stevenson D, Petrova A, Kadeva N, Codognotto S, Patel H, Semple M, Cornwell G, Ogilvie C, Braude P (2012) Derivation and feeder-free propagation of human embryonic stem cells under xeno-free conditions. Cytotherapy 14(1):122–128

International Stem Cell Initiative (2011) Screening ethnically diverse human embryonic stem cells identifies a chromosome 20 minimal amplicon conferring growth advantage. Nat Biotechnol 29(12):1132–1144

Jiang R, Han Z, Zhuo G, Qu X, Li X, Wang X, Shao Y, Yang S, Han ZC (2011) Transplantation of placenta-derived mesenchymal stem cells in type 2 diabetes: a pilot study. Front Med 5(1):94–100

Kadereit S, Trounson A (2011) In vitro immunogenicity of undifferentiated pluripotent stem cells (PSC) and derived lineages. Semin Immunopathol 33:551–562

Keirstead HS, Nistor G, Bernal G, Totoiu M, Cloutier F, Sharp K, Steward O (2005) Human embryonic stem cell-derived oligodendrocyte progenitor cell transplants remyelinate and restore locomotion after spinal cord injury. J Neurosci 25(19):4694–4705

Kim D, Kim CH, Moon JI, Chung YG, Chang MY, Han BS, Ko S, Yang E, Cha KY, Lanza R, Kim KS (2009) Generation of human induced pluripotent stem cells by direct delivery of reprogramming proteins. Cell Stem Cell 4:472–476

Knoller N, Auerbach G, Fulga V, Zelig G, Attias J, Bakimer R, Marder JB, Yoles E, Belkin M, Schwartz M, Hadani M (2005) Clinical experience using incubated autologous macrophages as a treatment for complete spinal cord injury: phase I study results. J Neurosurg Spine 3(3): 173–181

Kocher AA, Schuster MD, Szabolcs MJ, Takuma S, Burkhoff D, Wang J, Homma S, Edwards NM, Itescu S (2001) Neovascularization of ischemic myocardium by human bone-marrow-derived angioblasts prevents cardiomyocyte apoptosis, reduces remodeling and improves cardiac function. Nat Med 7:430–436

Kofidis T, Lebl DR, Swijnenburg RJ, Greeve JM, Klima U, Robbins RC (2006) Allopurinol/uricase and ibuprofen enhance engraftment of cardiomyocyte-enriched human embryonic stem cells and improve cardiac function following myocardial injury. Circulation 111(1):11–20

Krawetz R, Rancourt DE (2012) Suspension bioreactor expansion of undifferentiated human embryonic stem cells. Methods Mol Biol 873:227–235

Kriks S, Shim JW, Piao J, Ganat YM, Wakeman DR, Xie Z, Carrillo-Reid L, Auyeung G, Antonacci C, Buch A, Yang L, Beal MF, Surmeier DJ, Kordower JH, Tabar V, Studer L (2011) Dopamine

neurons derived from human ES cells efficiently engraft in animal models of Parkinson's disease. Nature 480(7378):547–551
Kroon E, Martinson LA, Kadoya K, Bang AG, Kelly OG, Eliazer S, Young H, Richardson M, Smart NG, Cunningham J, Agulnick AD, D'Amour KA, Carpenter MK, Baetge EE (2008) Pancreatic endoderm derived from human embryonic stem cells generates glucose-responsive insulin-secreting cells *in vivo*. Nat Biotechnol 26(4):443–452
Kuznetsov SA, Cherman N, Robey PG (2011) *In vivo* bone formation by progeny of human embryonic stem cells. Stem Cells Dev 20(2):269–287
Laflamme MA, Chen KY, Naumova AV, Muskheli V, Fugate JA, Dupras SK, Reinecke H, Xu C, Hassanipour M, Police S, O'Sullivan C, Collins L, Chen Y, Minami E, Gill EA, Ueno S, Yuan C, Gold J, Murry CE (2007) Cardiomyocytes derived from human embryonic stem cells in pro-survival factors enhance function of infarcted rat hearts. Nat Biotechnol 25(9):1015–1024
Laurent LC, Nievergelt CM, Lynch C, Fakunle E, Harness JV, Schmidt U, Galat V, Laslett AL, Otonkoski T, Keirstead HS, Schork A, Park HS, Loring JF (2010) Restricted ethnic diversity in human embryonic stem cell lines. Nat Methods 7(1):6–7
Lee JE, Kang MS, Park MH, Shim SH, Yoon TK, Chung HM, Lee DR (2010) Evaluation of 28 human embryonic stem cell lines for use as unrelated donors in stem cell therapy: implications of HLA and ABO genotypes. Cell Transplant 19(11):1383–1395
Lefort N, Feyeux M, Bas C, Féraud O, Bennaceur-Griscelli A, Tachdjian G, Peschanski M, Perrier AL (2008) Human embryonic stem cells reveal recurrent genomic instability at 20q11.21. Nat Biotechnol 26:1364–1366
Lima C, Pratas-Vital J, Escada P, Hasse-Ferreira A, Capucho C, Peduzzi JD (2006) Olfactory mucosa autografts in human spinal cord injury: a pilot clinical study. J Spinal Cord Med 29(3):191–203
Lin G, Xie Y, Ouyang Q, Qian X, Xie P, Zhou X, Xiong B, Tan Y, Li W, Deng L, Zhou J, Zhou D, Du L, Cheng D, Liao Y, Gu Y, Zhang S, Liu T, Sun Y, Lu G (2009) HLA-matching potential of an established human embryonic stem cell bank in China. Cell Stem Cell 5(5):461–465
Lu B, Malcuit C, Wang S, Girman S, Francis P, Lemieux L, Lanza R, Lund R (2009) Long-term safety and function of RPE from human embryonic stem cells in preclinical models of macular degeneration. Stem Cells 27(9):2126–2135
Ludwig TE, Levenstein ME, Jones JM, Berggren WT, Mitchen ER, Frane JL, Crandall LJ, Daigh CA, Conard KR, Piekarczyk MS, Llanas RA, Thomson JA (2006) Derivation of human embryonic stem cells in defined conditions. Nat Biotechnol 24:185–187
Lui KO, Waldmann H, Fairchild PJ (2009) Embryonic stem cells: overcoming the immunological barriers to cell replacement therapy. Curr Stem Cell Res Ther 4(1):70–80
Lund RD, Wang S, Klimanskaya I, Holmes T, Ramos-Kelsey R, Lu B, Girman S, Bischoff N, Sauvé Y, Lanza R (2006) Human embryonic stem cell-derived cells rescue visual function in dystrophic RCS rats. Cloning Stem Cells 8(3):189–199
Markoulaki S, Hanna J, Beard C, Carey BW, Cheng AW, Lengner CJ, Dausman JA, Fu D, Gao Q, Wu S (2009) Transgenic mice with defined combinations of drug-inducible reprogramming factors. Nat Biotechnol 27:169–171
Martin MJ, Muotri A, Gage F, Varki A (2005) Human embryonic stem cells express an immunogenic nonhuman sialic acid. Nat Med 11(2):228–232
Mateizel I, De Temmerman N, Ullmann U, Cauffman G, Sermon K, Van de Velde H, De Rycke M, Degreef E, Devroey P, Liebaers I, Van Steirteghem A (2006) Derivation of human embryonic stem cell lines from embryos obtained after IVF and after PGD for monogenic disorders. Hum Reprod 21(2):503–511
Maury Y, Gauthier M, Peschanski M, Martinat C (2012) Human pluripotent stem cells for disease modelling and drug screening. Bioessays 34(1):61–71
Mazzini L, Mareschi K, Ferrero I, Miglioretti M, Stecco A, Servo S, Carriero A, Monaco F, Fagioli F (2012) Mesenchymal stromal cell transplantation in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: a long-term safety study. Cytotherapy 14(1):56–60
Menasche P (2007) Skeletal myoblasts as a therapeutic agent. Prog Cardiovasc Dis 50(1):7–17
Meyer GP, Wollert KC, Lotz J, Steffens J, Lippolt P, Fichtner S, Hecker H, Schaefer A, Arseniev L, Hertenstein B, Ganser A, Drexler H (2006) Intracoronary bone marrow cell transfer after

myocardial infarction: eighteen months' follow-up data from the randomized, controlled BOOST (BOne marrOw transfer to enhance ST-elevation infarct regeneration) trial. Circulation 113(10):1287–1294

Mfopou JK, Chen B, Mateizel I, Sermon K, Bouwens L (2010) Noggin, retinoids, and fibroblast growth factor regulate hepatic or pancreatic fate of human embryonic stem cells. Gastroenterology 138(7):2233–2245

Mitalipova MM, Rao RR, Hoyer DM, Johnson JA, Meisner LF, Jones KL, Dalton S, Stice SL (2005) Preserving the genetic integrity of human embryonic stem cells. Nat Biotechnol 23:19–20

Mosher JT, Pemberton TJ, Harter K, Wang C, Buzbas EO, Dvorak P, Simón C, Morrison SJ, Rosenberg NA (2010) Lack of population diversity in commonly used human embryonic stem-cell lines. N Engl J Med 362(2):183–185

Moviglia GA, Fernandez Viña R, Brizuela JA, Saslavsky J, Vrsalovic F, Varela G, Bastos F, Farina P, Etchegaray G, Barbieri M, Martinez G, Picasso F, Schmidt Y, Brizuela P, Gaeta CA, Costanzo H, Moviglia Brandolino MT, Merino S, Pes ME, Veloso MJ, Rugilo C, Tamer I, Shuster GS (2006) Combined protocol of cell therapy for chronic spinal cord injury. Report on the electrical and functional recovery of two patients. Cytotherapy 8(3):202–209

Muro M, López-Álvarez MR, Campillo JA, Marin L, Moya-Quiles MR, Bolarín JM, Botella C, Salgado G, Martínez P, Sánchez-Bueno F, López-Hernández R, Boix F, Bosch A, Martínez H, de la Peña-Moral JM, Pérez N, Robles R, García-Alonso AM, Minguela A, Miras M, Alvarez-López MR (2012) Influence of human leukocyte antigen mismatching on rejection development and allograft survival in liver transplantation: is the relevance of HLA-A locus matching being underestimated? Transpl Immunol 26(2–3):88–93

Nakajima F, Tokunaga K, Nakatsuji N (2007) Human leukocyte antigen matching estimations in a hypothetical bank of human embryonic stem cell lines in the Japanese population for use in cell transplantation therapy. Stem Cells 25(4):983–985

Niclis JC, Trounson AO, Dottori M, Ellisdon AM, Bottomley SP, Verlinsky Y, Cram DS (2009) Human embryonic stem cell models of Huntington disease. Reprod Biomed Online 19(1):106–113

Nistor GI, Totoiu MO, Haque N, Carpenter MK, Keirstead HS (2005) Human embryonic stem cells differentiate into oligodendrocytes in high purity and myelinate after spinal cord transplantation. Glia 49(3):385–396

Okita K, Ichisaka T, Yamanaka S (2007) Generation of germline-competent induced pluripotent stem cells. Nature 448:313–317

Okita K, Nakagawa M, Hyenjong H, Ichisaka T, Yamanaka S (2008) Generation of mouse induced pluripotent stem cells without viral vectors. Science 322:949–953

Pennings G (2003) New Belgian law on research on human embryos: trust in progress through medical science. J Assist Reprod Genet 20(8):343–346

Ramirez JM, Bai Q, Dijon-Grinand M, Assou S, Gerbal-Chaloin S, Hamamah S, De Vos J (2010) Human pluripotent stem cells: from biology to cell therapy. World J Stem Cells 2(2):24–33

Rosenthal N, Brown S (2007) The mouse ascending: perspectives for human-disease models. Nat Cell Biol 9(9):993–999

Savitz SI (2012) Stem cells and stroke: are we further away than anyone is willing to admit? Int J Stroke 7(1):34–35

Schofield PN, Sundberg JP, Hoehndorf R, Gkoutos GV (2011) New approaches to the representation and analysis of phenotype knowledge in human diseases and their animal models. Brief Funct Genomics 10(5):258–265

Schuleri KH, Boyle AJ, Hare JM (2007) Mesenchymal stem cells for cardiac regenerative therapy. Handb Exp Pharmacol 180:195–218

Schwartz SD, Hubschman JP, Heilwell G, Franco-Cardenas V, Pan CK, Ostrick RM, Mickunas E, Gay R, Klimanskaya I, Lanza R (2012) Embryonic stem cell trials for macular degeneration: a preliminary report. Lancet 379(9817):713–720

Sermon K, Van Steirteghem A, Liebaers I (2004) Preimplantation genetic diagnosis. Lancet 363(9421):1633–1641

Sharp J, Frame J, Siegenthaler M, Nistor G, Keirstead HS (2010) Human embryonic stem cell-derived oligodendrocyte progenitor cell transplants improve recovery after cervical spinal cord injury. Stem Cells 28(1):152–163

Silk KM, Tseng SY, Nishimoto KP, Lebkowski J, Reddy A, Fairchild PJ (2011) Differentiation of dendritic cells from human embryonic stem cells. Methods Mol Biol 767:449–461

Snyder EY, Loring JF (2006) Beyond fraud – stem-cell research continues. N Engl J Med 354(4):321–324

Son EY, Ichida JK, Wainger BJ, Toma JS, Rafuse VF, Woolf CJ, Kevin Eggan K (2011) Conversion of mouse and human fibroblasts into functional spinal motor neurons. Cell Stem Cell 9(3):205–218

Song M, Paul S, Lim H, Dayem AA, Cho SG (2012) Induced pluripotent stem cell research: a revolutionary approach to face the challenges in drug screening. Arch Pharm Res 35(2):245–260

Stadtfeld M, Nagaya M, Utikal J, Weir G, Hochedlinger K (2008) Induced pluripotent stem cells generated without viral integration. Science 322:945–949

Stern JH, Temple S (2011) Stem cells for retinal replacement therapy. Neurotherapeutics 8(4):736–743

Strauer BE, Schannwell CM, Brehm M (2009) Therapeutic potentials of stem cells in cardiac diseases. Minerva Cardioangiol 57(2):249–267

Takahashi K, Yamanaka S (2006) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from mouse embryonic and adult fibroblast cultures by defined factors. Cell 126(4):663–676

Takahashi K, Tanabe K, Ohnuki M, Narita M, Ichisaka T, Tomoda K, Yamanaka S (2007) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from adult human fibroblasts by defined factors. Cell 131(5): 861–872

Taylor CJ, Bolton EM, Pocock S, Sharples LD, Pedersen RA, Bradley JA (2005) Banking on human embryonic stem cells: estimating the number of donor cell lines needed for HLA matching. Lancet 366(9502):2019–2025

Thomas KE, Moon LD (2011) Will stem cell therapies be safe and effective for treating spinal cord injuries? Br Med Bull 98:127–142

Thomson JA, Itskovitz-Eldor J, Shapiro SS, Waknitz MA, Swiergiel JJ, Marshall VS, Jones JM (1998) Embryonic stem cell lines derived from human blastocysts. Science 282:1145–1147

Titomanlio L, Kavelaars A, Dalous J, Mani S, El Ghouzzi V, Heijnen C, Baud O, Gressens P (2011) Stem cell therapy for neonatal brain injury: perspectives and challenges. Ann Neurol 70(5):698–712

Trounson A (2006) The production and directed differentiation of human embryonic stem cells. Endocr Rev 27(2):208–219

Uccelli A, Benvenuto F, Laroni A, Giunti D (2011) Neuroprotective features of mesenchymal stem cells. Best Pract Res Clin Haematol 24(1):59–64

Unger C, Skottman H, Blomberg P, Dilber MS, Hovatta O (2008) Good manufacturing practice and clinical-grade human embryonic stem cell lines. Hum Mol Genet 17(1):R48–R53

Urbach A, Bar-Nur O, Daley GQ, Benvenisty N (2010) Differential modeling of fragile X syndrome by human embryonic stem cells and induced pluripotent stem cells. Cell Stem Cell 6(5):407–411

Vilquin JT, Catelain C, Vauchez K (2011) Cell therapy for muscular dystrophies: advances and challenges. Curr Opin Organ Transplant 16(6):640–649

Wang S, Qu X, Zhao RC (2012) Clinical applications of mesenchymal stem cells. J Hematol Oncol 5(1):19

Wollert KC, Drexler H (2005) Mesenchymal stem cells for myocardial infarction: promises and pitfalls. Circulation 112(2):151–153

Woo DH, Kim SK, Lim HJ, Heo J, Park HS, Kang GY, Kim SE, You HJ, Hoeppner DJ, Kim Y, Kwon H, Choi TH, Lee JH, Hong SH, Song KW, Ahn EK, Chenoweth JG, Tesar PJ, McKay RD, Kim JH (2012) Direct and indirect contribution of human embryonic stem cell-derived hepatocyte-like cells to liver repair in mice. Gastroenterology 142(3):602–611

Wood KJ, Goto R (2012) Mechanisms of rejection: current perspectives. Transplantation 93(1):1–10

Xue T, Cho HC, Akar FG, Tsang SY, Jones SP, Marbán E, Tomaselli GF, Li RA (2005) Functional integration of electrically active cardiac derivatives from genetically engineered human embryonic stem cells with quiescent recipient ventricular cardiomyocytes: insights into the development of cell-based pacemakers. Circulation 111(1):11–20

Yahata N, Asai M, Kitaoka S, Takahashi K, Asaka I, Hioki H, Kaneko T, Maruyama K, Saido TC, Nakahata T, Asada T, Yamanaka S, Iwata N, Inoue H (2011) Anti-Aβ drug screening platform using human iPS cell-derived neurons for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. PLoS One 6(9):e25788

Yoon SH, Shim YS, Park YH, Chung JK, Nam JH, Kim MO, Park HC, Park SR, Min BH, Kim EY, Choi BH, Park H, Ha Y (2007) Complete spinal cord injury treatment using autologous bone marrow cell transplantation and bone marrow stimulation with granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor: phase I/II clinical trial. Stem Cells 25(8):2066–2073

Yu J, Vodyanik MA, Smuga-Otto K, Antosiewicz-Bourget J, Frane JL, Tian S, Nie J, Jonsdottir GA, Ruotti V, Stewart R, Slukin II, Thomson JA (2007) Induced pluripotent stem cell lines derived from human somatic cells. Science 318:1917–1920

Yu J, Hu K, Smuga-Otto K, Tian S, Stewart R, Slukvin II, Thomson JA (2009) Human induced pluripotent stem cells free of vector and transgene sequences. Science 324:797–801

Zhou H, Wu S, Joo JY, Zhu S, Han DW, Lin T, Trauger S, Bien G, Yao S, Zhu Y, Siuzdak G, Scholer HR, Duan L, Ding S (2009) Generation of induced pluripotent stem cells using recombinant proteins. Cell Stem Cell 4:381–384

Chapter 2
Human Neural Stem Cell-Based Cell- and Gene-Therapy for Neurological Diseases

Seung U. Kim and Hong J. Lee

Abstract Human neurological diseases such as Parkinson's disease (PD), Huntington's disease (HD), amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), Alzheimer's disease (AD), multiple sclerosis (MS), stroke and spinal cord injury (SCI) are caused by loss of neurons and glia in the brain or spinal cord. Cell replacement therapy and gene transfer to the diseased or injured brain have provided the basis for the development of potentially powerful new therapeutic strategies for a broad spectrum of human neurological diseases. However, the paucity of suitable cell types for cell replacement therapy in patients suffering from neurological disorders has hampered the development of this promising therapeutic approach. In recent years, neurons and glia have successfully been generated from stem cells such as embryonic stem cells (ESCs), induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs), mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) and neural stem cells (NSCs), and extensive efforts by investigators to develop stem cell-based brain transplantation therapies have been carried out. I review here notable experimental and pre-clinical studies previously published involving stem cell-based cell- and gene-therapies for PD, HD, ALS, AD, MS, stroke and SCI, and discuss for future prospect for the stem cell therapy of neurological disorders in clinical setting. There are still many obstacles to be overcome before clinical application of cell- and gene-therapy in neurological disease patients is adopted: (i) it is still uncertain how to generate specific cell types of neurons or glia suitable for cellular grafts in great quantity, (ii) it is required to abate safety concern related to tumor formation following NSC transplantation, and (iii) it needs to be better understood by what mechanism transplantation of NSCs leads to an enhanced functional recovery. Steady and stepwise progress in stem cell research in both basic and pre-clinical settings should support the hope for development of stem

S.U. Kim (✉) • H.J. Lee
Division of Neurology, Department of Medicine, UBC Hospital,
University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC V6T2B5, Canada
e-mail: sukim@mail.ubc.ca

M. Al-Rubeai, M. Naciri (eds.), *Stem Cells and Cell Therapy*, Cell Engineering 8,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-7196-3_2,

cell-based therapies for neurodegenerative diseases. This review focuses on the utility of stem cells particularly NSCs as substrates for structural and functional repair of the diseased or injured brain.

Keywords Stem cell • Embryonic stem cell • Induced pluripotent stem cell • Neural stem cell • Mesenchymal stem cell • Cell therapy • Gene therapy • Neurological diseases • Transplantation • Parkinson's disease • Huntington's disease • Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis • Alzheimer's disease • Multiple sclerosis • Stroke • Spinal cord injury

2.1 Introduction

In adult mammalian central nervous system (CNS), injured neurons exhibit low spontaneous capacity for regeneration (Ramon y Cajal 1928). Little progress was seen for more than half century in investigation related to the CNS regeneration until late 1970s. In 1979 two Swedish research groups reported independently that embryonic rat mesencephalic cells transplanted in the brain of Parkinson's disease rat model survived and induced functional recovery (Björklund and Stenevi 1979; Perlow et al. 1979). This is the first time that fetal CNS cell transplants replace lost neuross and restore functional deficits in animal models of neurological disease. Since then, fetal CNS-derived cells were grafted into the brain and spinal cord of animal models of neurological disorders including Parkinson's disease (PD), Huntington's disease (HD), stroke and spinal cord injury (SCI). Starting in late 1980s, transplantation of human fetal ventral mesencephalic tissues into the striatum of PD patients has been adopted as a successful therapy for patients with advanced disease (Lindvall et al. 1990; Olanow et al. 1996; Kordower et al. 1997a, b; Dunnett and Bjorklund 1999). However, this fetal brain tissue transplantation has serious problems including ethical and religious questions and limited supply of fetal tissues. To circumvent these difficulties, utilization of neurons with dopamine (DA) phenotype generated from embryonic stem cells (ESCs), induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs), mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) or neural stem cells (NSCs) could serve as a practical and effective alternative for the fetal brain tissues for brain transplantation.

Stem cells are defined as cells that have the ability to renew themselves continuously and possess pluripotent ability to differentiate into many cell types. Two types of mammalian pluripotent stem cells, ESCs derived from the inner cell mass of blastocysts and embryonic germ cells (EGCs) obtained from post-implantation embryos, have been identified and these stem cells give rise to various organs and tissues (Thompson et al. 1998; Shamblott et al. 1998). Recently there has been an exciting development in generation of a new class of pluripotent stem cells, induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs), from adult somatic cells such as skin fibroblasts by introduction of embryogenesis-related genes (Takahashi et al. 2007; Yu et al. 2007; Park et al. 2008). In addition to ESCs and iPS cells, tissue specific stem cells could be isolated from various tissues of more advanced developmental stages such as hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs), bone marrow MSCs, adipose tissue-derived stem cells (ADSCs),

amniotic fluid stem cells and NSCs. Among these, existence of multipotent NSCs has been known in developing or adult rodent brain with properties of indefinite growth and multipotent potential to differentiate into three major cell types of CNS, neurons, astrocytes and oigodendrocytes (McKay 1997; Flax et al. 1998; Gage 2000; Gottlieb 2002; Kim 2004; Lindvall and Kokaia 2006; Kim and deVellis 2009).

In human, existence of NSCs with multipotent differentiation capability has also been reported in embryonic and adult human brain (Flax et al. 1998; Kim 2004; Brustle and McKay 1996; Sah et al. 1997). In a group of cancer patients who had infusion of chemical bromodeoxyuridine (BrdU) for diagnostic purposes and later died, evidence that new neurons are continuously being generated in adult human CNS was demonstrated (Eriksson et al. 1998). Why then there is only limited capacity to repair in adult CNS suffering from injury or diseases? It appears that endogenous brain environment that is responsible for induction of NSC proliferation and consequent NSC differentiation into neurons is not adequate in most of diseased or injured brain.

Recently continuously dividing immortalized cell lines of NSCs have been generated by introduction of oncogenes and these immortalized NSC lines have advantageous characteristics for basic studies on neural development and cell replacement therapy: (i) Stable immortalized NSC cells are homogeneous since they were generated from a single cell, i.e. a single clone; (ii) immortal NSC cells can be expanded readily in large numbers in short time; (iii) stable expression of therapeutic genes can be achieved readily (Flax et al. 1998; Kim 2004; Snyder et al. 1992; Lee et al. 2007a). Immortalized NSCs have emerged as highly effective source for genetic manipulation and gene transfer into the CNS *ex vivo*; immortalized NSCs were genetically manipulated *in vitro*, survive, integrate into host tissues and differentiate into both neurons and glial cells after transplantation to the intact or damaged brain (Fig. 2.1). We have previously generated immortalized cell lines of human NSCs by infecting fetal human brain cells grown in primary culture with a retroviral vector

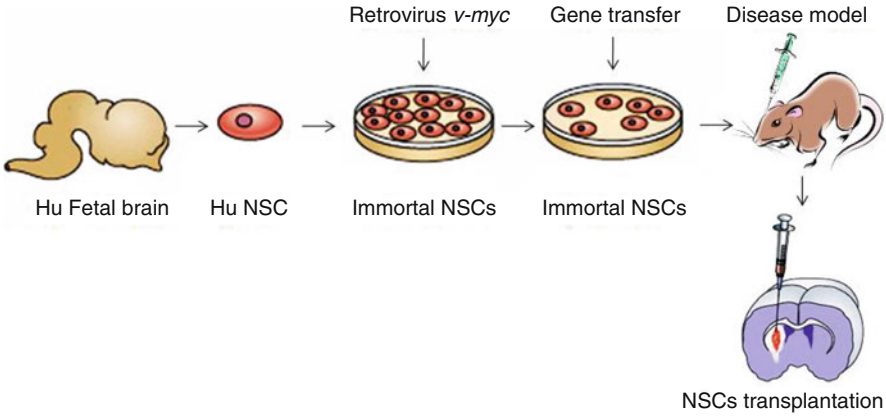


Fig. 2.1 Human neural stem cells (NSCs) isolated from 12 to 15 weeks gestational brain were immortalized by transfection with a retroviral vector encoding v-myc. Immortalized human NSCs were encoded with therapeutic genes such as NGF, BDNF, VEGF, GDNF, Akt-1, tyrosine hydroxylase or choline acetyltransferase, and then transplanted into the brain or spinal cord of neurological disease animal models

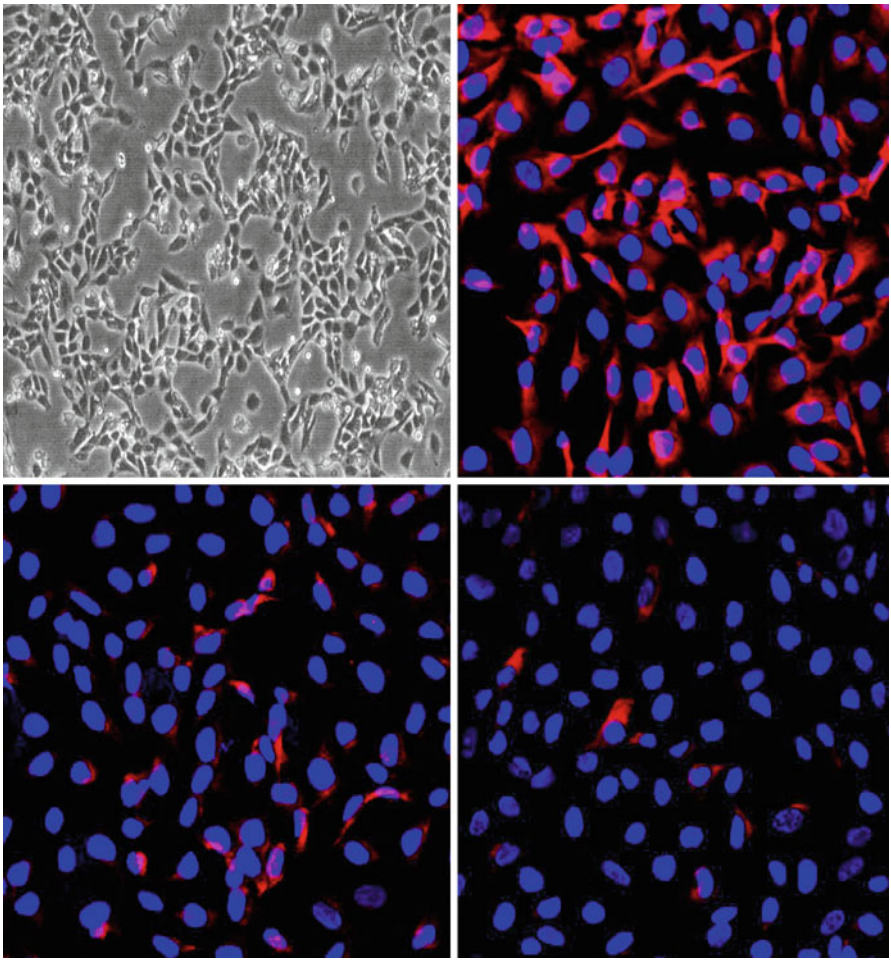


Fig. 2.2 Stable immortalized human neural stem cell line (NSC, F3) was generated by transfection of NSCs isolated from a 15 weeks gestational brain with a retroviral vector encoding v-myc. *Top left*: Phase contrast microscopy of NSCs; *Top right*: NSCs grown in serum-free medium are positive for nestin, a NSC cell type-specific marker; *Bottom left*: NSCs grown in serum-containing medium differentiate into neurons and express neurofilament protein, a neuron-specific marker; *Bottom right*: A small number of NSCs differentiate into astrocyte and express GFAP, an astrocyte cell type-specific marker

carrying v-myc oncogene and selecting continuously dividing NSC clones. Both *in vivo* and *in vitro* these cells were able to differentiate into neurons and glial cells and populate the developing or degenerating CNS (Flax et al. 1998; Kim 2004; Lee et al. 2007a; Kim and de Vellis 2009) (Figs. 2.2 and 2.3).

Stem cell-based cell and gene therapy could serve as potentially powerful new therapeutic strategies for a broad spectrum of human neurological diseases including PD, HD, AD, ALS, MS, stroke, SCI and brain tumors (Brustle and McKay 1996;

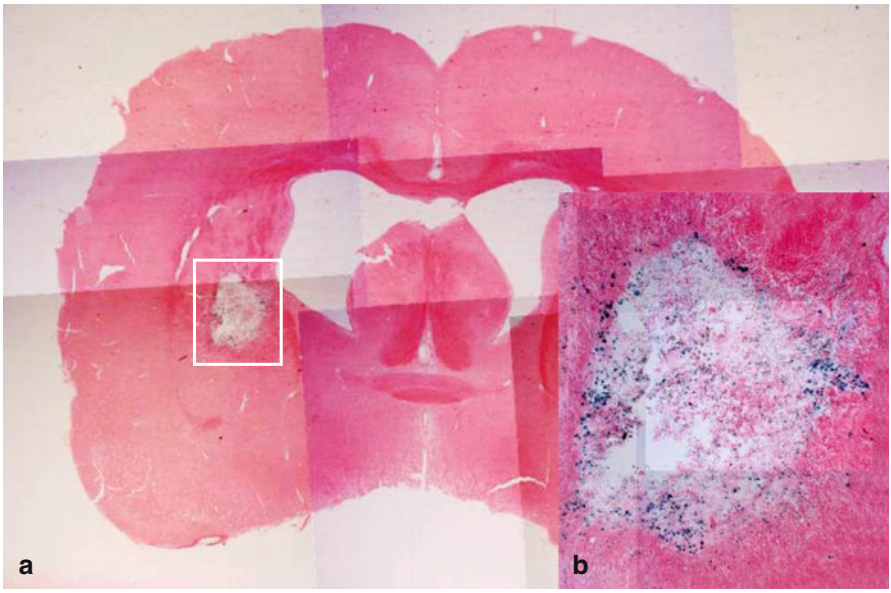


Fig. 2.3 (**a**) F3 human neural stem cells were encoded with **β**-galactosidase (X-gal) and transplanted near collagenase – induced intracerebral hemorrhage stroke lesion site in striatum. Four weeks later, X-gal-labeled human NSCs were found inside and boundary zone of hemorrhage lesion. (**b**) Higher magnification of the boxed area

Flax et al. 1998; Kim 2004; Lindvall et al. 2004; Goldman 2005; Kim and de Vellis 2009). There are still many obstacles to be overcome before clinical application of cell therapy in neurological disease patients is adopted: (i) it is still uncertain how to generate specific cell types of neurons or glia suitable for cellular grafts in great quantity, (ii) it is required to abate safety concern related to tumor formation following NSC transplantation, and (iii) it needs to be better understood by what mechanism transplantation of NSCs leads to an enhanced functional recovery. Steady and stepwise progress in stem cell research in both basic and pre-clinical settings should support the hope for development of stem cell-based therapies for neurodegenerative diseases. This review focuses on the utility of stem cells particularly NSCs and MSCs as substrates for structural and functional repair of the diseased or injured CNS.

2.2 Parkinson's Disease

Parkinson's disease (PD) is characterized by an extensive loss of dopamine neurons (DA) in the substantia nigra pars compacta and their terminals in the striatum (Kish et al. 1988; Agid 1991), and affects more than 500,000 people in the US. While the etiology of idiopathic PD is not known, several predisposing factors for the dopaminergic depletion associated with the disease have been suggested, including

programmed cell death, viral infection, and environmental toxins. As an effective treatment for PD, patients have been given L-dihydroxyphenyl alanine (L-DOPA), a precursor of dopamine, but long-term administration of L-DOPA consequently produces grave side effects (Lang and Lozano 1998a, b). More recently surgical procedure of deep brain stimulation has been adopted as a successful treatment for PD patients (Lyons 2011).

Since late 1980s, transplantation of human fetal ventral mesencephalic tissues into the striatum of PD patients has been adopted as a successful therapy for patients with advanced disease (Lindvall et al. 1990; OLanow et al. 1996; Kordower et al. 1997b; Dunnett and Bjorklund 1999). However, this fetal tissue transplantation has grave problems associated with ethical and religious questions and logistics of acquiring fetal tissues. In addition, recent reports have indicated that the survival of transplanted fetal mesencephalic cells in the patients' brain was very low and it was difficult to obtain enough fetal tissues needed for transplantation (Hagell et al. 1999). To circumvent these difficulties, utilization of neurons with dopamine (DA) phenotype generated from ESCs, iPSCs, MSCs or NSCs could serve as a practical and effective alternative for the fetal brain tissues for transplantation. DA neurons were generated from mouse ESCs after treatment with fibroblast growth factor 8 (FGF8) and sonic hedgehog (Hagell and Brundin 2002), over-expression of Nurr1 (Wagner et al. 1999; Chung et al. 2002; Kim et al. 2003) or Bcl-XL (Shim et al. 2004), or co-culture with a mouse bone marrow stromal cell line (Kawasaki et al. 2000). Neurons with DA phenotype have been generated from monkey ESCs by co-culturing with mouse bone marrow stromal cells and behavioral improvement was seen in MPTP-lesioned monkeys following intra-striatal transplantaiton of these cells (Takagi et al. 2005). DA neurons were also generated from neural progenitor cells derived from fetal brain and induced functional recovery following brain transplantation in parkinsoinian monkeys (Redmond et al. 2007).

Transplantation of NSCs in the brain attenuates anatomic or functional deficits associated with injury or disease in the CNS via cell replacement, the release of specific neurotransmitters, and the production of neurotrophic factors that protect injured neurons and promote neuronal growth. Recently we have generated continuously dividing immortalized cell lines of human NSC from fetal human brain cell culture via a retroviral vector encoding v-*myc* (Kim 2004; Lee et al. 2007a; Kim et al. 2008b) and one of the immortalized NSC lines, HB1.F3, induced functional improvement in rat model of PD following transplantation into the striatum (Yasuhara et al. 2006).

Earlier studies have used gene transfer technology to develop treatment for PD by transferring tyrosine hydroxylase (TH) gene, a rate-limiting step enzyme in catecholamine biosynthesis process, into certain cell types and then implant these cells into the brain of PD animal models (Wolff et al. 1989; Fisher et al. 1991; Jiao et al. 1993; Anton et al. 1994; During et al. 1994). However, gene transfer of TH using genetically modified cells produced only partial restoration of behavioral and biochemical deficits in PD animal models, since the cells utilized did not carry sufficient amount of tetrahydrobiopterin (BH_4), a cofactor to support TH activity (Kang et al. 1993). Therefore, it is necessary to transfer additionally of GTP

cyclohydrolase-1 (GTPCH-1) gene that is the first and rate-limiting enzyme in the BH_4 biosynthetic pathway (Bencsics et al. 1996). Immortalized CNS-derived mouse NSC line C17.2 was transduced to carry tyrosine hydroxylase (TH) gene and GTP cyclohydrorylase-1 (GTPCH-1) gene for production of L-DOPA and following intra-striatal implantation behavioral improvement was seen in 6-hydroxydopamine-lesioned rats (Ryu et al. 2005). We have similarly engineered HB1.F3 human NSC line to produce L-DOPA by double transduction with human TH and GTPCH-1 genes, and following transplantation of these cells in the brain of PD rat model led to enhanced L-DOPA production *in vivo* and induced functional recovery (Kim et al. 2006).

Previous studies have reported that mouse ES cell-derived DA neurons show efficacy in PD animal models (Lee et al. 2000; Kim et al. 2002), whereas DA neurons from human ES cells generally show poor performance. In addition, there are considerable safety concerns for ES cells related to risk of tumor formation and neural overgrowth. More recent studies have indicated that functional human DA neurons could be generated efficiently from human ES cells and upon transplantation in rat PD models ES cell-derived DA neurons induced behavior recovery in the PD animals (Cho et al. 2008; Kirks et al. 2011). These studies indicate that large scale generation of DA neurons is possible from human ES cells as cellular source for cell therapy in PD patients. Human DA neurons derived from iPS cells may provide an ideal cellular source for transplantation therapy for PD. However, developing effective cell therapy approach for PD using iPS cells relies on optimizing *in vitro* production of iPS cell-derived DA neurons and preventing potential risk of teratoma formation *in vivo*. A recent study has reported generation of DA neurons from iPS cells derived from fibroblasts and improved behavior following transplantation of the DA neurons in PD model rats (Werning et al. 2008). Although further research is still required, cell therapy based on DA neurons derived from iPS cells will probably become a promising treatment technique in the coming days.

2.3 Huntington's Disease

Huntington's disease (HD) is an autosomal dominant neurodegenerative disorder characterized by involuntary choreiformic movements, cognitive impairment, and emotional disturbances (Greenamyre and Shoulson 1994; Harper 1996). Despite identification of the HD gene and associated protein, the mechanisms involved in the pathogenesis of HD remain largely unknown and thus hamper effective therapeutic interventions. Transplantation of fetal human brain tissue may serve as a useful strategy in reducing neuronal damage in HD brain and a recent study has documented improvements in motor and cognition performance in HD patients following fetal cell transplantation (Bachoud-Lévi et al. 2000). This trial follows previous reports in experimental animals of HD that striatal grafts could integrate and survive within the progressively degenerated striatum in transgenic HD mouse model (Dunnett et al. 1998). The latter study is consistent with results obtained from

HD patients indicating survival and differentiation of implanted human fetal tissue in the affected regions (Freeman et al. 2000). Cell replacement therapy using human fetal striatal grafts has shown clinical success in HD patients. However, a recent study has reported neural overgrowth of grafted tissue in a HD patient who survived 5 years post-transplantaion (Keene et al. 2009). Overgrown grafts were composed of neurons and glia embedded in disorganized neuropil. This report recalls safety concerns for fetal cell grafts related to potential risk of neural overgrowth following transplantation in HD patients.

Transplantation of NSCs to replace degenerated neurons or genetically modified NSCs producing neurotrophic factors have been used to protect striatal neurons against excitotoxic insults (Bjorklund and Lindvall 2000). At present, little is known regarding whether implantation of NSCs prior to neuropathological damage could alter the progressive degeneration of striatal neurons and motor deficits that occur in HD. This question is important since genetic study of Huntington disease gene mutation (Huntington's Disease Collaborative Research Group 1993) and neuroimaging can provide details on factors involved in the progression of HD (Harris et al. 1999; Thieben et al. 2002) suggesting early intervention using brain transplantation could be effective in "pre-clinical" HD patients carrying mutant HD gene. We have investigated the effectiveness of proactive transplantation of human NSCs into rat striatum of an HD rat prior to lesion formation and.demonstrated significantly improved motor performance and increased resistance to striatal neuron damage compared with control sham injections (Ryu et al. 2004). The neuroprotection provided by the proactive transplantation of human NSCs in the rat model of HD appears to be contributed by brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) secreted by the transplanted human NSCs.

Rodents and primates with lesions of the striatum induced by excitotoxic kainic acid (KA), or quinolinic acid (QA) have been used to simulate HD in animals and to test efficacy of experimental therapeutics experiments on neural transplantation (DiFiglia 1990). Excitotoxic animal models induced by QA, which stimulates glutamate receptors, resemble the histopathologic characteristics of HD patients, were utilized for cell therapy with mouse embryonic stem cells, mouse neural stem cells, mouse bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells and primary human neural precursor cells and resulted in varying degree of clinical improvement (Kordower et al. 1997b; Armstrong et al. 2000; McBride et al. 2004; Visnyei et al. 2006; Lee et al. 2005, 2006). We have recently injected human NSCs intravenously in QA-HD model rats and demonstrated functional recovery in HD animals (Lee et al. 2005, 2006). The systemic transplantation of NSCs via intravascular route is probably the least invasive method of cell administration (Lee et al. 2006). Neural cell transplantation into striatum requires an invasive surgical technique using a stereotaxic frame. Non-invasive transplantation via intravenous routes, if it may be effective in human, is much more attractive.

Systemic administration of 3-nitropropionic acid (3-NP) in rodents leads to metabolic impairment and gradual neurodegeneration of the basal ganglia with behavioral deficits similar to those associated with HD (Beal et al. 1993; Brouillet et al. 1995), and murine and human NSCs have been transplanted in the brain of

3-NP-HD animal models (Ryu et al. 2004; Roberts et al. 2006). The compound 3-NP is a toxin which inhibits the mitochondrial enzyme succinate dehydrogenase (SDH) and tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle thereby interfering with the synthesis of ATP (Alston et al. 1977).

We have investigated the effectiveness of transplantation of human NSCs into adult rat striatum prior to striatal damage induced by 3-NP toxin (Ryu et al. 2004). Animals receiving intrastriatal implantation of human NSCs 1 week prior to 3-NP treatments exhibited significantly improved motor performance and increased resistance to striatal neuron damage compared with control sham injections. The neuroprotection provided by the proactive transplantation of human NSCs in the rat model of HD appears to be contributed by brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) secreted by the transplanted human NSCs. Previous studies have also demonstrated that BDNF could block neuronal injury under pathological conditions in animal models of HD (Bemelmans et al. 1999; Pérez-Navarro et al. 2000). These findings suggest that proactively transplanted human NSCs were well integrated in the striatum and supported the survival of host striatal neurons against neuronal injury.

Human NSCs derived from ESCs could provide a viable cellular source for cell and therapy in HD, since they can be expanded indefinitely and differentiate into any cell type desired. Three previous studies have shown that neurons expressing striatal markers could be induced from ESCs and brain transplantation of these ESC-derived neurons in QA-lesioned rats leads to behavioral recovery in the animals (Song et al. 2007; Aubry et al. 2008; Vasey et al. 2010).

We have previously written a review that focuses on the stem cell-based therapy for HD and investigators who wish to learn more about the subject are referred to the review article (Kim et al. 2008a).

2.4 Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), known as Lou Gehric disease, is a relentlessly progressive, adult onset neurodegenerative disorder characterized by degeneration and loss of motor neurons in the cerebral cortex, brain stem and spinal cord, leading to muscle wasting and weakness, and eventually to death within 5 years after the onset of its clinical symptoms (Hudson 1990; Rowland and Shneider 2001). The proposed pathogenetic mechanisms of ALS, albeit not fully elucidated, include oxidative stress, protein aggregation, mitochondrial dysfunction, impaired axonal transport, glutamate-mediated excitotoxicity, and insufficient production of neurotrophic factors (Boillee et al. 2006). To date there is no effective treatment for patients suffering from ALS.

Recent studies have indicated that it is possible to generate motor neurons in culture from stem cells that include ESCs and NSCs (Wichterle et al. 2002; Harper et al. 2004; Miles et al. 2004; Li et al. 2005). Mouse ESC-derived motor neurons transplanted into motor neuron-injured rat spinal cord survived and extended axons

into ventral root (Miles et al. 2004), and human EGCs transplanted into cerebrospinal fluid of rats with motor neuron injury migrated into spinal cord and led to improved motor function (Kerr et al. 2003). Transplantation of NSCs isolated from fetal spinal cord (Xu et al. 2006) was also effective in delaying disease progression in mouse ALS model. These cell transplantation studies have shown functional improvement in animal models of ALS.

A recent study has reported that iPSCs isolated from an ALS patient were differentiated into motoneurons (Dimos et al. 2008) and these patient-derived neurons could be an ideal cellular source for transplantation. Neurons and glia induced from patient-derived iPSCs are ideal for cell therapy as the iPSC-derived neurons are autologous, easily accessible, without immune rejection and with no ethical problem although there is safety concern of tumor formation following the cell transplantation.

The systemic transplantation of NSCs via intravascular route is probably the least invasive method of cell administration in ALS. Non-invasive transplantation via intravenous routes is much more attractive than surgical technique. Recently rat NSCs labeled with green fluorescent protein were transplanted in rat ALS model via intravenous tail vein injection and 7 days later 13 % of injected cell were found in motor cortex, hippocampus and spinal cord. No improvement in clinical symptoms was reported (Miltrecic et al. 2010).

It is unrealistic to expect the transplantation of stem cells or stem cell-derived motor neurons in ALS patients in a clinical setting replaces lost neurons, integrates into existing neural circuitry and restores motor function. Rather preventing cell death in host motor neurons via provision of neurotrophic factors by transplanted stem cells or stem cell-derived motor neurons is more realistic and achievable approach (Lindvall and Kokaia 2006). Recent studies have shown that the application of an adenoviral vector encoding glial cell line-derived growth factor (GDNF) into injured rat facial motor nucleus rescued motor neurons from cell death (Watabe et al. 2000), and human cortical progenitor cells engineered to express GDNF and transplanted into the spinal cord of ALS rats survived and released the growth factor (Kerr et al. 2003). Several recent studies have also demonstrated that delivery of vascular endothelial cell growth factor (VEGF) significantly delayed disease onset and prolonged the survival of ALS animal models (Klein et al. 2005; Azzouz et al. 2004; Zheng et al. 2004; Storkebaum et al. 2005). VEGF is one of growth factors that can be used in combination with transplanted stem cells to improve therapeutic efficiency of cellular transplantation. VEGF is an angiogenetic growth factor acting as a potent mitogen and survival factor specific to endothelial cells, and also known for neurotrophic and neuroprotective effect against brain injury. Recently we have demonstrated that in transgenic SOD1/G93A mouse model of ALS (Gurney et al. 1994) intrathecal transplantation of human NSCs over-expressing VEGF (HB1.F3.VEGF) induced functional improvement, delayed disease onset for 7 days and extended the survival of animals for 15 days (Hwang et al. 2009b). Immunohistochemical investigation of SOD1/G93A mouse spinal cord demonstrated that the transplanted human NSCs migrated into spinal cord anterior horn and differentiated into motoneurons.

More recently, we generated motoneurons from human NSCs and transplanted these cells into spinal cord of SOD1G93A ALS mouse (Kim et al. 2011). Motoneurons were generated by treatment of human NSCs encoding Olig2 bHLH transcription factor gene (HB1.F3.Olig2) with sonic hedgehog (Shh) protein. HB1.F3.Olig2 NSCs treated with Shh for 4–7 days differentiated not motoneurons expressing motoneuron-specific markers HB-9, Isl-1 and choline acetyltransferase (ChAT) but did not express OLG markers such as O4, galctocerebroside or CNPase. Control HB1.F3.Olig2 NSCs grown in the absence of Shh did not express any of the motor neuron-specific cell type markers. Intrathecal transplantation of motoneuron-committed HB1.F3.Olig2+Shh human NSCs into L5 of spinal cord significantly delayed disease onset (9 days) and expanded the life span (22 days) of SOD1 G93A ALS mice, with 2 out of 6 mice living up to 35 days. Grafted NSCs were found within grey matter and anterior horn of the spinal cord. These results suggest that this treatment modality using genetically modified human NSCs might be of value in the treatment of ALS patients without significant adverse effects (Kim et al. 2011).

2.5 Alzheimer's Disease

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is characterized by degeneration and loss of neurons and synapses through out the brain particularly in basal fore brain, amygdala, hippocampus and cortical area. Memory and cognitive function of patients progressively decline, patients become demented and die prematurely (Whitehouse et al. 1981; Bartus et al. 1982; Coyle et al. 1983). No effective treatment is currently available except for acetylcholinesterase inhibitors which augment cholinergic function but is not curative and only a temporary measure.

As for the pathogenesis of AD, the amyloid cascade hypothesis postulates that memory deficits are caused by increased levels of both soluble and insoluble amyloid β (Aβ) peptides, which are derived from the larger amyloid precursor protein (APP) sequential proteolytic processing (Whitehouse et al. 1981; Bartus et al. 1982; Coyle et al. 1983; Hardy and Selkoe 2002). Recent study has reported that treatment of PDAPP mice, a transgenic mouse model of AD, with anti-Aβ antibody completely restored hippocampal acetylcholine release and high-affinity choline uptake and improved habituation learning (Bales et al. 2006). Based on the study, a clinical trial in AD patients is underway in the US.

Chronically decreasing Aβ levels in brain has been suggested as a possible therapeutic approach for AD, and several experimental evidence indicate that proteinases such as neprilysin (Iwata et al. 2001), insulin degrading enzyme (Farris et al. 2003; Miller et al. 2003), plasmin (Melchor et al. 2003) and cathepsin B (Mueller-Steiner et al. 2006) could be used as therapeutic agents to reduce Aβ levels in AD brain. Recent studies have shown that intracerebral injection of a lentivirus vector expressing human neprilysin in transgenic mouse models of amyloidosis reduced Aβ deposits in the brain and blocked neurodegeneration in the frontal cortex and

hippocampus (Marr et al. 2003), and that intracerebrally injected fibroblasts overexpressing human neprilysin gene were found to significantly reduce amyloid plaque burden in the brain of Aβ transgenic mice (Hemming et al. 2007). These studies support the use of Aβ-degrading proteases as a tool to therapeutically lower Aβ levels and encourage further investigation of *ex vivo* delivery of protease genes using human NSCs for the treatment of AD. We have recently generated a human NSC line encoding human neprylysin gene, transplanted these cells in lateral ventricle of AD transgenic mouse brain, and results are expected some time later.

Earlier studies have indicated that nerve growth factor (NGF) prevent neuronal death and improve memory in animal models of aging, excitotoxicity and amyloid toxicity (Hefti 1986; Fischer et al. 1987; Tuszynski et al. 1990; Emerich et al. 1994; Tuszynski 2002), and could be used for treating neuronal degeneration and cell death in AD brain. However, delivery of NGF into the brain is not possible via peripheral administration. Because of its size and polarity NGF does not cross the blood brain barrier. In order to overcome this difficulty, gene therapy approach could be adopted. Using *ex vivo* gene therapy approach via NGF encoding cells, NGF can be administered directly to the brain and diffuse for distance of 2–5 mm (Tuszynski et al. 1990). A phase 1 clinical trial of *ex vivo* NGF gene delivery was performed in eight mild AD patients by implanting autologous fibroblasts genetically modified to express human NGF into the forebrain. After mean follow-up of 22 months in 6 subjects, long-term adverse effects were not found. Evaluation by MMSE and ADASCS suggested improvement in the rate of cognitive decline. Serial PET scans showed significant increases in cortical fluorodeoxyglucose after treatment (Tuszynski et al. 2005). Since fibroblasts are known for their immobility following brain transplantation (Kang et al. 1993), NSCs with high migratory capacity and pathology-tropic property (Flax et al. 1998; Kim 2004; Lee et al. 2007a; Kim and de Vellis 2009) could be used in place of fibroblasts to deliver NGF into the AD brain. In learning deficit AD model rats induced by okadaic acid injection, transplantation of rat NSCs infected with adenovirus-NGF produced improvement in cognitive performance (Wu et al. 2008).

In a recent study, we used human NSCs in place of rodent NSCs or human fibroblasts to deliver NGF in ibotenic acid-induced learning deficit rats. Intrahippocampal injection of ibotenic acid caused severe neuronal loss, resulting in learning and memory deficit (Lee et al. 2012). NGF protein released by HB1.F3.NGF human NSCs in culture media is tenfold over the control F3 naive NSCs at 1.2 μg/10^6 cells/day. Intra-hippocampal transplantation of HB1.F3.NGF cells was found to express NGF and fully improved the learning and memory function of ibotenic acid-challenged animals. Transplanted HB1.F3.NGF human NSCs were found all over the brain and differentiated into neurons and astrocytes (Lee et al. 2012). In another study, brain derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), a member of neurotrophin family, secreted by transplanted mouse NSCs was responsible in enhancing cognitive function in triple transgenic mice that express pathogenic forms of myloid precursor protein, presenilin and tau. In these animals cognition was improved without altering Aβ or tau pathology (Blurton-Jones et al. 2009). In other studies in experimental rats with nucleus basalis of meynert (NBM) lesion induced by ibotenic acid,

transplantation of mouse or rat neural precursor cells (NPCs) promoted behavioral recovery (Wang et al. 2006; Moghadam et al. 2009).

In AD patients, dysfunction of the presynaptic cholinergic system is one of the causes of cognitive disorders where decreased activity of choline acetyltransferase (ChAT), which is responsible for acetylcholine (ACh) synthesis, is observed (Terry and Buccafusco 2003). To date, AD therapy has largely been based on small molecules designed to increase ACh concentration by inhibiting acetyl cholinesterase (Musiał et al. 2007). Since therapies with these drugs is only palliative without potential protection against progressive tissue destruction, there is a need for effective therapies for patients with AD, and stem cell-based therapeutic approaches targeting AD should fulfill this requirement. We have recently generated a human neural stem cell (NSC) line over-expressing human choline acetyltransferase (ChAT) gens and these HB1.F3.ChAT NSCs were transplanted into the brain of rat Alzheimer disease (AD) model which was generated by intra-hippocampal injection of kainic acid (KA) in CA3 region which results in severe neuronal loss and profound learning and memory deficit. Intraventricular transplantation of HB1.F3.ChAT human NSCs fully restored learning and memory (Park et al. 2012a). Similarly HB1.F3.ChAT human NSCs were transplanted in AD model rats generated by application of ethylcholine mustard aziridinium ion (AF64A) that specifically denatures chOLinergic nerves and thereby leads to memory deficit as a salient feature of AD (Yamazaki et al. 1991). Transplantation of NB1.F3.ChAT human NSCs in AF64A-treated mice fully restored the learning and memory function of AF64A animals (Park et al. 2012b).

2.6 Multiple Sclerosis

In multiple sclerosis (MS), Oligodendrocytes (OLGs) and myelin are destroyed by inflammation-mediated mechanism (McFarlin and McFarland 1982; Ebers 1988). Although recent advance in treatment using immune moderators such as interferon-β has improved clinical outcome in some patients, functional recovery in most of MS patients is not achieved (Paty and Ebers 1998). Therefore, there is substantial need for effective therapies for MS patients.

Previous studies have reported that OLGs or OLG progenitor cells isolated from mouse or rat brain were transplanted in the brain of dysmyelination mutants or chemically induced demyelination lesions in rats and induced remyeliation in previously dysmyelinated or demyelinated lesion sites (Franklin and Blakemore 1997; Espinosa de los Monteros et al. 1997, 2001; Learish et al. 1999; Zhang et al. 1999; Ben-Hur et al. 2003). Experimental animal models for MS used in transplantation studies include shiverer dymyelination mutant mouse, demyelination lesions induced by ethidium bromide, experimental allergic encephalitis (EAE) or mouse hepatitis virus. Therapeutic approach with myelinating glia could be applied in MS patients by transplantation of human OLGs into demylination lesions. Intact embryonic human brain fragments or OLG progenitors isolated from fetal human brain

have been placed in shiverer mouse brain, a mouse neurological mutant with defect in myelin basic protein gene, and remyelination was confirmed (Lachapelle et al. 1983; Gumpel et al. 1987; Seilhean et al. 1996; Windrem et al. 2004). Transplantation of human OLGs in MS patients to achieve remyelination of previously demyelinated axons, however, has not been undertaken to date. This therapeutic approach of transplantation of human OLGs or OLG progenitors derived from fetal brain is not widely acceptable because of moral, religious and logistic problems associated with tissue collection of human embryonic/fetal brain. In addition, the outcome of graft is not predictable since the implanted embryonic/fetal tissues contain mixed population of neurons, glial cells and CNS progenitor cells, and less than 10 % of cell population for graft expressed O_4, a marker for young OLG (Gumpel et al. 1987). This difficulty can be circumvented by utilization of OLGs or OLG progenitor cells derived from human ES cells or NSCs. Recent studies have reported that OLGs could be generated from mouse and human ES cells (Brüstle et al. 1999; Liu et al. 2000; Glaser et al. 2005; Nistor et al. 2005), bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells (Akiyama et al. 2002) or immortalized mouse NSCs (Yandava et al. 1999). In a mouse EAE, systemically injected mouse neural precursor cells (NPCs) selectively enter the inflamed CNS in EAE model and induce apoptosis of blood-borne CNS-infiltrating encephalitogenic T cells, thus protecting against chronic neural tissue loss. NPCs display immune-like functions that promote neuroprotection in the CN (Pluchino et al. 2005). Similarly human ESC-derived NPCs transplanted into the brain ventricles of EAE mouse reduced clinical signs of EAE and transplanted NPCs were found in the white matter. These results indicate that NPCs act as immune-like cells in the CNS (Aharonowiz et al. 2008).

OLGs could also be generated from stable established cell lines of human NSC and used as cell source of transplantation. Previously we have produced immortalized cell lines of human NSC from human embryonic telencephalon using a retroviral vector encoding myc oncogene (Kim 2004; Lee et al. 2007a; Kim et al. 2008a, b). This human NSC line, HB1.F3 (F3), can be genetically engineered to express foreign transgenes, and following transplantation into brain of animal models of PD, HD and stroke, F3 NSCs survived, differentiate into neurons and astrocytes, and reversed functional deficits (Kim 2004, Lee et al. 2007a; Kim and de Vellis 2009). Most recently we were successful in producing a new F3.Olig2 human NSC line by transduction of F3 with a retroviral vector encoding Olig2 bHLH transcription factor gene. Olig2 is a member of Olig bHLH transcription factor family and plays a crucial role in generation of OLGs and ensuing myelination in the CNS, and also a key factor for generation of spinal motoneurons (Lu et al. 2000; Zhou et al. 2000; Takebayashi et al. 2000; Copray et al. 2006). F3.Olig2 human NSCs, we have generated, express cell type specific markers for OLG progenitors (PDGFRα and NG2), and also cell type specific markers for OLG (O_4, galactocerebroside and CNP). F3.Olig2 NSCs were transplanted in contused rat spinal cord lesion site and at 7 weeks post-transplantation grafted NSCs were found in the white matter and differentiated into mature OLGs. Animals with F3.Olig2 grafts showed an improvement in hindlimbs locomotion (Hwang et al. 2009a).

Following transplantation of HB1.F3.Olig2 cells into the shiverer mouse brain, a mouse neurological mutant with congenital dysmyelination, an extensive

myelination was demonstrated (Kim 2013, Unpublished data). We expect this successful pre-clinical study could lead to cell-based therapy in MS patients, with provision of unlimited number of human OLG/OLG progenitor cells for transplantation from this human cell line.

2.7 Stroke

Stroke represents the second highest among the causes of death in East Asia including China, Japan and Korea, and third highest in US. There are two major types pf stroke and they are ischemia and intracerebral hemorrhage (ICH). Ischemic stroke caused by abrupt and near-total interruption of cerebral blood flow, produces ischemic changes in the striatum and cortex, leading to a long-term sensorimotor deficit. The major cause of ICH is hypertension and less common causes include trauma, infections, tumors, blood clotting deficiencies, and abnormalities in blood vessels such as arteriovenous malformations. Once damage from a stroke occurred, little can be done to restore premorbid functions, and although numerous neuroprotective agents have been clinically tried, no specific agents replaced the lost neurons, improved the deteriorated functions, and reduced the long-term sequelae (Marshall and Thomas 1988). There are numerous previous reports of stem cell transplantation in the stroke animal models (Savitz et al. 2002, 131), and various cellular sources such as human ESC- or iPSC-derived NSCs (Daadi et al. 2010; Kawai et al. 2010), immortalized human NSCs (Chu et al. 2003, 2004; Jeong et al. 2003; Lee et al. 2007a, b, 2009a, b, 2010), mouse neural precursor cells (Veizovic et al. 2001), rodent bone marrow MSCs, human umbilical cord blood cells, human bone marrow MSCs, human teratocarcinoma-derived neurons (Borlongan et al. 1998; Saporta et al. 1999) and were grafted into the ischemic or hemorrhagic rodent brain, and reduced the neurological deficits. An earlier study has reported that in human with ischemic infarct, intracerebral implantation of human teratocarcinoma NT2-derived neurons has resulted in functional improvement (Kondziolka et al. 2000).

Neural stem cells (NSCs) could be isolated from embryonic, fetal or adult CNS tissues of mammals including human. NSCs and neurons could also be derived from ESCs or iPSCs and transplanted in animal models of stroke inducing functional recovery in the animals (Daadi et al. 2010; Seminatore et al. 2010; Kawai et al. 2010). However, risk of tumor formation is a major obstacle to cell therapy based on human ESC- or iPSC-derived cells. Human neural progenitor cells (NPCs) derived from ESCs transplanted into rat brain with MCA lesions, resulted in tumor formation (Seminatore et al. 2010). In another study, transplantation of iPS-derived NSCs into rat ischemic brain also caused tumor formation (Kawai et al. 2010). ESC- and iPSC-derived cells have a promising potential to provide neurons and glia for the cell therapy in stroke. However proper and strict control of tumorigenesis has to be achieved before ESC- or iPSC-based cell therapy becomes a realistic clinical strategy.

We have previously investigated whether conditionally immortalized human NSCs could selectively migrate into lesioned brain sites, differentiate into new

neurons and/or glia, and improve the functional deficits in rat stroke models of focal ischemia (Chu et al. 2003, 2005) and cerebral hemorrhage (Jeong et al. 2003; Lee et al. 2007a, b, 2009a, b, 2010). NSCs can circumvent blood-brain barrier and migrate to the specific pathologic areas of brain with tropism. We introduced immortalized human NSCs intravenously via tail veins or into lesion site and NSCs migrated into the adult rat/mouse brain with transient focal cerebral ischemia or with cerebral hemorrhage. Transplanted human NSCs migrated to the lesion site, differentiated into neurons and astrocytes, and a large number of the grafted human NSCs survived in the lesion sites for up to 12 weeks (Figs. 2.2 and 2.3). Functional improvement was observed in the transplanted animals compared with non-grafted controls on rotarod and turning-in-an-alley tests. Transplantation of NSCs overexpressing neurotrophic factors such as vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) or brain derived growth factor (BDNF) induced good survival and neuroprotection of both host neurons and grafted NSCs in the lesion site and promoted functional improvement in the ICH model animals (Lee et al. 2007a, b, 2009a, b, 2010).

2.8 Spinal Cord Injury

Traumatic spinal cord injury (SCI) results in severe and permanent neurological deficits. However, there is no single effective therapeutic option to improve functional outcome. Intense research efforts, employing a rodent model of contusive injury which closely mimics human SCI, have identified that the pathology in the white matter incurred by injury is closely associated with the extent of functional recovery (Noble and Wrathall 1989; Fehlings and Tator 1995; Basso et al. 1996). One of the important pathological processes in the white matter is a chronic and progressive demyelination of spared axons (Bunge et al. 1993; Reier 2004; Guest et al. 2005), which occurs primarily due to delayed and widespread apoptosis of oligodendrocytes (OLGs) (Crowe et al. 1997; Springer et al. 1999).

Recent advances in stem cell biology have opened up an avenue to therapeutic strategies to replace lost neural cells by transplantation of stem cells in various disorders in the CNS. For spinal cord injury, various cell types such as genetically modified fibroblasts, olfactory ensheathing cells, Schwann cells and stem cells have been used to promote axonal regeneration (Tuszynski et al. 1994; Xu et al. 1995; Li et al. 1997; Liu et al. 1999; Teng et al. 2002). Since an earlier study showing that transplantation of embryonic stem cells (ESCs) promotes functional recovery (McDonald et al. 1999), several studies have reported that various stem or progenitor cells types including ESCs, bone marrow msCs and NSCs induce functional improvement following transplantation into the injured spinal cord (Teng et al. 2002; McDonald et al. 1999; Ogawa et al. 2002; Cao et al. 2005; Cummings et al. 2005; Keirstead et al. 2005; Iwanami et al. 2005; Karimi-Abdolrezaee et al. 2006). However, there are still many obstacles to be overcome before stem cell-based therapy can be adopted for SCI. One of such problems is a massive death of stem cells transplanted into the injured spinal cord tissue. Cell death of transplanted

stem cells arises because the molecular environment in the injured spinal cord tissue promotes apoptotic cell death (Benn and Woolf 2004). Apoptosis is a highly regulated form of cell death involving a cascade of signaling pathways both the extrinsic and intrinsic cell death pathways. It is crucial to develop a strategy to prevent apoptotic death of grafted stem cells for efficient therapeutic application of stem cell transplantation. In a recent study, we have investigated an experimental study to improve survival of grafted neural stem cells by over-expressing anti-apoptotic Bcl-XL gene. Bcl-XL is the most potent anti-apoptotic molecule in the Bcl-2 family, and found to protect various neuronal populations from apoptotic cell death (Yuan and Yankner 2000). Over-expression of Bcl-XL extends cell survival against apoptotic signals induced by a variety of treatments including viral infection, UV and γ-radiation, heat shock, and agents that promote formation of free radicals. We have recently generated a stable cell line of human NSCs over-expressing Bcl-XL gene and this HB1.F3.Bcl-XL cells were transplanted into contused spinal cord lesion in adult rats. As compared with control SCI rats that were implanted with parental human NSCs without Bcl-XL expression, SCI animals grafted with human NSCs over-expressing Bcl-XL demonstrated improved functional recovery. Histological examination of the spinal cord also revealed higher number of surviving cells in the spinal cord in the Bcl-XL group (Lee et al. 2009). It appears that the provision of anti-apoptotic protein to NSCs via gene transfer is one of the ways to extend survival of grafted stem cells in inhospitable environment of SCI lesion site. We have previously established clonal human NSC lines that were immortalized by retroviral transduction of v-myc gene (Flax et al. 1998; Kim 2004; Lee et al. 2007a). The human NSC line is a clonally isolated and can be expanded in a short amount of time. It has the ability to self-renew and differentiate into cells of neural and glial lineage in both *in vivo* and *in vitro*. It has been shown that immortalized NSCs differentiates into neurons, astrocytes and oligodendrocytes *in vivo*, with differentiated neurons forming synapses with other cells, and the immortalized NSCs have advantage of being more amenable to genetic manipulation (Snyder et al. 1992; Snyder 1994; Gage 2000; Kim 2004; Lee et al. 2007a; Kim and de Vellis 2009). We have previously written an extensive review that focuses on the stem cell-based therapy for SCI and investigators who wish to learn more about the subject are referred to the review article (Kim et al. 2007).

2.9 Perspectives

There are a number of issues to be clarified before adoption of stem cells for cell replacement therapy and gene therapy is widely accepted in clinical medicine such as which type of stem cells are most suitable for cell replacement therapy in patients with neurological disorders or brain injury, and safety issues related to the risk of tumorigenesis by grafted stem cells. Since neurons could be derived not only from NSCs, but also from ESCs, EGCs, bone marrow MSCs, umbilical cord blood hematopoietic stem cells and even from iPS cells generated from adult somatic cells, the most pressing question is which cells are best suited for cell replacement therapy.

Since the presence of NSCs in adult CNS is known, it is only a matter of time before neurons and glial cells are cultured from adult CNS tissue samples. There are ongoing debates as to why oocytes, embryonic or fetal materials should be used to generate stem cells when stem cells could be isolated from adult tissues. However, most of research up to now indicates that embryonic or fetal stem cells are significantly more versatile and plastic than adult counterparts.

Previous studies have demonstrated that ESC- or NSC-derived neurons or glial cells could be renewable cell source in cell based therapy for patients suffering from neurological diseases including PD, HD, ALS, AD, MS, stroke and spinal cord injury, however, there exist serious caveats that limit the use of stem cell-derived neurons or glial cells for the purpose. The considerations include (i) the long-term survival and phenotype stability of stem cell-derived neurons or glial cells in the graft following transplantation are not favorable as earlier studies have demonstrated, (ii) highly purified populations of neuronal cell type derived from ESCs or NSCs may contain other neuronal or glial cell types that might produce unpredictable interactions among grafted cells or with host neurons, and (iii) a small number of ESCs or iPSCs that escaped differentiation and selection processes might expand and form tumor in the graft site following transplantation.

Continuously dividing immortalized cell lines of human NSCs as generated by introduction of oncogenes have advantageous features for cell replacement therapy and gene therapy and the features include that human NSCs are homogeneous since they were generated from a single clone, can be expanded to large numbers *in vitro*, and stable expression of therapeutic genes can be achieved readily. Immortalized human NSCs have emerged as highly effective source of cells for genetic manipulation and gene transfer into the CNS *ex vivo* and once transplanted into damaged brain they survive well, integrate into host tissues and differentiate into both neurons and glial cells. It is known that both extrinsic and heritable intrinsic signals play important roles in generating cellular diversity in the CNS. By introducing relevant signal molecules or regulatory genes into the human stem cell line, it is now possible to obtain a large number of selected populations of neurons or glial cells from continuously growing human NSCs. Further studies are needed in order to identify the signals for proliferation, differentiation and integration of NSCs and determine favorable conditions of host brain environment for implanted NSCs to survive, prosper and restore the damaged brain.

References

Agid Y (1991) Parkinson's disease: pathophysiology. Lancet 337:1321–1324

Aharonowiz M, Einstein O, Fainstein N, Lassmann H, Reubinoff B, Ben-Hur T (2008) Neuroprotective effect of transplanted human embryonic stem cell-derived neural precursors in an animal model of multiple sclerosis. PLoS One 3:e3145

Akiyama Y, Radke C, Kocsis JD (2002) Remyelination of rat spinal cord by implantation of identified bone marrow stromal cells. J Neurosci 22:6623–6630

Alston TA, Mela L, Bright HJ (1977) 3-Nitropropionate, the toxic substrate of Indigofera, is a suicide inactivator of succinate dehydrogenase. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 74:3767–3771

Anton R, Kordower JH, Maidment NT, Manaster JS, Kane DJ, Rabizadeh S, Schueller SB, Yang J, Rabizadeh S, Edwards RH (1994) Neural-targeted gene therapy for rodent and primate hemiparkinsonism. Exp Neurol 127:207–218

Armstrong RJ, Watts C, Svendsen CN, Dunnett SB, Rosser AE (2000) Survival, neuronal differentiation, and fiber outgrowth of propagated human neural precursor grafts in an animal model of Huntington's disease. Cell Transplant 9:55–64

Aubry L, Bugi A, Lefort N, Rousseau F, Peschanski M, Perrier AL (2008) Striatal progenitors derived from ES cells mature into DARPP32 neurons in vitro and in quinolinic acid-lesioned rats. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:16707–16712

Azzouz M, Ralph GS, Storkebaum E, Walmsley LE, Mitrophanous KA, Kingsman SM, Carmeliet P, Mazarakis ND (2004) VEGF delivery with retrogradely transported lentivector prolongs survival in a mouse ALS model. Nature 429:413–417

Bachoud-Lévi AC, Rémy P, Nguyen JP, Brugières P, Lefaucheur JP, Bourdet C, Baudic S, Gaura V, Maison P, Haddad B, Boissé MF, Grandmougin T, Jény R, BartOLomeo P, Dalla Barba G, Degos JD, Lisovoski F, Ergis AM, Pailhous E, Cesaro P, Hantraye P, Peschanski M (2000) Motor and cognitive improvements in patients with Huntington's disease after neural transplantation. Lancet 356:1975–1979

Bales KR, Tzavara ET, Wu S, Wade MR, Bymaster FP, Paul SM, Nomikos GG (2006) Cholinergic dysfunction in a mouse model of Alzheimer disease is reversed by an anti-Aβ antibody. J Clin Invest 116:825–832

Bartus R, Dean RL, Beer B, Lippa AS (1982) The cholinergic hypothesis of geriatric memory dysfunction. Science 217:408–411

Basso DM, Beattie MS, Bresnahan JC (1996) Graded histological and locomotor outcomes after spinal cord contusion using the NYU weight-drop device versus transection. Exp Neurol 139:244–256

Beal MF, Brouillet E, Jenkins BG, Ferrante RJ, Kowall NW, Miller JM, Storey E, Srivastava R, Rosen BR, Hyman BT (1993) Neurochemical and histologic characterization of striatal excitotoxic lesions produced by the mitochondrial toxin 3-nitropropionic acid. J Neurosci 13:4181–4192

Bemelmans AP, Horellou P, Pradier L, Brunet I, Colin P, Mallet J (1999) Brain-derived neurotrophic factor-mediated protection of striatal neurons in an excitotoxic rat model of Huntington's disease, as demonstrated by adenoviral gene transfer. Hum Gene Ther 10:2987–2997

Bencsics C, Wachtel SR, Milstien S, Hatakeyama K, Becker JB, Kang UJ (1996) Double transduction with GTP cyclohydrolase1 and tyrosine hydroxylase is necessary for spontaneous synthesis of L-DOPA by primary fibroblasts. J Neurosci 16:4449–4456

Ben-Hur T, Einstein O, Mizrachi-KOL R, Ben-Menachem O, Reinhartz E, Karussis D, Abramsky O (2003) Transplanted multipotential neural progenitor cells migrate into the inflamed white matter in response to experimental allergic encephalitis. Glia 41:73–80

Benn SC, Woolf CJ (2004) Adult neuron survival strategies – slamming on the brakes. Nat Rev Neurosci 5:686–700

Björklund A, Lindvall O (2000) Cell replacement therapies for central nervous system disorders. Nat Neurosci 3:537–544

Björklund A, Stenevi U (1979) Reconstruction of the nigrostriatal dopamine pathway by intracerebral nigral transplants. Brain Res 177:555–560

Blurton-Jones M, Kitazawa M, Martinez-Coria H, Castello NA, Muller FJ, Loring JF, Yamasaki TR, Poon W, Green KN, LaFerla FM (2009) Neural stem cells improve cognition via BDNF in a transgenic model of Alzheimer disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106:13594–13598

Boillee S, Van de Velde C, Cleveland DW (2006) ALS: a disease of motor neurons and their nonneuronal neighbors. Neuron 52:39–59

Borlongan CV, Tajima Y, Trojanowski JQ, Lee VM, Sanberg PR (1998) Transplantation of cryopreserved human embryonic carcinoma-derived neurons (NT2N cells) promotes functional recovery in ischemic rats. Exp Neurol 149:310–321

Brouillet E, Hantraye P, Ferrante RJ, Dolan R, Leroy-Willig A, Kowall NW, Beal MF (1995) Chronic mitochondrial energy impairment produces selective striatal degeneration and abnormal movements in primates. Proc Natl Acad Sci 92:7105–7109

Brustle O, McKay RG (1996) Neuronal progenotors as tools for cell replacement in the nervous system. Curr Opin Neurobiol 6:688–695

Brüstle O, Jones KN, Learish RD, Karram K, Choudhary K, Wiestler OD, Duncan ID, McKay RD (1999) Embryonic stem cell-derived glial precursors: a source for myelinating transplants. Science 285:754–756

Bunge RP, Puckett WR, Becerra JL, Marcillo A, Quencer RM (1993) Observations on the pathology of human spinal cord injury. Adv Neurol 59:75–89

Cao Q, Xu XM, Devries WH, Enzmann GU, Ping P, Tsoulfas P, Wood PM, Bunge MB, Whittemore SR (2005) Functional recovery in traumatic spinal cord injury after transplantation of multineurotrophin-expressing glial-restricted precursor cells. J Neurosci 25:6947–6957

Cho MS, Lee YE, Kim JY, Chung S, Cho YH, Kim D, Kang S, Lee H, Kim M, Kim J, Leem JW, Oh SK, Choi YM, Hwang D, Chang JW, Kim D (2008) Highly efficient and large scale generation of functional dopamine neurons from human embryonic stem cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:3387–3392

Chu K, Kim M, Jeong SW, Kim SU, Yoon BW (2003) Human neural stem cells can migrate, differentiate and integrate after intravenous transplantation in adult rats with transient forebrain ischemia. Neurosci Lett 343:637–643

Chu K, Kim M, Chae SH, Jeong SW, Kang KS, Jung KH, Kim J, Kim YJ, Kang L, Kim SU, Yoon BW (2004) Distribution and in situ proliferation patterns of intravenously injected immortalized human neural stem-like cells in rats with focal cerebral ischemia. Neurosci Res 50:459–465

Chu K, Park KI, Lee ST, Jung KH, Ko SY, Kang L, Sinn DI, Lee YS, Kim SU, Kim M, Roh JK (2005) Combined treatment of vascular endothelial growth factor and human neural stem cells in experimental focal cerebral ischemia. Neurosci Res 53:384–390

Chung S, Sonntag KC, Andersson T, Bjorklund LM, Park JJ, Kim DW, Kang UJ, Isacson O, Kim KS (2002) Genetic engineering of mouse embryonic stem cells by Nurr1 enhances differentiation and maturation into dopaminergic neurons. Eur J Neurosci 16:1829–1838

Copray S, Balasubramaniyan V, Levenga J, de Bruijn J, Liem R, Boddeke E (2006) Olig2 overexpression induces the in vitro differentiation of neural stem cells into mature oligodendrocytes. Stem Cells 24:1001–1010

Coyle JT, Price DL, DeLong MR (1983) Alzheimer's disease: a disorder of cortical cholinergic innervation. Science 219:1184–1190

Crowe MJ, Bresnahan JC, Shuman SL, Masters JN, Beattie MS (1997) Apoptosis and delayed degeneration after spinal cord injury in rats and monkeys. Nat Med 3:73–76

Cummings BJ, Uchida N, Tamaki SJ, Salazar DL, Hooshmand M, Summers R, Gage FH, Anderson AJ (2005) Human neural stem cells differentiate and promote locomotor recovery in spinal cord-injured mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102:14069–14074

Daadi MM, Davis AS, Arac A, Li Z, Maag AL, Bhatnagar R, Jiang K, Sun G, Wu JC, Steinberg GK (2010) Human neural stem cell grafts modify microglial response and enhance axonal sprouting in neonatal hypoxic-ischemic brain injury. Stroke 41(516–523):2010

DiFiglia M (1990) Excitotoxic injury of the neostriatum: a model for Huntington's disease. Trends Neurosci 13:286–289

Dimos JT, RodOLfa KT, Niakan KK, Weisenthal LM, Mitsumoto H, Chung W, Croft GF, Saphier G, Leibel R, Goland R, Wichterle H, Henderson CE, Eggan K (2008) Induced pluripotent stem cells generated from patient with ALS can be differentiated into motor neurons. Science 321:1218–1221

Dunnett SB, Bjorklund A (1999) Prospects for new restorative and neuroprotective treatments in Parkinson's disease. Nature 399:A32–A39

Dunnett SB, Carter RJ, Watts C, Torres EM, Mahal A, Mangiarini L, Bates G, Morton AJ (1998) Striatal transplantation in a transgenic mouse model of Huntington's disease. Exp Neurol 154:31–40

During MJ, Naegele JR, O'Malley KL, Geller AI (1994) Long-term behavioral recovery in parkinsonian rats by an HSV vector expressing tyrosine hydroxylase. Science 266:1399–1403

Ebers GC (1988) Multiple sclerosis and other demyelinating diseases. In: Asbury A, McKhann G, McDonald W (eds) Diseases of the Nervous System. WB Saunders, Philadelphia, pp 1268–1291

Emerich DF, Winn SR, Harper J, Hammang JP, Baetge EE, Kordower JH (1994) Implants of polymer-encapsulated human NGF-secreting cells in the non-human primate: rescue and sprouting of degenerating cholinergic basal forebrain neurons. J Comp Neurol 349:148–164

Eriksson PS, Perfilieva E, Björk-Eriksson T, Alborn AM, Nordborg C, Peterson DA, Gage FH (1998) Neurogenesis in the adult human hippocampus. Nat Med 4:1313–1317

Espinosa de los Monteros A, Zhao P, Huang C, Pan T, Chang R, Nazarian R, Espejo D, de Vellis J (1997) Transplantation of CG4 oligodendrocyte progenitor cells in the myelin-deficient rat brain results in myelination of axons and enhanced oligodendroglial markers. J Neurosci Res 50:872–887

Espinosa de los Monteros A, Baba H, Zhao PM, Pan T, Chang R, de Vellis J, Ikenaka K (2001) Remyelination of the adult demyelinated mouse brain by grafted oligodendrocyte progenitors. Neurochemical Res 26:673–682

Farris W, Mansourian S, Chang Y, Lindsley L, Eckman EA, Frosch MP, Eckman CB, Tanzi RE, Selkoe DJ, Guenette S (2003) Insulin-degrading enzyme regulates the levels of insulin, amyloid beta protein and the beta-amyloid precursor protein intracellular domain in vivo. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:4162–4167

Fehlings MG, Tator CH (1995) The relationships among the severity of spinal cord injury, residual neurological function, axon counts, and counts of retrogradely labeled neurons after experimental spinal cord injury. Exp Neurol 132:220–228

Fischer W, Wictorin K, Björklund A, Williams LR, Varon S, Gage FH (1987) Amelioration of cholinergic neuron atrophy and spatial memory impairment in aged rats by nerve growth factor. Nature 329:65–68

Fisher LJ, Jinnah HA, Kale LC, Higginss GA, Gage FH (1991) Survival and function of intrastriatally grafted primary fibroblasts genetically modified to produce L-DOPA. Neuron 6:371–380

Flax JD, Aurora S, Yang C, Simonin C, Wills AM, Billinghurst LL, Jendoubi M, Sidman RL, Wolfe JH, Kim SU, Snyder EY (1998) Engraftable human neural stem cells respond to developmental cues, replace neurons and express foreign genes. Nat Biotechnol 16:1033–1039

Franklin RJ, Blakemore WF (1997) Transplanting oligodendrocyte progenitors into the adult CNS. J Anat 190:23–33

Freeman TB, Cicchetti F, Hauser RA, Deacon TW, Li XJ, Hersch SM, Nauert GM, Sanberg PR, Kordower JH, Saporta S, Isacson O (2000) Transplanted fetal striatum in Huntington's disease: phenotypic development and lack of pathology. Proc Nat Acad Sci USA 97:13877–13882

Gage FH (2000) Mammalian neural stem cells. Science 287:1433–1438

Glaser T, Perez-Bouza A, Klein K, Brustle O (2005) Generation of purified oligodendrocyte progenitors from embryonic stem cells. FASEB J 19:112–114

Goldman S (2005) Stem and progenitor cell-based therapy of the human central nervous system. Nat Biotechnol 7:862–871

Gottlieb DI (2002) Large scale sources of neural stem cells. Annu Rev Neurosci 25:381–407

Greenamyre JT, Shoulson I (1994) Huntington disease. In: Calne D (ed) Neurodegenerative disease. WB Saunders, Philadelphia, pp 65–704

Guest JD, Hiester ED, Bunge RP (2005) Demyelination and Schwann cell responses adjacent to injury epicenter cavities following chronic human spinal cord injury. Exp Neurol 192:384–393

Gumpel M, Lachapelle F, Gansmuller A, Baulac M, Baron van Evercooren A, Baumann N (1987) Transplantation of human embryonic oligodendrocytes into shiverer brain. Ann N Y Acad Sci 495:71–85

Gurney ME, Pu H, Chiu AY, Dal Canto MC, Polchow CY, Alexander DD, Caliendo J, Hentati A, Kwon YW, Deng HX et al (1994) Motor neuron degeneration in mice that express a human Cu, Zn superoxide dismutase mutation. Science 264:1772–1775

Hagell P, Brundin P (2002) Cell survival and clinical outcome following intrastriatal transplantation in Parkinson disease. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 60:741–752

Hagell P, Schrag A, Piccini P, Jahanshahi M, Brown R, Rehncrona S, Widner H, Brundin P, Rothwell JC, Odin P, Wenning GK, Morrish P, Gustavii B, Björklund A, Brooks DJ, Marsden CD, Quinn NP, Lindvall O (1999) Sequential bilateral transplantation in Parkinson's disease: effects of the second graft. Brain 122:1121–1132

Hardy J, Selkoe DJ (2002) The amyloid hypothesis of Alzheimer's disease: progress and problems on the road to therapeutics. Science 297:353–356

Harper PS (1996) Huntington's disease. W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia

Harper JM, Krishnan C, Darman JS (2004) Axonal growth of embryonic stem cell-derived motoneurons in vitro and in motoneuron-injured adult rats. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 101:7123–7128

Harris GJ, Codori AM, Lewis RF, Schmidt E, Bedi A, Brandt J (1999) Reduced basal ganglia blood flow and volume in pre-symptomatic, gene-tested persons at-risk for Huntington's disease. Brain 122:1667–1678

Hefti F (1986) NGF promotes survival of septal cholinergic neurons after fimbrial transection. J Neurosci 6:2155–2161

Hemming ML, Patterson M, Reske-Nielsen C, Lin L, Isacson O, Selkoe DJ (2007) Reducing amyloid plaque burden via ex vivo gene delivery of an Aβ-degrading protease: a novel therapeutic approach to Alzheimer disease. PLoS Med 4:e262

Hudson AJ (1990) Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: concepts in pathogenesis and etiology. University of Toronto Press, Toronto

Huntington's Disease Collaborative Research Group (1993) A novel gene containing a trinucleotide repeat that is expanded and unstable on Huntington's disease chromosomes. Cell 72:971–983

Hwang DH, Kim BG, Kim EJ, Lee SI, Joo IS, Suh-Kim H, Sohn S, Kim SU (2009a) Transplantation of human neural stem cells transduced with Olig2 transcription factor improves locomotor recovery and enhances myelination in the white matter of rat spinal cord following contusive injury. BMC Neurosci 10:117

Hwang DH, Lee HJ, Seok JI, Kim BG, Joo IS, Kim SU (2009b) Intrathecal transplantation of human neural stem cells over-expressing VEGF provides behavioral improvement, disease onset delay and survival extension in transgenic ALS mice. Gene Ther 16:1234–1244

Iwanami A, Kaneko S, Nakamura M (2005) Transplantation of human neural stem cells for spinal cord injury in primates. J Neurosci Res 80:182–190

Iwata N, Tsubuki S, Takaki Y, Shirotani K, Lu B, Gerard NP, Gerard C, Hama E, Lee HJ, Saido TC (2001) Metabolic regulation of brain Abeta by neprilysin. Science 292:1550–1562

Jeong SW, Chu K, Kim MH, Kim SU, Roh JK (2003) Human neural stem cell transplantation in experimental intracerebral hemorrhage. Stroke 34:2258–2263

Jiao S, Gurevich V, Wolff JA (1993) Long-term correction of rat model of Parkinson's disease by gene therapy. Nature 362:450–453

Kang UJ, Fisher LJ, Joh TH, O'Malley KL, Gage FH (1993) Regulation of dopamine production by genetically modified primary fibroblasts. J Neurosci 13:5203–5211

Karimi-Abdolrezaee S, Eftekharpour E, Wang J, Morshead CM, Fehlings MG (2006) Delayed transplantation of adult neural precursor cells promotes remyelination and functional neurological recovery after spinal cord injury. J Neurosci 26:3377–3389

Kawai H, Yamashita T, Ohta Y, Deguchi K, Nagotani S, Zhang X, Ikeda Y, Matsuura T, Abe K (2010) Tridermal tumorigenesis of induced pluripotent stem cells transplanted in ischemic brain. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 30:1487–1493

Kawasaki H, Mizuseki K, Nishikawa S, Kaneko S, Kuwana Y, Nakanishi S, Nishikawa SI, Sasai Y (2000) Induction of midbrain dopaminergic neurons from ES cells by stromal cell-derived inducing activity. Neuron 28:31–40

Keene CD, Chang RC, Leverentz JB, Kopyov O, Perlman S, Hevner RF, Born DE, Bird TD, Montine TJ (2009) A patient with Huntington's disease and long-surviving fetal neural transplants that developed mass lesions. Acta Neuropathol 117:329–338

Keirstead HS, Nistor G, Bernal G, Totoiu M, Cloutier F, Sharp K, Steward O (2005) Human embryonic stem cell-derived oligodendrocyte progenitor cell transplants remyelinate and restore locomotion after spinal cord injury. J Neurosci 25:4694–4705

Kerr DA, Lladó J, Shamblott MJ, Maragakis NJ, Irani DN, Crawford TO, Krishnan C, Dike S, Gearhart JD, Rothstein JD (2003) Human embryonic germ cell derivatives facilitate motor recovery of rats with diffuse motor neuron injury. J Neurosci 23:5131–5140

Kim BG, Hwang DH, Lee SI, Kim SU (2007) Stem cell-based cell therapy for spinal cord injury. Cell Transplant 16:355–364

Kim JH, Auerbach JM, Rodríguez-Gómez JA, Velasco I, Gavin D, Lumelsky N, Lee SH, Nguyen J, Sánchez-Pernaute R, Bankiewicz K, McKay R (2002) Dopamine neurons derived from embryonic stem cells function in an animal model of Parkinson's disease. Nature 418: 50–56

Kim KS, Lee HJ, An J, Seo YY, Park SJ, Lim IJ, Kim SU (2011) Generation of motor neurons from human neural stem cells and motor neuron-base cell therapy in ALS mouse. Soc Neurosci Prog 558.06/H11

Kim M, Lee ST, Chu K, Kim SU (2008a) Stem cell-based cell therapy for Huntington disease: a review. Neuropathology 28:1–9

Kim SU, Nagai A, Nakagawa E, Choi HB, Bang JH, Lee HJ, Lee MA, Lee YB, Park IH (2008b) Production and characterization of immortal human neural stem cell line with multipotent differentiation property. Methods Mol Biol 438:103–121

Kim SU (2004) Human neural stem cells genetically modified for brain repair in neurological disorders. Neuropathology 24:159–174

Kim SU, Park IH, Kim TH, Kim KS, Choi HB, Hong SH, Bang JH, Lee MA, Joo IS, Lee CS, Kim YS (2006) Brain transplantation of human neural stem cells transduced with tyrosine hydroxylase and GTP cyclohydrolase 1 provides functional improvement in animal models of Parkinson disease. Neuropathology 26:129–140

Kim SU, de Vellis J (2009) Stem cell-based cell therapy in neurological diseases: a review. J Neurosci Res 88:2183–2200

Kim TE, Lee HS, Lee YB, Hong SH, Lee YS, Ichinose H, Kim SU, Lee MA (2003) Sonic hedgehog and FGF8 collaborate to induce dopaminergic phenotype in Nurr-1 over-expressing neural stem cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 305:1040–1048

Kirks S, Shim JW, Piao J, Ganat YM, Wakeman DR, Xie Z, Carrillo-Reid L, Auyeung G, Antonacci C, Buch A, Yang L, Beal MF, Surmeier DJ, Kordower JH, Tabar V, Studer L (2011) Dopamine neurons derived from human ES cells efficiently engraft in animal models of Parkinson's disease. Nature 480:547–551

Kish SJ, Shannak K, Hornykiewitcz O (1988) Uneven pattern of dopamine loss in the striatum of patients with idiopathic Parkinson's disease. Pathophysiologic and clinical implications. N Eng J Med 318:876–880

Klein SM, Behrstock S, McHugh J, Hoffmann K, Wallace K, Suzuki M, Aebischer P, Svendsen CN (2005) GDNF delivery using human neural progenitor cells in a rat model of ALS. Hum Gene Ther 16:509–521

Kondziolka D, Wechsler L, Goldstein S, Meltzer C, Thulborn KR, Gebel J, Jannetta P, DeCesare S, Elder EM, McGrogan M, Reitman MA, Bynum L (2000) Transplantation of cultured human neuronal cells for patients with stroke. Neurology 55:565–569

Kordower JH, Goetz CG, Freeman TB, Olanow CW (1997a) Dopaminergic transplants in patients with Parkinson's disease: neuroanatomical correlates of clinical recovery. Exp Neurol 144:41–46

Kordower JH, Chen EY, Winkler C, Fricker R, Charles V, Messing A, Mufson EJ, Wong SC, Rosenstein JM, Björklund A, Emerich DF, Hammang J, Carpenter MK (1997b) Grafts of EGF-responsive neural stem cells derived from GFAP-hNGF transgenic mice: trophic and tropic effects in a rodent model of Huntington's disease. J Comp Neurol 387:96–113

Lachapelle F, Gumpel M, Baulac C, Jacque C (1983) Transplantation of fragments of CNS into the brain of shiverer mutant mice: extensive myelination of transplanted oligodendrocytes. Dev Neurosci 6:326–334

Lang AE, Lozano AM (1998a) Parkinson's disease. First of two parts. N Engl J Med 339:1044–1053

Lang AE, Lozano AM (1998b) Parkinson's disease. Second of two parts. N Engl J Med 339:1130–1143

Learish RD, Brustle O, Zhang SC, Duncan ID (1999) Intraventricular transplantation of oligodendrocyte progenitors into a fetal myelin mutants in widespread formation of myelin. Ann Neurol 46:716–722

Lee SH, Lumelsky N, Studer L, Auerbach JM, McKay RD (2000) Efficient generation of midbrain and hindbrain neurons from mouse embryonic stem cells. Nat Biotechol 18:675–679

Lee ST, Chu K, Park JE, Lee K, Kang L, Kim SU, Kim M (2005) Intravenous administration of human neural stem cells induces functional recovery in Huntington's disease rat model. Neurosci Res 52:243–249

Lee ST, Park JE, Lee K, Kang L, Chu K, Kim SU, Kim M, Roh JK (2006) Noninvasive method of immortalized neural stem-like cell transplantation in an experimental model of Huntington's disease. J Neurosci Methods 52:250–254

Lee HJ, Kim KS, Kim EJ, Choi HB, Lee KH, Park IH, Ko Y, Jeong SW, Kim SU (2007a) Brain transplantation of human neural stem cells promotes functional recovery in mouse intracerebral hemorrhage stroke model. Stem Cells 25:211–224

Lee HJ, Kim KS, Kim EJ, Park IH, Kim SU (2007b) Human neural stem cells over-expressing VEGF provide neuroprotection, angiogenesis and functional recovery in mouse stroke model. PLoS One 1:e156

Lee HJ, Park IH, Kim HJ, Kim SU (2009a) Human neural stem cells overexpressing glial cell line derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) promote functional recovery and neuroprotection in experimental cerebral hemorrhage. Gene Ther 16:1066–1076

Lee HJ, Kim MK, Kim HJ, Kim SU (2009b) Human neural stem cells genetically modified to overexpress Akt1 provide neuroprotection and functional improvement in mouse stroke model. PLoS One 4:e5586

Lee HJ, Lim IJ, Lee MC, Kim SU (2010) Human neural stem cells genetically modified to overexpress BDNF promote functional recovery and neuroprotection in mouse stroke model. J Neurosci Res 88:3282–3294

Lee HJ, Lim IJ, Park SW, Kim YB, Ko Y, Kim SU (2012) Human neural stem cells genetically modified to express human nerve growth factor gene restore cognition in ibotenic acid-induced cognitive dysfunction. Cell Transplant 21:2487–2496

Lee SI, Kim BG, Hwang DH, Kim HM, Kim SU (2009) Overexpression of Bcl-XL in human neural stem cells promotes graft survival and functional recovery following transplantation in spinal cord injury. J Neurosci Res 87:3186–3197

Li Y, Field PM, Raisman G (1997) Repair of adult rat corticospinal tract by transplants of olfactory ensheathing cells. Science 277:2000–2002

Li P, Tessler A, Han SS, Fischer I, Rao MS, Selzer ME (2005) Fate of immortalized human neuronal progenitor cells transplanted in rat spinal cord. Arch Neurol 62:223–229

Lindvall O, Kokaia Z (2006) Stem cells for the treatment of neurological disorders. Nature 441:1094–1096

Lindvall O, Brundin P, Widner H, Rehncrona S, Gustavii B, Frackowiak R, Leenders KL, Sawle G, Rothwell JC, Marsden CD (1990) Grafts of fetal dopamine neurons survive and improve motor function in Parkinson's disease. Science 247:574–577

Lindvall O, Kokaia Z, Martinez-Serrano A (2004) Stem cell therapy for human neurodegenerative disorders-how to make it work. Nat Med 10(Suppl):S42–S50

Liu Y, Kim D, Himes BT, Murray M, Tessler A, Fischer I (1999) Transplants of fibroblasts genetically modified to express BDNF promote regeneration of adult rat rubrospinal axons and recovery of forelimb function. J Neurosci 19:4370–4387

Liu S, Qu Y, Stewart TJ, Howard MJ, Chakrabortty S, Holekamp TF, McDonald JW (2000) Embryonic stem cells differentiate into oligodendrocytes and myelinate in culture and after transplantation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 97:6126–6131

Lu QR, Yuk D, Alberta JA, Zhu Z, Pawlitzky I, Chan J, McMahon AP, Stiles CD, Rowitch DH (2000) Sonic hedgehog-regulated oligodendrocyte lineage genes encoding bHLH proteins in the mammalian central nervous system. Neuron 25:317–329

Lyons MK (2011) Deep brain stimulation: current and future clinical applications. Mayo Clin Proc 86:662–672

Marr RA, Rockenstein E, Mukherjee A, Kindy MS, Hersh LB, Gage FH, Verma IM, Masliah E (2003) Neprilysin gene transfer reduces human amyloid pathology in transgenic mice. J Neurosci 23:1992–1996

Marshall J, Thomas DJ (1988) Cerebrovascular disease. In: Asbury A, McKhann G, McDonald W (eds) Diseases of the nervous system. WB Saunders, Philadelphia, pp 1101–1135

McBride JL, Behrstock SP, Chen EY, Jakel RJ, Siegel I, Svendsen CN, Kordower JH (2004) Human neural stem cell transplants improve motor function in a rat model of Huntington's disease. J Comp Neurol 475:211–219

McDonald JW, Liu XZ, Qu Y, Liu S, Mickey SK, Turetsky D, Gottlieb DI, Choi DW (1999) Transplanted embryonic stem cells survive, differentiate and promote recovery in injured rat spinal cord. Nat Med 5:1410–1412

McFarlin DE, McFarland HF (1982) Multiple sclerosis. N Eng J Med 307:1183–1188

McKay RG (1997) Stem cells in the central nervous system. Science 276:66–71

Melchor JP, Pawlak R, Strickland S (2003) The tissue plasminogen activator-plasminogen proteolytic cascade accelerates amyloid-ß (Aß) degradation and inhibit Aß-induced neurodegeneration. J Neurosci 23:8867–8871

Miles GB, Yohn DC, Wichterle H (2004) Functional properties of motoneurons derived from mouse embryonic stem cells. J Neurosci 24:7848–7858

Miller BC, Eckman EA, Sambamurti K, Dobbs N, Chow KM, Eckman CB, Hersh LB, Thiele DL (2003) Amyloid-beta peptide levels in brain are inversely correlated with neprilysin activity levels in vivo. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:6221–6226

Miltrecic D, Nicaise C, Gajovic S, Pochet R (2010) Distribution, differentiation and survival of intravenously administered neural stem cells in a rat model of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Cell Transplant 19:537–548

Moghadam FH, Alaie H, Karbalaie K, Tanhaei S, Nasr Esfahani MH, Baharvand H (2009) Transplantation of primed or unprimed mouse embryonic stem cells derived neural precursor cells improve cognitive function in Alzheimerian rats. Differentiation 78:59–68

Mueller-Steiner S, Zhou Y, Arai H, Roberson ED, Sun B, Chen J, Wang X, Yu G, Esposito L, Mucke L, Gan L (2006) Antiamyloidogenic and neuroprotective functions of cathepsin B: implications for Alzhemer's disease. Neuron 51:703–714

Musiał A, Bajda M, Malawska B (2007) Recent developments in cholinesterase inhibitors for Alzheimer's disease treatment. Curr Med Chem 14:2654–2679

Nistor GI, Totoiu MO, Haque N, Carpenter MK, Keirstead HS (2005) Human embryonic stem cells differentiate into oligodendrocytes in high purity and myelinate after spinal cord transplantation. Glia 49:385–396

Noble LJ, Wrathall JR (1989) Correlative analyses of lesion development and functional status after graded spinal cord contusive injuries in the rat. Exp Neurol 103:34–40

Ogawa Y, Sawamoto K, Miyata T, Miyao S, Watanabe M, Nakamura M, Bregman BS, Koike M, Uchiyama Y, Toyama Y, Okano H (2002) Transplantation of in vitro-expanded fetal neural progenitor cells results in neurogenesis and functional recovery after spinal cord contusion injury in adult rats. J Neurosci Res 69:925–933

Olanow CW, Kordower J, Freeman T (1996) Fetal nigral transplantation as a therapy for Parkinson's disease. Trends Neurosci 19:102–109

Park IH, Zhao R, West JA (2008) Reprogramming of human somatic cells to pluripotency with defined factors. Nature 415:141–146

Park D, Joo SS, Kim TK, Lee HJ, Lim IJ, Kim YB, Kim SU (2012a) Human neural stem cells overexpressing choline acetyltransferase gene recover cognitive function of kainic acid-Induced learning and memory deficit animals. Cell Transplant 21:365–371

Park D, Lee HJ, Joo SS, Bae D, Yang G, Yang Y, Lim IJ, Kim YB, Kim SU (2012b) Human neural stem cells over-expressing choline acetyltransferase restore cognition in rat model of cognitive dysfunction. Exp Neurol 234:521–526

Paty D, Ebers GC (1998) Multiple sclerosis. FA Davis, Philadelphia

Pérez-Navarro E, Canudas AM, Akerund P, Alberch J, Arenas E (2000) Brain-derived neurotrophic factor, NT-3 and NT-3/4 prevent the death of striatal projection neurons in rodent model of Huntington's disease. J Neurochem 75:2190–2199

Perlow MJ, Freed WJ, Hoffer BJ, Seiger A, Olson L, Wyatt RJ (1979) Brain grafts reduce motor abnormalities produced by destruction of nigrostriatal dopamine system. Science 204:643–647

Pluchino S, Zanotti L, Rossi B, Brambilla E, Ottoboni L, Salani G, Martinello M, Cattalini A, Bergami A, Furlan R, Comi G, Constantin G, Martino G (2005) Neurosphere-derived multipotent precursors promote neuroprotection by an immunomodulatory mechanism. Nature 436:266–271

Ramon y Cajal S (1928) Degeneration and regeneration of the nervous system. Hafner, New York

Redmond DE Jr, Bjugstad KB, Teng YD, Ourednik V, Ourednik J, Wakeman DR, Parsons XH, Gonzalez R, Blanchard BC, Kim SU, Gu Z, Lipton SA, Markakis EA, Roth RH, Elsworth JD, Sladek JR, Sidman RL, Snyder EY (2007) Behavioral improvement in a primate Parkinson's model is associated with multiple homeostatic effects of human neural stem cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104:12175–12180

Reier PJ (2004) Cellular transplantation strategies for spinal cord injury and translational neurobiology. NeuroRx 1:424–451

Roberts TJ, Price J, Williams SC, Modo M (2006) Preservation of striatal tissue and behavioral function after neural stem cell transplantation in a rat model of Huntington's disease. Neuroscience 139:1187–1199

Rowland LP, Shneider NA (2001) Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. N Engl J Med 344:1688–1700

Ryu JK, Kim J, Cho SJ, Hatori K, Nagai A, Choi HB, Lee MC, McLarnon JG, Kim SU (2004) Proactive transplantation of human neural stem cells blocks neuronal cell death in rat model of Huntington disease. Neurobiol Dis 16:68–77

Ryu MY, Lee MA, Ahn YH, Kim KS, Yoon SH, Snyder EY, Cho KG, Kim SU (2005) Brain transplantation of genetically modified neural stem cells in parkinsonian rat. Cell Transplant 14:193–202

Sah DW, Ray J, Gage F (1997) Bipotent progenitor cell lines from the human CNS. Nat Biotechnol 15:574–580

Saporta S, Borlongan CV, Sanberg PR (1999) Neural transplantation of human teratocarcinoma neurons into ischemic rats: a quantitative dose-response analysis of cell survival and behavioral recovery. Neuroscience 180:519–525

Savitz SI, Rosenbaum DM, Dinsmore JH, Wechsler LR, Caplan LR (2002) Cell transplantation for stroke. Ann Neurol 52:266–275

Seilhean D, Gansmüller A, Baron-Van Evercooren A, Gumpel M, Lachapelle F (1996) Myelination by transplanted human and mouse CNS tissue after long-term cryopreservation. Acta Neuropathol 91:82–88

Seminatore C, Polentes J, Ellman D, Kozubenko N, Itier V, Tine S, Tritschler L, Brenot M, Guidou E, Blondeau J, Lhuillier M, Bugi A, Aubry L, Jendelova P, Sykova E, Perrier AL, Finsen B, Onteniente B (2010) The postischemic environment differentially impacts teratoma or tumor formation after transplantation of human embryonic stem cell-derived neural progenitors. Stroke 41:153–159

Shamblott MJ, Axelman J, Wang S, Bugg EM, Littlefield JW, Donovan PJ, Blumenthal PD, Huggins GR, Gearhart JD (1998) Derivation of pluripotent stem cells from cultured human primordial germ cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:13726–13731

Shim JW, Koh HC, Chang MY, Roh E, Choi CY, Oh YJ, Son H, Lee YS, Studer L, Lee SH (2004) Enhanced in vitro midbrain dopamine neuron differentiation, dopaminergic function, neurite outgrowth, and 1-methyl-4-phenylpyridium resistance in mouse embryonic stem cells overexpressing Bcl-XL. J Neurosci 24:843–852

Snyder EY (1994) Grafting immortalized neurons to the CNS. Curr Opin Neurobiol 4:742–751

Snyder EY, Deitcher DL, Walsh C (1992) Multipotent neural cell lines can engraft and participate in development of mouse cerebellum. Cell 68:33–51

Song J, Lee ST, Kang W, Park JE, Chu K, Lee SE, Hwang T, Chung H, Kim M (2007) Human embryonic stem cell-derived neural precursor transplantation induced rotational behavior in rats with unilateral quinolinic acid lesions. Neurosci Lett 423:58–61

Springer JE, Azbill RD, Knapp PE (1999) Activation of the caspase-3 apoptotic cascade in traumatic spinal cord injury. Nat Med 5:943–946

Storkebaum E, Lambrechts D, Dewerchin M, Moreno-Murciano MP, Appelmans S, Oh H, Van Damme P, Rutten B, Man WY, De Mol M, Wyns S, Manka D, Vermeulen K, Van Den Bosch L, Mertens N, Schmitz C, Robberecht W, Conway EM, Collen D, Moons L, Carmeliet P (2005)

Treatment of motoneuron degeneration by intracerebroventricular delivery of VEGF in a rat model of ALS. Nat Neurosci 8:85–92

Takagi Y, Takahashi J, Saiki H, Morizane A, Hayashi T, Kishi Y, Fukuda H, Okamoto Y, Koyanagi M, Ideguchi M, Hayashi H, Imazato T, Kawasaki H, Suemori H, Omachi S, Iida H, Itoh N, Nakatsuji N, Sasai Y, Hashimoto N (2005) Dopaminergic neurons generated from monkey ES cells function in a Parkinson primate model. J Clin Invest 115:102–108

Takahashi K, Tanabe K, Ohnuki M (2007) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from adult human fibroblasts by defined factors. Cell 131:861–872

Takebayashi H, Yoshida S, Sugimori M, Kosako H, Kominami R, Nakafuku M, Nabeshima Y (2000) Dynamic expression of bHLH Olig family members: implication of Olig2 in neuron and oligodendrocyte differentiation and identification of a new member, Olig3. Mech Dev 99:143–148

Teng YD, Lavik EB, Qu X, Park KI, Ourednik J, Zurakowski D, Langer R, Snyder EY (2002) Functional recovery following traumatic spinal cord injury mediated by a unique polymer scaffold seeded with neural stem cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 99:3024–3029

Terry AV, Buccafusco JJ (2003) The cholinergic hypothesis of age and Alzheimer's disease-related cognitive deficits: recent challenges and their implications for novel drug development. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 306:821–827

Thieben MJ, Duggins AJ, Good CD, Gomes L, Mahant N, Richards F, McCusker E, Frackowiak RS (2002) The distribution of structural neuropathology in pre-clinical Huntington's disease. Brain 125:1815–1828

Thompson JA, Itskovitz-Eldor J, Shapiro SS, Waknitz MA, Swiergiel JJ, Marshall VS, Jones JM (1998) Embryonic stem cell line derived from human blastocysts. Science 282:1145–1147

Tuszynski DW (2002) Gene therapy for neurodegenerative disorders. Lancet Neurol 1:51–57

Tuszynski DW, Hoi Sang U, Amaral DG, Gage FH (1990) Nerve growth factor infusion in primate brain reduces lesion-induced cholinergic neuronal degeneration. J Neurosci 10:3604–3614

Tuszynski MH, Peterson DA, Ray J, Baird A, Nakahara Y, Gage FH (1994) Fibroblasts genetically modified to produce nerve growth factor induces robust neuritic ingrowth after grafting to the spinal cord. Exp Neurol 126:1–14

Tuszynski MH, Thal L, Pay M, Salmon DP, Hoi Sang U, Bakay R, Patel P, Blesch A, Vahlsing HL, Ho G, Tong G, Potkin SG, Fallon J, Hansen L, Mufson EJ, Kordower JH, Gall C, Conner J (2005) A phase 1 clinical trial of nerve growth factor gene therapy for Alzheimer disease. Nat Med 11:551–555

Vasey EM, Dottori M, Jamshidi P (2010) Comparison of transplant efficacy between spontaneously derived and noggin-primed human embryonic stem cell neural precursors in the quinolinic acid rat model of Huntington's disease. Cell Transplant 19:1055–1062

Veizovic T, Beech JS, Stroemer RP, Watson WP, Hodges H (2001) Resolution of stroke deficits following contralateral grafts of conditionally immortalized neuroepithelial stem cells. Stroke 32:1012–1019

Visnyei K, Tatsukawa KJ, Erickson RI, Simonian S, Oknaian N, Carmichael ST, Kornblum HI (2006) Neural progenitor implantation restores metabolic deficits in the brain following striatal quinolinic acid lesion. Exp Neurol 197:465–474

Wagner J, Akerud P, Castro DS, Holm PC, Canals JM, Snyder EY, Perlmann T, Arenas E (1999) Induction of a midbrain dopaminergic phenotype in Nurr1-overexpressing neural stem cells by type 1 astrocytes. Nat Biotechnol 17:653–659

Wang Q, Matsumoto Y, Shindo T, Miyake K, Shindo A, Kawanishi M, Kawai N, Tamiya T, Nagao S (2006) Neural stem cells transplantation in cortex in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. J Med Invest 53:61–69

Watabe K, Ohashi T, Sakamoto T, Kawazoe Y, Takeshima T, Oyanagi K, Inoue K, Eto Y, Kim SU (2000) Rescue of lesioned adult rat spinal motoneurons by adenoviral gene transfer of glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor. J Neurosci Res 60:511–519

Werning M, Zhao J, Pruszak J, Hedlund E, Fu D, Soldner F, Broccoli V, Constantine-Paton M, Isacson O, Jaenisch R (2008) Neurons derived from reprogrammed fibroblasts functionally integrate into the fetal brain and improve symptoms of rats with Parkinson's disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:5856–5861

Whitehouse PJ, Price DL, Clark AW, Coyle JT, DeLong MR (1981) Alzheimer disease: evidence for selective loss of cholinergic neurons in the nucleus basalis. Ann Neurol 10:122–126

Wichterle H, Lieberam I, Porter JA, Jessell TM (2002) Directed differentiation of embryonic stem cells into motor neurons. Cell 110:385–397

Windrem MS, Nunes MC, Rashbaum WK, Schwartz TH, Goodman RA, McKhann G, Roy NS, Goldman SA (2004) Fetal and adult human oligodendrocyte progenitor cell isolates myelinate the congenitally dysmyelinated brain. Nat Med 10:93–97

Wolff JA, Fisher LJ, Xu L, Jinnah HA, Langlais PJ, Iuvone PM, O'Malley KL, Rosenberg MB, Shimohama S, Friedmann T et al (1989) Grafting fibroblasts genetically modified to produce L-dopa in a rat model of Parkinson disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 86:9011–9014

Wu S, Sasaki A, Yoshimoto R, Kawahara Y, Manabe T, Kataoka K, Asashima M, Yuge L (2008) Neural stem cells improve learning and memory in rats with Alzheimer's disease. Pathobiology 75:186–194

Xu XM, Guenard V, Kleitman N, Aebischer P, Bunge MB (1995) A combination of BDNF and NT-3 promotes supraspinal axonal regeneration into Schwann cell grafts in adult rat thoracic spinal cord. Exp Neurol 134:261–272

Xu L, Yan J, Chen D, Welsh AM, Hazel T, Johe K, Hatfield G, Koliatsos VE (2006) Human neural stem cell grafts ameliorate motor neuron disease in SOD1 transgenic rats. Transplantation 82:865–875

Yamazaki N, Kato K, Kurihara E, Nagaoka A (1991) Cholinergic drugs reverse AF64A-induced impairment of passive avoidance learning in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 103:215–222

Yandava B, Billinghurst L, Snyder E (1999) Global cell replacement is feasible via neural stem cell transplantation: evidence from the dysmyelinated shiverer mouse brain. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 96:7029–7034

Yasuhara T, Matsukawa N, Hara K, Yu G, Xu L, Maki M, Kim SU, Borlongan CV (2006) Transplantation of neural stem cells exerts neuroprotection in a rat model of Parkinson disease. J Neurosci 26:124497–124511

Yu J, Vodyanik MA, Smuga-Otto K (2007) Induced pluripotent stem cell lines derived from human somatic cells. Science 318:1917–1920

Yuan J, Yankner BA (2000) Apoptosis in the nervous system. Nature 407:802–809

Zhang SC, Ge B, Duncan ID (1999) Adult brain retains the potential to generate oligodendroglial progenitors with extensive myelination capacity. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 96:4089–4094

Zheng C, Nennesmo I, Fadeel B, Henter JI (2004) Vascular endothelial growth factor prolongs survival in a transgenic mouse model of ALS. Ann Neurol 56:564–567

Zhou Q, Wang S, Anderson DJ (2000) Identification of a novel family of oligodendrocyte lineage specific basic helix loop helix transcription factors. Neuron 25:331–343

Chapter 3
Vascular Stem Cell Therapy

Ruei-Zeng Lin, Rafael Moreno-Luna, and Juan M. Melero-Martin

Abstract There are numerous diseases associated with a malfunction of the endothelium, including ischemic injuries that follow thrombotic events, visual loss due to a defective cornea endothelium, and endothelial cell (EC) dysfunction in patients with diabetes. Some of these diseases are susceptible of cell therapies that aim to replace the defective endothelium. Thus, there is a need for a robust, clinically suitable source of autologous ECs. In principle, ECs can be obtained from a variety of autologous tissues, including small diameter veins and the microvasculature of tissues such as skin and adipose. However, the clinical use of mature ECs is limited by site morbidity and low cell proliferation potential. These limitations have motivated the search for other sources of ECs with more proliferative and vasculogenic activities such as those derived from embryonic stem cell (ESCs) and induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs). However, ethical considerations along with a poor understanding of the mechanisms controlling the differentiation of embryonic stem cells are hurdles that need to be overcome before these cells can be used in a clinical setting. Alternatively, the existence of postnatal endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs) in circulation represents a promising opportunity to non-invasively obtain large quantities of autologous ECs. However, the process for obtaining EPC-derived ECs has not been straightforward in part due to a lack of consensus regarding EPC definition, origin, and function of these cells. As a result, the term EPCs has been used to define two distinct subpopulations of cells, one with hematopoietic (early EPCs)

R.-Z. Lin • J.M. Melero-Martin (✉) • R. Moreno-Luna
Department of Cardiac Surgery, Boston Children's Hospital,
300 Longwood Ave., Enders 349, Boston, MA 02115, USA
e-mail: juan.meleromartin@childrens.harvard.edu

M. Al-Rubeai, M. Naciri (eds.), *Stem Cells and Cell Therapy*, Cell Engineering 8,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-7196-3_3,

and the other with endothelial (late EPCs) characteristics. Despite the often-confusing terminology, the functional distinction between these two very different types of EPCs is increasingly better understood. In particular, the ability of late EPCs to generate large amount of endothelial colony-forming cells (ECFCs) is now well recognized. Blood-derived ECFCs represent a robust population of cells with endothelial phenotype and ability to function as bona fide ECs both in vitro and in vivo, and thus, they constitute a promising source of cells for future vascular cell therapies.

Keywords Vascular therapy • Endothelial progenitor cells • Vasculogenesis • Angiogenesis

3.1 Endothelial Cells for Therapy

Endothelial cells (ECs) line the lumens of all blood vessels. ECs are highly metabolically active and play an important role in many physiological functions, including the control of vasomotor tone, blood cell trafficking, hemostatic balance, permeability, and innate and adaptive immunity (Aird 2007). Thus, it is not surprising to find EC dysfunction responsible for numerous diseases. Consequently, clinical conditions that could potentially benefit from EC therapy are multiple.

The main clinical conditions susceptible to EC therapy are those associated with ischemic injuries that result from the formation of a thrombus (Bagot and Arya 2008; Furie and Furie 2008). The incidence of ischemic injury is vast: myocardial infarction, stroke, and other thrombotic events affect more than 1.3 million individuals each year in the United States alone (www.americanheart.org). Much effort has been focused on delivering angiogenic factors to ischemic tissues to initiate angiogenesis and accelerate revascularization (Cao et al. 2003; Carmeliet 2000; Isner 2002; Khurana and Simons 2003). However, because tissue injury is often associated with a disruptive microenvironment that functions to recruit pre-existing ECs (Rafii and Lyden 2003), exogenous introduction of ECs may facilitate revascularization of the injured, ischemic tissue to restore organ function.

In addition, there are clinical conditions unrelated to thrombosis that may benefit from the development of EC therapies. For example, approximately 38,000 corneal transplants are performed in the United States each year and nearly half of all of these grafts are used to treat vision loss resulting from dysfunction of the corneal endothelium (Fuchs' dystrophy) (Terry 2003). Current treatment options for these conditions include Descemet's Stripping Endothelial Keratoplasty (DSEK), which is a type of partial corneal transplant that involves surgical replacement of the corneal endothelium with a healthy donor endothelium. Thus, availability of healthy autologous ECs may be beneficial in these situations.

EC therapy may also be suitable for tissue engineering of cardiovascular grafts. For example, every year there are approximately 550,000 bypass cases performed (www.americanheart.org) that involve surgical replacement of coronary and

peripheral atherosclerotic vessels. The preferred replacement grafts for small (<5 mm in diameter) diseased segments are autologous vessels, but many patients do not possess suitable vessels (Lloyd-Jones et al. 2010). Alternatively, small-diameter vessels are now being bioengineered following the tissue engineering paradigm in which appropriate biodegradable scaffolds are seeded with autologous cells (Dahl et al. 2011; Kaushal et al. 2001; Niklason et al. 1999). Other cardiovascular structures susceptible to a tissue engineering approach are heart valves (Sacks et al. 2009). Currently, valve replacements utilizing either xenografts, mechanical prostheses, or homografts have certain limitations, including thrombogenicity and inability to grow, repair or develop, which limits their long-term performance, especially in children. Thus, there is great interest in developing a tissue engineered valvular graft as an alternative solution (Gottlieb et al. 2010; Sacks et al. 2009). In both cases, tissue engineered vascular and valvular grafts would benefit from using autologous ECs; ideally, ECs would be seeded onto these engineered grafts to create a non-thrombogenic barrier, thereby improving the biological performance of the grafts in vivo (Kaushal et al. 2001).

Apart from large cardiovascular structures, ECs will likely be used in a broad range of tissue engineering applications that require vascular networks. Most engineered tissues must have a vascular network connected to the host vasculature to guarantee adequate nutrients, gas exchange, and elimination of waste products (Jain et al. 2005). Presently, there are no tissue-engineered (TE) constructs clinically available that incorporate an inherent microvascular bed, and therefore success has been limited to the replacement of relatively thin (skin) or avascular (cartilage) tissues (De Bie 2007; MacNeil 2007). To overcome the problem of vascularization, strategies to promote ingrowth of microvessels by delivery of angiogenic molecules have been proposed (Isner and Asahara 1999; Lee et al. 2002; Li et al. 2005). However, rapid and complete vascularization of thick engineered tissues is likely to require an additional supply of ECs (Jain et al. 2005; Melero-Martin et al. 2008; Rafii and Lyden 2003).

Establishing clinically suitable sources of cells is a priority for the development of EC therapies. ECs may be drawn from a variety of primary tissues. Theoretically, these primary tissues can be xenogeneic (from different species), allogeneic (from different members of the same species), syngeneic (from a genetically identical individual), or autologous (from the same individual). Nevertheless, although animal ECs are a possibility, ensuring their safety remains a concern, as does the high likelihood of their rejection by the host immune system (Eberli and Atala 2006; Langer and Vacanti 1999). Additionally, current clinical use of allogeneic cells is still limited by the need for host immunosuppression. In the future, the emergence of new techniques to render cells immunologically transparent may allow the use of banked allogeneic cells to become a valid option. Until further advances enable the clinical use of other cell sources, autologous cells remain the preferred cells in regenerative medicine, and thus we have focused this review around such cells. Autologous ECs can be obtained from healthy vascular tissues in the patient's own body; upon taking a small biopsy, ECs can be dissociated from the tissue, purified, and culture expanded in the laboratory to obtain sufficient cell number for a given

therapy. While the use of autologous ECs may cause an inflammatory response, it should avoid rejection, and thus the side effects caused by immunosuppressive medications. In addition, the use of autologous primary cells raises no ethical issues and is accepted worldwide (Eberli and Atala 2006).

Beyond primary tissues, another alternative source of autologous ECs could result from therapeutic cloning. In this process patient-specific embryonic stem cells (ESCs) may be derived from pre-implantation stage embryos produced by somatic cell nuclear transfer, therefore obtaining histocompatible cells for engraftment (Han et al. 2007). More recently, the development of techniques that enable the generation of patient-specific induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs) from adult primary cells has created another potential means to obtain autologous embryonic-like stem cells (Takahashi and Yamanaka 2006). The theory behind the use of these cell types is that either ESCs or iPSCs could be differentiated into autologous ECs with the potential to replace and regenerate damaged vascular tissues. However, the mechanisms governing their differentiation must be fully understood, and ethical issues surrounding their use must be resolved prior to their implementation in therapeutic strategies.

Finally, we have dedicated a central part of this review to discuss the use of autologous, adult vascular progenitor cells. In particular, the identification of endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs) in peripheral blood during the last decade has presented an opportunity to non-invasively obtain autologous ECs for vascular therapies (Asahara et al. 1997). Despite the potential of EPCs, their clinical use to date has not been realized in part due to a lack of consensus regarding their definition, origin, and function in humans (Fadini et al. 2012; Yoder 2009). Here, we have highlighted some of the critical aspects of EPCs that are now better understood and discussed the clinical potential of these cells in comparison to the other alternative sources of autologous ECs (Fig. 3.1).

3.2 Mature Endothelial Cells

ECs can be obtained from a variety of autologous tissues, including small diameter veins and the microvasculature of tissues such as skin (Davison et al. 1980) and adipose (Kern et al. 1983). In fact, for decades, the study of EC biology has been conducted with cultures of mature ECs that were obtained from living vasculature (Gimbrone et al. 1974; Nachman and Jaffe 2004). The use of mature ECs for vascular therapies is surely a possibility as cultured ECs have been shown to retain their inherent vasculogenic ability in preclinical studies. For example, Schechner et al. demonstrated that human umbilical vein ECs (HUVECs) that were cultured in the laboratory were able to form microvascular networks in collagen/fibronectin gels after implantation into immunodeficient mice (Schechner et al. 2000). Similar results have been reported with human dermal microvascular ECs (HDMECs) seeded on biopolymer matrices, where functional microvessels were evident 7–10 days after implantation into mice (Nör et al. 2001).

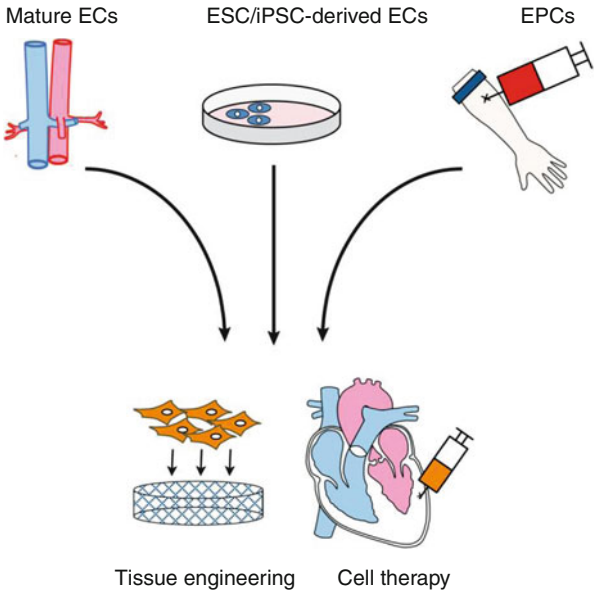


Fig. 3.1 Therapeutic use of endothelial cells (*ECs*). Clinically suitable sources of autologous ECs may include mature vasculature, patient-specific embryonic stem cells, and postnatal endothelial progenitor cells (*EPCs*). Autologous ECs will likely be used in a broad range of tissue engineering applications that require vascular networks as well as in direct vascular cell therapies

Nevertheless, the clinical use of mature ECs derived from autologous vascular tissues presents some important limitations. First, like most human somatic cells, ECs undergo replicative senescence in vitro after a finite number of divisions, which limits the expansion potential of these cells and varies depending on the tissue of origin and age of the subject (Yang et al. 1999). For example, the maximum number of population doublings attained with cultured HUVECs is approximately 50, while foreskin-derived HDMECs can reach 30 population doublings (Yang et al. 1999). In principle, this proliferation potential will allow for a very large number of autologous ECs. However, both HUVECs and HDMECs originate from neonatal tissues and with the exception of research settings, these tissues are not routinely saved for clinical application. Thus, patients in need of autologous ECs would require donation of their aged vascular tissues at the time of therapy, and these ECs would presumably have lower expansion potential than those isolated from neonatal counterpart tissues. For example, ECs derived from adult human saphenous vein (HSVECs) are reported to have approximately 19 population doublings before they reach senescence in culture (Yang et al. 1999). Perhaps a solution to the limited expansion potential could be to develop new clinical services that will enable individuals to routinely cryopreserve neonatal tissues (i.e., umbilical cord blood and foreskin) and cells in anticipation of future clinical uses.

A second limitation of using mature autologous ECs is the site morbidity associated with the harvest of healthy vascular tissue. For example, autologous saphenous veins or an arm vein are currently the vascular tissue of choice for use as a bypass graft in infrainguinal arterial reconstruction for peripheral bypass procedures, and autologous arteries or veins are used in cardiac bypass procedures (Seifalian et al. 2002). However, removing any of these healthy blood vessels for the sole purpose of isolating autologous ECs might be difficult to achieve clinically. Moreover, many

patients may have no suitable vessels available, particularly, if they have previously undergone bypass or their vessels were judged to be of poor quality (Bergan et al. 1982; Veith et al. 1979). Additionally, although in principle the issue of site morbidity could be diminished by smaller biopsies, this practice would in itself augment the problem of limited cellular lifespan, because fewer cells retrieved from those small biopsies would need to be expanded in culture more extensively. Additionally, from a technical standpoint, the procedures to isolate pure populations of ECs from smaller autologous biopsies would be increasingly difficult to perform efficiently. In summary, although healthy vasculature from a given patient is certainly a possible source of autologous ECs, the widespread clinical use of mature ECs will likely depend on our ability to overcome the limitations associated with their limited expansion potential and site morbidity.

3.3 Embryonic Stem Cell-Derived Endothelial Cells

The limitations of mature ECs have instigated the search for other sources of autologous ECs, including those derived from ESCs (Rafii and Lyden 2003). The excitement of using human ESCs in regenerative medicine has existed since they were first isolated in culture from the inner cell mass of human blastocysts (Thomson et al. 1998); ESCs can potentially provide an unlimited number of pluripotent cells, which can subsequently generate sufficient ECs for any vascular cell therapy. In principle, patient-specific ESCs can be derived by therapeutic cloning from preimplantation stage embryos produced by somatic cell nuclear transfer (Wilmut et al. 2002). However, harnessing the full therapeutic potential of ESCs is challenging and would require methodologies for large expansion of ESCs as well as a better understanding of the mechanisms controlling their differentiation. Here, we have summarized the progress of directing human ESCs differentiation into ECs.

3.3.1 Spontaneous Differentiation of Embryoid Bodies into ECs

The first evidence of endothelial differentiation of ESCs came from studies of spontaneous formation of vascular structures in embryoid bodies (EBs) (Wang et al. 1992). EBs are three-dimensional aggregates of pluripotent stem cells, and they are commonly used to achieve spontaneous differentiation of ESCs toward the three germ lineages (Reubinoff et al. 2000). The initial EC differentiation was induced by the low-oxygen environment in the center of the EBs. Levenberg and colleagues enzymatically dissected EBs that were formed by human ESCs into single cells and sorted ECs from the cell mixtures using platelet endothelial cell-adhesion molecule-1 (PECAM1) antibodies and fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS) (Levenberg et al. 2002). Subsequent studies that used this EB methodology were also proven

successful: ECs were obtained from ESCs and purified using additional EC markers (vWF and VE-cadherin) and Magnetic-activated cell sorting (MACS) (Cho et al. 2007; Descamps and Emanueli 2012; Wang et al. 2007). From these early studies, we learned that human EB-derived ECs are expandable in culture and display characteristics similar to mature human ECs. These characteristics include expression of EC markers (PECAM1, vWF, VE-cadherin, CD34, eNOS), capacity to uptake acetylated low-density lipoproteins, and ability to form cord-like structures when cultured on Matrigel (Cho et al. 2007). Moreover, implantation of human EB-derived ECs into immunodeficient mice were shown to generate perfused lumenal structures that carried mouse blood, indicating the ability of these ECs to assemble into blood vessels and to form functional anastomoses with living vasculature (Levenberg et al. 2002). In addition, transplantation of EB-derived human ECs into surgically-induced ischemic hindlimb muscles in mice was shown to significantly improve blood reperfusion and limb salvage due to neovascularization (Cho et al. 2007). Collectively, these studies clearly indicated feasibility of obtaining functional ECs from EBs and demonstrated their therapeutic potential.

Despite the feasibility of obtaining ECs from EBs, this approach has several limitations. Firstly, although the three-dimensional nature of EBs may be beneficial to recapitulate the complexity of native vasculature, it also instigates the appearance of cell types from all the three germ layers, which makes obtaining a large number of ECs with high purity and yield much more difficult (Chaudhury et al. 2012). Secondly, methodologies based on EBs are time-consuming, require extensive culture manipulation, and rely on achieving single cells by mechanical or enzymatic means, which can induce undesired damage to the cells (Tatsumi et al. 2011). Thirdly, in contrast to monolayer cultures, where the extracellular microenvironment can be precisely controlled, differentiation of ESCs in three-dimensional EBs poses additional challenges, including inability to control EB size, creation of gradients of morphogens, metabolites, and nutrients, and ultimately variable EC yields and cell viability (Descamps and Emanueli 2012; Kane et al. 2011; Tatsumi et al. 2011).

3.3.2 Induced Differentiation of ESCs into ECs in 2D Culture

In principle, direct induced differentiation of ESCs into ECs in a two-dimensional (2D) culture system would be more advantageous than spontaneous EB-mediated approaches in several aspects. First, 2D culture parameters are easier to control than in 3D EB-based culture systems. Second, the simplicity and the cellular accessibility of the 2D culture systems enable easier implementation of supporting cells as well as uniform ESC exposure to inducing growth factors (Tatsumi et al. 2011). Third, 2D culture system allows for better exposure to specific extracellular matrix (ECM) proteins that are known to induce ESC differentiation (Gerecht-Nir et al. 2003).

Induced differentiation of ESCs into ECs was first reported in mice with a 2D co-culture system that used the bone marrow-derived OP9 mouse stromal cell line (Hirashima et al. 1999). Since then, other murine feeder cells have also been shown

to promote vascular differentiation, including mouse embryonic fibroblasts (MEF) and other stromal cell lines (Descamps and Emanueli 2012). In the murine system, the mechanisms controlling embryonic differentiation are better understood than in other animals. During development, murine ESCs first differentiate to Flk-1$^+$ mesodermal precursor cells (Yamashita et al. 2000), which later give rise to not only ECs, but also hematopoietic cells, vascular smooth muscle cells and cardiomyocytes (Kattman et al. 2006). Commitment of Flk-1$^+$ precursor cells towards EC lineage is promoted by VEGF, bFGF and BMP4 (Blancas et al. 2011; Sone et al. 2007; Yamashita et al. 2000), as well as by interaction with specific ECM proteins such as collagen IV, laminin and fibronectin (Blancas et al. 2011). However, in primates, ESC differentiation into vascular cells follows different steps. For example, unlike murine ESCs, undifferentiated human ESCs already express Flk-1 (also known as VEGF-R2). Thus, human mesodermal precursor cells are not only marked by the expression of Flk-1 but also by the loss of embryonic tumor rejection antigen 1-60 (TRA1-60) (Sone et al. 2007). These human TRA1-60$^-$/Flk-1$^+$ precursors can be efficiently differentiated into VE-cadherin$^+$ ECs and alpha-smooth muscle actin (α-SMA)$^+$ mural cells by exposure to either VEGF or PDGF, respectively (Sone et al. 2007).

In humans, early studies have demonstrated that direct, induced differentiation of ESCs in 2D culture can produce ECs morphologically and functionally indistinguishable to EB-derived human ECs (Sone et al. 2007). However, early co-culture protocols were proven inefficient, with yields of ESC to EC conversion around 1–5 % (Sone et al. 2007; Yamahara et al. 2008). To enhance efficiency, protocols have increasingly incorporated factors that promote vascular differentiation. This includes angiopoietin-1 (Ang1), which is involved in the differentiation of Flk-1$^+$ mesodermal precursors into ECs through angiopoietin receptor TIE-2 signaling (Joo et al. 2011). Another strategy to enhance ESC differentiation into ECs is the approach of inhibiting transforming growth factor (TGF)-β, which has increased the EC yield by tenfold (James et al. 2010). Another technique has been the sequential use of MAPK-MEK-ERK inhibitors and bone morphogenic protein-4 (BMP4), which has been shown to enable differentiation of human ESCs into ECs with 20 % efficiency (Park et al. 2010). Other approaches have included retinoic acid, hypoxia or mechanical force stimulation (Descamps and Emanueli 2012). Collectively, there are increasingly more sophisticated protocols to obtain efficient differentiation of human ESCs into ECs. However, controlling the differentiation of ESCs to achieve a homogenous population of EC, without contamination with other cell types, is still challenging with current protocols.

3.3.3 Differentiation of ESCs into ECs in Chemically Defined Systems

Many of the current protocols for inducing differentiation of ESCs into ECs use supporting feeder cells in addition to chemically undefined animal serum; however, these are drawbacks that will surely limit human clinical trails (Unger et al. 2008).

Thus, in recent years the field has been moving toward feeder-free and chemically-defined, serum-free systems (Yao et al. 2006). For example, Tatsumi and colleagues induced human ESCs to differentiate into ECs using a serum-free medium (StemPro-34 SFM) supplemented with a glycogen synthetase kinase-3b (GSK-3b) inhibitor and recombinant human VEGF165 for 5 days with up to 20 % efficiency (Tatsumi et al. 2011). In this study, the action of GSK-3b inhibitor was found to be critical for the differentiation of ESCs into Flk-1^{+} mesodermal precursors. More recently, Blancas et al. developed several chemically defined formulations to obtain homogeneous cultures of proliferating mouse ECS-derived ECs, achieving a superior differentiation efficiency and purity than previously attainable with serum-containing media (Blancas et al. 2011). Follow up studies with human ESCs are warranted. These are promising examples illustrating how progress in our understanding of the mechanisms controlling ESCs differentiation can be translated into more efficient means to obtain vascular cells with therapeutic potential. However, the future of ESC-derived cells in clinical therapies is still uncertain, and it will likely require overcoming not only technical hurdles, but also ethical considerations.

3.4 Induced Pluripotent Stem Cell-Derived Endothelial Cells

The discovery of methods to convert somatic cells into iPSCs through expression of a set of four transcription factors (Oct4, Sox2, Klf4 and c-Myc) created another possibility of producing patient-specific ECs for regenerative medicine (Takahashi and Yamanaka 2006). As with ESCs, iPSCs can potentially provide an unlimited number of pluripotent cells, which can subsequently generate ECs for vascular therapy. Moreover, patient specific, autologous ECs obtained from iPSCs will avoid allogenic immune rejection, which is one of the main concerns when considering ESCs (Wu and Hochedlinger 2011).

In principle, iPSCs can be obtained from a variety of somatic cell types. For example, iPSCs have been successfully obtained from terminally differentiated hepatocytes, keratinocytes, and B and T cells (Aasen et al. 2008; Aoi et al. 2008; Hanna et al. 2008; Staerk et al. 2010). From a clinical standpoint, the ideal sources of somatic cells for iPSC generation are those that cause minimal patient morbidity, including dermal fibroblasts and cells circulating in peripheral blood. However, multiple factors influence the efficiency by which somatic cells are converted into iPSCs, including tissue of origin, stage of cellular differentiation, and age of the individual donor (Gonzalez et al. 2011). Currently, there are multiple methods for reprogramming somatic cells into iPSCs that are being evaluated, with a focus on enhancing both safety (for example, the use of non-viral means to deliver genes, mRNA, or even proteins into somatic cells (Warren et al. 2010; Zhou et al. 2009)) and efficiency (new sets of crucial transcription factors (Yu et al. 2007); the use of inducing chemicals (Lin et al. 2009)).

The first proof-of-concept regarding generation of human iPSC-derived ECs came from the study of Taura et al. (2009). In this study, iPSCs were generated from

skin fibroblasts transduced with either four (Oct3/4, Sox2, Klf4 and c-Myc) or three (c-Myc was omitted) transcription factors (Taura et al. 2009). Induction of ECs was carried out in a 2D co-culture system that used the bone marrow-derived OP9 mouse stromal cell line and exogenous VEGF, similarly to the method previously described for ESCs (Taura et al. 2009). In fact, the mechanism by which iPSCs differentiate into ECs appears to be identical to that from ESCs, including the intermediate generation of TRA1-60$^-$/Flk-1$^+$ precursors (Taura et al. 2009). With this methodology, the efficiency of obtaining ECs from iPSCs was comparable to that of ESC-derived ECs. Additional studies have also shown that transplantation of iPSC-derived ECs into ischemic hindlimbs of immunodeficient mice were successfully incorporated into the host vasculature and significantly accelerated improvement in local blood flow (Rufaihah et al. 2011). Undoubtedly, there is a lot of excitement surrounding the prospect of obtaining patient-specific ECs from iPSCs. Despite the increasing number of encouraging studies, several hurdles still remain before iPSC-derived cells become a clinical reality, including the uncertainty about their potential tumorigenicity, the long-term consequences of potential genetic and epigenetic alternations, as well as issues regarding their immunogenicity (Barrilleaux and Knoepfler 2011; Wu and Hochedlinger 2011).

3.5 Postnatal Endothelial Progenitor Cells

For clinical applications, the presence of endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs) in circulation represents a promising opportunity to non-invasively obtain the required endothelial population. The presence of circulating ECs was first described five decades ago. Some of the first evidences came from observation of the endothelium in transplanted organs. For instance, Kennedy and colleagues observed that some of the ECs covering the coronary arteries in transplanted human hearts belonged to the recipient and not the donor, which suggested the possibility of these recipient ECs were originated from circulating cells (Kennedy and Weissman 1971). Nevertheless, until approximately 15 years ago, the consensus was that the formation of ECs from mesodermal angioblasts occurs only during embryonic development and not postnatally. This long-held notion began to change in 1997 when Asahara and colleagues described the isolation from peripheral blood of circulating CD34$^+$ progenitor cells with capacity to differentiate ex vivo into ECs (Asahara et al. 1997). These cells were referred to as “endothelial progenitor cells” (EPCs) and they were shown to express a range of EC markers as well as participation into neovascularization processes in models of induced ischemia (Asahara et al. 1999; Isner and Asahara 1999; Kalka et al. 2000; Takahashi et al. 1999). Rafii and colleagues also reported the existence of EPCs in the adult bone marrow and described these cells as a subset of CD34$^+$ cells that differentiate into cells that express von Willibrand factor (vWF) and uptake of Dil-Ac-LDL (Shi et al. 1998). The discovery of EPCs in peripheral blood was exciting because it suggested a promising opportunity to non-invasively obtain large quantities of autologous ECs for either therapeutic

vascularization or tissue engineering, both of which likely require some form of postnatal vasculogenesis. However, the process for obtaining EPC-derived ECs with the ability to form blood vessels in vivo has not been straightforward.

The characterization of EPCs traditionally relied on either the selection of cellular subpopulations from the mononuclear cell (MNC) fraction that circulates in peripheral blood or on the isolation of colony-forming cells culture. The majority of the original studies with circulating EPCs used three cell surface markers: CD34, CD133, and VEGF-R2 (also known as KDR). The first marker used to identify EPCs was CD34; in the context of EPCs, CD34 expression was used to define early stage EPCs because as it is present on hematopoietic cells, whereas CD34 expression is only present in early progenitor and stem cells. CD34 expression was also thought to diminish as EPCs differentiate into mature ECs. CD133 is a transmembrane protein present in 20–60 % of all $CD34^+$ cells in the bone marrow and peripheral blood, was also used to identify early stage EPCs, because this marker is absent in mature ECs. Finally, VEGF-R2, a tyrosine kinase receptor and member of the VEGF receptor family that is known to be expressed during embryonic vasculogenesis as well as by mature ECs, was also proposed as a marker of circulating EPCs. However, it is now known that far from being definitive EPC markers, most of these cellular markers are shared by subpopulations of hematopoietic cells that can be mobilized into circulation from the bone marrow to home sites of neovascularization (Rafii and Lyden 2003; Yoder et al. 2007).

Although the hematopoietic and endothelial cell types are fundamentally different, many studies continued to refer to blood- or bone-marrow–derived adherent cells that express progenitor and endothelial markers such as CD34, CD133 and VEGFR- 2^+ cells as EPCs (Prater et al. 2007). In subsequent years, additional cell markers were proposed to characterize circulating EPCs, including vWF, VE-Cadherin (CD144), and CXCR4. However, to date there is no consensus about a single set of markers that unequivocally identify EPCs in circulation. Thus, it is not surprising to find multiple studies in which EPCs were associated with different cellular subpopulations, including subsets of hematopoietic cells (Richardson and Yoder 2011). Despite this ambiguity, the functional abilities of putative EPCs have been examined over the last few years and are increasingly better understood. For example, Yoder and colleagues demonstrated that most of the cells that were long referred to as EPCs are in fact descendants of hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs); the cells express functional activities of myeloid cells, including paracrine secretion of pro-angiogenic factors, but have no ability to differentiate into functional ECs in perfused blood vessels in vivo (Yoder et al. 2007). Other studies have also shown that fractions of $CD34^+$ and $CD34^+/CD133^+$ cells from adult peripheral blood and umbilical cord blood are enriched by hematopoietic progenitor cells with no potential to participate, structurally, as ECs in postnatal vasculogenic processes (Richardson and Yoder 2011). Case and colleagues described that only circulating cells expressing CD34, CD31, and CD144, in umbilical cord blood were able to generate ECs in culture, but not those expressing CD45 and CD133 (Mund et al. 2012).

In addition to this dispute about surface markers, EPCs with bona fide blood vessel–forming ability seem to comprise a very small population of the circulating

cells. Judging by the number of EC colonies obtained in culture, EPCs are found at a concentration of about 2–5 cells/ml in human umbilical cord blood, and at a concentration of about 0.05–0.2 cells/ml in adult peripheral blood (Ingram et al. 2004). Both the low frequency of EPCs in circulation and the lack of a unique set of distinctive cellular markers have made the isolation of EPCs by flow cytometry or other immunological techniques very challenging. As a result, the most successful methodology for isolating EPC-derived ECs is still based on methods similar to those originally reported for endothelial outgrowth from peripheral blood (Lin et al. 2000). However, some authors still question whether the cells that appear in these colonies from MNC cultures (ex vivo) are indeed related to those circulating EPCs in vivo (Fadini et al. 2012). In any case, based on cell culture assays, there have been two main subpopulations of cells from peripheral blood associated with EPCs: (a) Circulating angiogenic cells or early EPCs, and (b) Endothelial colony-forming cells (ECFCs) or late EPCs.

3.5.1 Circulating Angiogenic Cells or Early EPCs

The most widely studied subpopulation of EPCs, generated by culturing peripheral blood mononuclear cells on fibronectin for 4 days in VEGF-containing medium, do express the pan-hematopoietic marker CD45 as well as myelomonocitic markers such as CD14 and CD11b (Urbich et al. 2003). Over the last decade, these cells with hematopoietic features have been referred to as "colony-forming units-ECs" (CFU-ECs) (Gehling et al. 2000), "circulating angiogenic EPCs" (Rehman et al. 2003), "early EPCs" (Gulati et al. 2003; Hur et al. 2004), and "colony-forming units- Hill (CFU-Hill)" (Hill et al. 2003). Despite expression of hematopoietic markers, early EPCs also co-express EC markers; however, the presence of EC markers has been disputed because it might result from a contamination with microparticles deriving from other elements in the culture (such as platelets). In fact, naming these cells "EPCs" has been often criticized, and many authors now prefer terms such as "circulating angiogenic cells" that reflects their ability to promote angiogenesis in vivo, without assuming endothelial commitment (Fadini et al. 2012).

One of the original goals following the discovery of early EPCs was to evaluate their therapeutic potential (Fadini et al. 2008). In this regard, early EPCs were shown to facilitate the revascularization of ischemic tissues. For example, Isner and colleagues demonstrated that intravenous infusion of cultured human EPCs into athymic nude mice with hindlimb ischemia markedly improved blood flow recovery and capillary density in the ischemic hindlimb, significantly reducing the rate of limb loss (Kalka et al. 2000). Nevertheless, the mechanisms by which revascularization occurred was not fully understood at the time. Potential mechanisms for EPC-induced revascularization included an increased supply of ECs via proliferation and endothelial differentiation of EPCs or an increased supply of growth factors to activate resident mature endothelial cells. Rehman et al., demonstrated that acetylated-LDL^{+}/ulex-lectin^{+} early EPCs do not proliferate but instead release potent

proangiogenic growth factors and that the majority of these EPCs are derived from monocyte/macrophages (Rehman et al. 2003). These findings of low proliferation and endothelial differentiation suggested that the angiogenic effects observed after EPC infusion were most likely mediated by growth factor secretion. Gulati et al. also reported that the vast majority of EPCs arose from a $CD14^+$ subpopulation of peripheral blood MNCs (Gulati et al. 2003). More recently, Yoder et al., demonstrated that early EPCs are in fact descendants of HSCs and express functional activities of myeloid cells, including paracrine secretion of pro-angiogenic factors (Yoder et al. 2007). Collectively, the therapeutic potential of early EPC transplantation in promoting tissue vascularity is well established. However, early EPCs have low proliferation potential and therefore their therapeutic use may be limited by the absolute numbers of EPCs that can be obtained from patients (Murasawa and Asahara 2005). In addition, early EPCs do not give rise to mature ECs with structural lumen-forming capabilities, which limits their use in tissue engineering and other vascular therapies that require functional ECs.

Despite these limitations, circulating levels of early EPCs are considered as biomarkers for coronary and peripheral artery disease. The level of circulating $CD34^+$/KDR^+ EPCs has been shown to predict the occurrence of cardiovascular events and death from cardiovascular causes; thus it may help to identify patients at increased cardiovascular risk (Werner et al. 2005). In fact, there are now multiple studies that have demonstrated that early EPCs are reduced in the presence of classic cardiovascular risk factors, including smoking, hypertension, hypercholesterolemia, obesity, and diabetes (Fadini et al. 2012). Therefore, although early EPCs may not be a source of cells to generate autologous ECs needed for therapy, they appear to provide a useful index of cumulative cardiovascular risk and vascular function (Rosenzweig 2003).

3.5.2 Endothelial Colony-Forming Cells (ECFCs) or Late EPCs

Simultaneously to the identification of early EPCs, additional studies with long-term cultures of blood MNCs in the presence of VEGF yielded outgrowing cells with a more mature EC phenotype (Lin et al. 2000). These cells displayed a different morphology and proliferation pattern than the spindle-shaped early EPC; they formed colonies of cobblestone-shaped endothelial-like cells with a striking proliferative capacity. These cells have been referred to as "late outgrowth ECs" (Lin et al. 2000), EPCs (Kaushal et al. 2001), "late EPCs" (Hur et al. 2004), and "endothelial colony-forming cells" (ECFCs) (Ingram et al. 2004) (We have herein referred to these cells as ECFCs).

ECFCs comprise a very small population of the circulating cells in peripheral blood. Judging by the number of colonies in culture, ECFCs are found at a concentration of about 2–5 cells/ml in human umbilical cord blood, and at a concentration of about 0.05–0.2 cells/ml in adult peripheral blood (Ingram et al. 2004). Both the low frequency of ECFCs in circulation and the lack of a unique set of distinctive

cellular markers have made the isolation of ECFCs by flow cytometry or other immunological techniques very challenging (Mund et al. 2012). As a result, the most successful methodology for isolating ECFCs is based on methods similar to those originally reported for endothelial outgrowth from peripheral blood (Lin et al. 2000). ECFCs are organized in a hierarchy of progenitor stages that vary in proliferative potential and can be identified in clonal plating conditions (Ingram et al. 2004). The expansion potential of ECFCs is enormous although it varies between cord blood and adult blood; while cord blood-derived ECFCs can be routinely expanded in culture for over 70 population doublings, the lifespan of adult blood-derived ECFCs is significantly shorter (20–40 population doublings) (Ingram et al. 2004; Lin et al. 2000; Melero-Martin et al. 2007). The proliferative rate of ECFCs is equally remarkable; for example, we demonstrated that 10^{11} homogeneous ECFCs can be obtained from 25 mL cord blood after just 30 days in culture and 10^{8} ECFCs from 50 mL adult peripheral blood (Melero-Martin et al. 2007). These cell numbers are likely to exceed- in the case of cord blood-and be sufficient- in the case of adult blood- what would be needed for most autologous therapies, confirming peripheral blood as a robust source of ECs. Moreover, the presence of ECFCs in peripheral blood drawn from patients with significant coronary artery disease (CAD) has also been confirmed (Stroncek et al. 2009), although whether these CAD patient-derived ECFCs have the same clinical potential as those obtained from healthy adults remains to be elucidated.

For clinical applications, one critical requisite will be to isolate defined populations of cells. In this regard, the endothelial phenotype of ECFCs has been confirmed in multiple studies (Lin et al. 2011; Melero-Martin et al. 2007; Yoder et al. 2007). Essentially, ECFCs have been shown to express all the markers expected for ECs, including VE-Cadherin, CD31, vWF, CD34, VEGF-R2, and CD105. Moreover, the specific localization of surface markers such as CD31 and VE-cadherin at the cell-cell borders and vWF in a punctuate pattern in the cytoplasm, confirm the endothelial nature of these cells (Melero-Martin et al. 2007). ECFCs also uptake low density lipoproteins (e.g., Ac-LDL) and bind specific lectins (e.g., Ulex europaeus, UEA), as expected from ECs. Additionally, multiple studies have shown that ECFCs are consistently negative for mesenchymal markers such as CD90 and hematopoietic markers such as CD45 and CD14, confirming that these cells are not contaminated with either mesenchymal or hematopoietic cells (Lin et al. 2011; Melero-Martin et al. 2007; Yoder et al. 2007). Furthermore, ECFCs maintain the expression of endothelial markers through prolonged periods in culture (Melero-Martin et al. 2007), indicative of a robust source of ECs.

In addition to a stable phenotype, ECFCs have also been shown to function as ECs. For example, ECFCs respond to EC growth factors (e.g. VEGF, bFGF) by increasing their proliferation and migration in culture (Lin et al. 2011; Melero-Martin et al. 2007). Also, ECFCs can up-regulate leukocyte adhesion molecules and increase the adhesion of leukocytes upon exposure to inflammatory cytokines (e.g., TNF-α), indicating ability to regulate physiologic proinflammatory properties (Lin et al. 2011; Melero-Martin et al. 2007). Finally, ECFCs are able to launch angiogenic sprouts and to assemble into capillary-like structures in 3D cultures (Lin et al.

2012). Collectively, these functional properties of ECFCs are indicative of their bona fide endothelial nature, and can be used to distinguish ECFCs (true ECs) from early EPCs (hematopoietic cells).

The endothelial functionality of ECFCs has also been repeatedly demonstrated in vivo. This includes the feasibility of using ECFCs to endothelialize cardiovascular grafts, which has been shown in multiple animal models. First, autologous ovine ECFCs were expanded ex vivo and seeded on decellularized porcine iliac vessels that were then implanted as a carotid interposition graft in sheep and demonstrated adequate patency and arterial function in vivo for 130 days (Kaushal et al. 2001). Subsequent in vivo studies have further proven the non-thrombogenic properties of ECFCs using a diversity of vascular grafts (Stroncek et al. 2011). More recently, we and others have demonstrated additional vasculogenic properties of ECFCs in vivo (Au et al. 2008; Melero-Martin et al. 2007, 2008; Yoder et al. 2007). For example, we showed that combining both human ECFCs and mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) results in formation of robust functional microvascular networks in murine models of human cell transplantation (Melero-Martin et al. 2008). Evaluation of implants after 7 days revealed an extensive network of human blood vessels containing erythrocytes, indicating the rapid formation of functional anastomoses within the host murine vasculature. The implanted ECFCs were restricted to the luminal aspect of the vessels, which remained patent after 4 weeks in vivo. This rapid formation of long-lasting microvascular networks by blood-derived ECFCs constitutes an important step forward in the development of clinical strategies for tissue vascularization (Melero-Martin et al. 2008). Similar studies have demonstrated additional characteristics of ECFC-lined microvessels in vivo. For example, Jain and colleagues showed that microvessels that were formed in vivo using cord blood-derived ECFCs were similar to normal vessels in several aspects: they had normal blood flow, selectively regulated permeability of macromolecules, and were able to induce leukocyte-endothelial interactions in response to cytokine activation (Au et al. 2008).

In summary, the existence of postnatal circulating endothelial progenitor cells (late EPCs) in peripheral blood that can give rise to large number of autologous ECs (ECFCs) is now well recognized. Human ECFCs has been extensively interrogated over the last decade in multiple studies that have undoubtedly demonstrated their endothelial phenotype and ability to function as bona fide ECs both in vitro and in vivo. Thus, obtaining ECFCs from peripheral blood constitutes a promising means to generate, in a non invasive manner, autologous ECs for clinical vascular therapies.

3.6 Conclusions

ECs line the lumen of all blood vessels in the body and are central cellular players with multiple physiological functions. For decades the study of EC biology has been conducted with cultures of mature ECs obtained from living vasculature. However, future vascular cell therapies will likely require a large number of

autologous ECs with greater proliferative capacity than mature ECs. Blood-derived ECFCs represent a robust population of cells with an enormous capacity to proliferate, a clear endothelial phenotype, and an ability to function as bona fide ECs both in vitro and in vivo. However, to date, most studies of human ECFC transplantation are preclinical, using a variety of animal models. For years, the lively debate and controversies concerning the exact definition, origin, and function of ECPs has hampered the implementation of ECFCs into clinical trials. Nevertheless, with increasingly more laboratories involved in the study of these cells, the consensus that ECFCs constitute a robust source of autologous ECs is now stronger than ever. Certainly, there is great expectation to see how new vascular cell therapies develop in the next few years, and blood-derived, autologous ECFCs will likely play a role in future clinical applications.

References

Aasen T, Raya A, Barrero MJ, Garreta E, Consiglio A, Gonzalez F, Vassena R, Bilic J, Pekarik V, Tiscornia G et al (2008) Efficient and rapid generation of induced pluripotent stem cells from human keratinocytes. Nat Biotechnol 26(11):1276–1284

Aird WC (2007) Phenotypic heterogeneity of the endothelium: I. Structure, function, and mechanisms. Circ Res 100(2):158–173

Aoi T, Yae K, Nakagawa M, Ichisaka T, Okita K, Takahashi K, Chiba T, Yamanaka S (2008) Generation of pluripotent stem cells from adult mouse liver and stomach cells. Science 321(5889):699–702

Asahara T, Murohara T, Sullivan A, Silver M, van der Zee R, Li T, Witzenbichler B, Schatteman G, Isner JM (1997) Isolation of putative progenitor endothelial cells for angiogenesis. Science 275(5302):964–967

Asahara T, Masuda H, Takahashi T, Kalka C, Pastore C, Silver M, Kearne M, Magner M, Isner JM (1999) Bone marrow origin of endothelial progenitor cells responsible for postnatal vasculogenesis in physiological and pathological neovascularization. Circ Res 85(3):221–228

Au P, Daheron LM, Duda DG, Cohen KS, Tyrrell JA, Lanning RM, Fukumura D, Scadden DT, Jain RK (2008) Differential in vivo potential of endothelial progenitor cells from human umbilical cord blood and adult peripheral blood to form functional long-lasting vessels. Blood 111(3):1302–1305

Bagot CN, Arya R (2008) Virchow and his triad: a question of attribution. Br J Haematol 143(2): 180–190

Barrilleaux B, Knoepfler PS (2011) Inducing iPSCs to escape the dish. Cell Stem Cell 9(2): 103–111

Bergan JJ, Veith FJ, Bernhard VM, Yao JS, Flinn WR, Gupta SK, Scher LA, Samson RH, Towne JB (1982) Randomization of autogenous vein and polytetrafluorethylene grafts in femoral-distal reconstruction. Surgery 92(6):921–930

Blancas AA, Shih AJ, Lauer NE, McCloskey KE (2011) Endothelial cells from embryonic stem cells in a chemically defined medium. Stem Cells Dev 20(12):2153–2161

Cao R, Bråkenhielm E, Pawliuk R, Wariaro D, Post MJ, Wahlberg E, Leboulch P, Cao Y (2003) Angiogenic synergism, vascular stability and improvement of hind-limb ischemia by a combination of PDGF-BB and FGF-2. Nat Med 9(5):604–613

Carmeliet P (2000) VEGF gene therapy: stimulating angiogenesis or angioma-genesis? Nat Med 6(10):1102–1103

Chaudhury H, Raborna E, Goldiea LC, Hirschi KK (2012) Stem cell-derived vascular endothelial cells and their potential application in regenerative medicine. Cells Tissues Organs 195:41–47

Cho SW, Moon SH, Lee SH, Kang SW, Kim J, Lim JM, Kim HS, Kim BS, Chung HM (2007) Improvement of postnatal neovascularization by human embryonic stem cell derived endothelial-like cell transplantation in a mouse model of hindlimb ischemia. Circulation 116(21):2409–2419

Dahl SLM, Kypson AP, Lawson JH, Blum JL, Strader JT, Li Y, Manson RJ, Tente WE, DiBernardo L, Hensley MT et al (2011) Readily available tissue-engineered vascular grafts. Sci Transl Med 3(68):68ra9

Davison PM, Bensch K, Karasek MA (1980) Isolation and growth of endothelial cells from the microvessels of the newborn human foreskin in cell culture. J Invest Dermatol 75(4):316–321

De Bie C (2007) Genzyme: 15 years of cell and gene therapy research. Regen Med 2(1):95–97

Descamps B, Emanueli C (2012) Vascular differentiation from embryonic stem cells: novel technologies and therapeutic promises. Vascul Pharmacol 56(5–6):267–279

Eberli D, Atala A (2006) Tissue engineering using adult stem cells. Methods Enzymol 420: 287–302

Fadini GP, Baesso I, Albiero M, Sartore S, Agostini C, Avogaro A (2008) Technical notes on endothelial progenitor cells: ways to escape from the knowledge plateau. Atherosclerosis 197(2):496–503

Fadini GP, Losordo D, Dimmeler S (2012) Critical reevaluation of endothelial progenitor cell phenotypes for therapeutic and diagnostic use. Circ Res 110(4):624–637

Furie B, Furie BC (2008) Mechanisms of thrombus formation. N Engl J Med 359(9):938–949

Gehling UM, Ergün S, Schumacher U, Wagener C, Pantel K, Otte M, Schuch G, Schafhausen P, Mende T, Kilic N et al (2000) In vitro differentiation of endothelial cells from AC133-positive progenitor cells. Blood 95(10):3106–3112

Gerecht-Nir S, Ziskind A, Cohen S, Itskovitz-Eldor J (2003) Human embryonic stem cells as an in vitro model for human vascular development and the induction of vascular differentiation. Lab Invest 83:1811–1820

Gimbrone MA, Cotran RS, Folkman J (1974) Human vascular endothelial cells in culture. Growth and DNA synthesis. J Cell Biol 60(3):673–684

Gonzalez F, Boue S, Izpisua Belmonte JC (2011) Methods for making induced pluripotent stem cells: reprogramming a la carte. Nat Rev Genet 12(4):231–242

Gottlieb D, Kunal T, Emani S, Aikawa E, Brown DW, Powell AJ, Nedder A, Engelmayr GC, Melero-Martin JM, Sacks MS et al (2010) In vivo monitoring of function of autologous engineered pulmonary valve. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 139(3):723–731

Gulati R, Jevremovic D, Peterson TE, Chatterjee S, Shah V, Vile RG, Simari RD (2003) Diverse origin and function of cells with endothelial phenotype obtained from adult human blood. Circ Res 93(11):1023–1025

Han Z, Vandevoort CA, Latham KE (2007) Therapeutic cloning: status and prospects. Curr Opin Mol Ther 9(4):392–397

Hanna J, Markoulaki S, Schorderet P, Carey BW, Beard C, Wernig M, Creyghton MP, Steine EJ, Cassady JP, Foreman R et al (2008) Direct reprogramming of terminally differentiated mature B lymphocytes to pluripotency. Cell 133(2):250–264

Hill JM, Zalos G, Halcox JPJ, Schenke WH, Waclawiw MA, Quyyumi AA, Finkel T (2003) Circulating endothelial progenitor cells, vascular function, and cardiovascular risk. N Engl J Med 348(7):593–600

Hirashima M, Kataoka H, Nishikawa S, Matsuyoshi N, Nishikawa S-I (1999) Maturation of embryonic stem cells into endothelial cells in an in vitro model of vasculogenesis. Blood 93:1253–1263

Hur J, Yoon C-H, Kim H-S, Choi J-H, Kang H-J, Hwang K-K, Oh B-H, Lee M-M, Park Y-B (2004) Characterization of two types of endothelial progenitor cells and their different contributions to neovasculogenesis. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 24(2):288–293

Ingram DA, Mead LE, Tanaka H, Meade V, Fenoglio A, Mortell K, Pollok K, Ferkowicz MJ, Gilley D, Yoder MC (2004) Identification of a novel hierarchy of endothelial progenitor cells using human peripheral and umbilical cord blood. Blood 104(9):2752–2760

Isner JM (2002) Myocardial gene therapy. Nature 415(6868):234–239

Isner JM, Asahara T (1999) Angiogenesis and vasculogenesis as therapeutic strategies for postnatal neovascularization. J Clin Invest 103(9):1231–1236

Jain RK, Au P, Tam J, Duda DG, Fukumura D (2005) Engineering vascularized tissue. Nat Biotechnol 23(7):821–823

James D, Nam HS, Seandel M, Nolan D, Janovitz T, Tomishima M, Studer L, Lee G, Lyden D, Benezra R et al (2010) Expansion and maintenance of human embryonic stem cell-derived endothelial cells by TGFbeta inhibition is Id1 dependent. Nat Biotechnol 28(2):161–166

Joo HJ, Kim H, Park SW, Cho HJ, Kim HS, Lim DS, Chung HM, Kim I, Han YM, Koh GY (2011) Angiopoietin-1 promotes endothelial differentiation from embryonic stem cells and induced pluripotent stem cells. Blood 118(8):2094–2104

Kalka C, Masuda H, Takahashi T, Kalka-Moll WM, Silver M, Kearney M, Li T, Isner JM, Asahara T (2000) Transplantation of ex vivo expanded endothelial progenitor cells for therapeutic neovascularization. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97(7):3422–3427

Kane NM, Xiao Q, Baker AH, Luo Z, Xu Q, Emanueli C (2011) Pluripotent stem cell differentiation into vascular cells: a novel technology with promises for vascular re(generation). Pharmacol Ther 129(1):29–49

Kattman SJ, Huber TL, Keller GM (2006) Multipotent flk-1+ cardiovascular progenitor cells give rise to the cardiomyocyte, endothelial, and vascular smooth muscle lineages. Dev Cell 11(5):723–732

Kaushal S, Amiel GE, Guleserian KJ, Shapira OM, Perry T, Sutherland FW, Rabkin E, Moran AM, Schoen FJ, Atala A et al (2001) Functional small-diameter neovessels created using endothelial progenitor cells expanded ex vivo. Nat Med 7(9):1035–1040

Kennedy LJ Jr, Weissman IL (1971) Dual origin of intimal cells in cardiac-allograft arteriosclerosis. N Engl J Med 285(16):884–887

Kern PA, Knedler A, Eckel RH (1983) Isolation and culture of microvascular endothelium from human adipose tissue. J Clin Invest 71(6):1822–1829

Khurana R, Simons M (2003) Insights from angiogenesis trials using fibroblast growth factor for advanced arteriosclerotic disease. Trends Cardiovasc Med 13(3):116–122

Langer RS, Vacanti JP (1999) Tissue engineering: the challenges ahead. Sci Am 280(4):86–89

Lee H, Cusick RA, Browne F, Ho Kim T, Ma PX, Utsunomiya H, Langer R, Vacanti JP (2002) Local delivery of basic fibroblast growth factor increases both angiogenesis and engraftment of hepatocytes in tissue-engineered polymer devices. Transplantation 73(10):1589–1593

Levenberg S, Golub JS, Amit M, Itskovitz-Eldor J, Langer R (2002) Endothelial cells derived from human embryonic stem cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99(7):4391–4396

Li X, Tjwa M, Moons L, Fons P, Noel A, Ny A, Zhou JM, Lennartsson J, Li H, Luttun A et al (2005) Revascularization of ischemic tissues by PDGF-CC via effects on endothelial cells and their progenitors. J Clin Invest 115(1):118–127

Lin Y, Weisdorf DJ, Solovey A, Hebbel RP (2000) Origins of circulating endothelial cells and endothelial outgrowth from blood. J Clin Invest 105(1):71–77

Lin T, Ambasudhan R, Yuan X, Li W, Hilcove S, Abujarour R, Lin X, Hahm HS, Hao E, Hayek A et al (2009) A chemical platform for improved induction of human iPSCs. Nat Methods 6(11):805–808

Lin R-Z, Dreyzin A, Aamodt K, Dudley AC, Melero-Martin JM (2011) Functional endothelial progenitor cells from cryopreserved umbilical cord blood. Cell Transplant 20:515–522

Lin R-Z, Moreno-Luna R, Zhou B, Pu WT, Melero-Martin JM (2012) Equal modulation of endothelial cell function by four distinct tissue-specific mesenchymal stem cells. Angiogenesis 15(3):443–455

Lloyd-Jones D, Adams RJ, Brown TM, Carnethon M, Dai S, De Simone G, Ferguson TB, Ford E, Furie K, Gillespie C et al (2010) Executive summary: heart disease and stroke statistics – 2010 update: a report from the American Heart Association. Circulation 121(7):948–954

MacNeil S (2007) Progress and opportunities for tissue-engineered skin. Nature 445(7130): 874–880

Melero-Martin JM, Khan ZA, Picard A, Wu X, Paruchuri S, Bischoff J (2007) In vivo vasculogenic potential of human blood-derived endothelial progenitor cells. Blood 109(11):4761–4768

Melero-Martin JM, Kang S-Y, Khan ZA, Yuan L, Oettgen P, Bischoff J (2008) Engineering robust and functional vascular networks in vivo with human adult and cord blood-derived progenitor cells. Circ Res 103(2):194–202

Mund JA, Estes ML, Yoder MC, Ingram DA Jr, Case J (2012) Flow cytometric identification and functional characterization of immature and mature circulating endothelial cells. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 32(4):1045–1053

Murasawa S, Asahara T (2005) Endothelial progenitor cells for vasculogenesis. Physiology (Bethesda) 20:36–42

Nachman RL, Jaffe EA (2004) Endothelial cell culture: beginnings of modern vascular biology. J Clin Invest 114(8):1037–1040

Niklason LE, Gao J, Abbott WM, Hirschi KK, Houser S, Marini R, Langer R (1999) Functional arteries grown in vitro. Science 284(5413):489–493

Nör JE, Peters MC, Christensen JB, Sutorik MM, Linn S, Khan MK, Addison CL, Mooney DJ, Polverini PJ (2001) Engineering and characterization of functional human microvessels in immunodeficient mice. Lab Invest 81(4):453–463

Park S-W, Koh YJ, Jeon J, Cho Y-H, Jang M-J, Kang Y, Kim M-J, Choi C, Cho YS, Chung H-M et al (2010) Efficient differentiation of human pluripotent stem cells into functional CD34+ progenitor cells by combined modulation of the MEK/ERK and BMP4 signaling pathways. Blood 116(25):5762–5772

Prater DN, Case J, Ingram DA, Yoder MC (2007) Working hypothesis to redefine endothelial progenitor cells. Leukemia 21(6):1141–1149

Rafii S, Lyden D (2003) Therapeutic stem and progenitor cell transplantation for organ vascularization and regeneration. Nat Med 9(6):702–712

Rehman J, Li J, Orschell CM, March KL (2003) Peripheral blood "endothelial progenitor cells" are derived from monocyte/macrophages and secrete angiogenic growth factors. Circulation 107(8):1164–1169

Reubinoff BE, Pera MF, Fong CY, Trounson A, Bongso A (2000) Embryonic stem cell lines from human blastocysts: somatic differentiation in vitro. Nat Biotechnol 18(4):399–404

Richardson MR, Yoder MC (2011) Endothelial progenitor cells: quo vadis? J Mol Cell Cardiol 50(2):266–272

Rosenzweig A (2003) Endothelial progenitor cells. N Engl J Med 348(7):581–582

Rufaihah AJ, Huang NF, Jame S, Lee JC, Nguyen HN, Byers B, De A, Okogbaa J, Rollins M, Reijo-Pera R et al (2011) Endothelial cells derived from human iPSCS increase capillary density and improve perfusion in a mouse model of peripheral arterial disease. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 31(11):e72–e79

Sacks MS, Schoen FJ, Mayer JE (2009) Bioengineering challenges for heart valve tissue engineering. Annu Rev Biomed Eng 11:289–313

Schechner JS, Nath AK, Zheng L, Kluger MS, Hughes CC, Sierra-Honigmann MR, Lorber MI, Tellides G, Kashgarian M, Bothwell AL et al (2000) In vivo formation of complex microvessels lined by human endothelial cells in an immunodeficient mouse. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97(16):9191–9196

Seifalian AM, Tiwari A, Hamilton G, Salacinski HJ (2002) Improving the clinical patency of prosthetic vascular and coronary bypass grafts: the role of seeding and tissue engineering. Artif Organs 26(4):307–320

Shi Q, Rafii S, Wu MH, Wijelath ES, Yu C, Ishida A, Fujita Y, Kothari S, Mohle R, Sauvage LR et al (1998) Evidence for circulating bone marrow-derived endothelial cells. Blood 92(2):362–367

Sone M, Itoh H, Yamahara K, Yamashita JK, Yurugi-Kobayashi T, Nonoguchi A, Suzuki Y, Chao TH, Sawada N, Fukunaga Y et al (2007) Pathway for differentiation of human embryonic stem cells to vascular cell components and their potential for vascular regeneration. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 27(10):2127–2134

Staerk J, Dawlaty MM, Gao Q, Maetzel D, Hanna J, Sommer CA, Mostoslavsky G, Jaenisch R (2010) Reprogramming of human peripheral blood cells to induced pluripotent stem cells. Cell Stem Cell 7(1):20–24

Stroncek JD, Grant BS, Brown MA, Povsic TJ, Truskey GA, Reichert WM (2009) Comparison of endothelial cell phenotypic markers of late-outgrowth endothelial progenitor cells isolated from patients with coronary artery disease and healthy volunteers. Tissue Eng Part A 15(11):3473–3486

Stroncek JD, Ren LC, Klitzman B, Reichert WM (2011) Patient-derived endothelial progenitor cells improve vascular graft patency in a rodent model. Acta Biomater 8(1):201–208

Takahashi K, Yamanaka S (2006) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from mouse embryonic and adult fibroblast cultures by defined factors. Cell 126(4):663–676

Takahashi T, Kalka C, Masuda H, Chen D, Silver M, Kearney M, Magner M, Isner JM, Asahara T (1999) Ischemia- and cytokine-induced mobilization of bone marrow-derived endothelial progenitor cells for neovascularization. Nat Med 5(4):434–438

Tatsumi R, Suzuki Y, Sumi T, Sone M, Suemori H, Nakatsuji N (2011) Simple and highly efficient method for production of endothelial cells from human embryonic stem cells. Cell Transplant 20(9):1423–1430

Taura D, Sone M, Homma K, Oyamada N, Takahashi K, Tamura N, Yamanaka S, Nakao K (2009) Induction and isolation of vascular cells from human induced pluripotent stem cells – brief report. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 29(7):1100–1103

Terry MA (2003) Deep lamellar endothelial keratoplasty (DLEK): pursuing the ideal goals of endothelial replacement. Eye (Lond) 17(8):982–988

Thomson JA, Itskovitz-Eldor J, Shapiro SS, Waknitz MA, Swiergiel JJ, Marshall VS, Jones JM (1998) Embryonic stem cell lines derived from human blastocysts. Science 282(5391): 1145–1147

Unger C, Skottman H, Blomberg P, Dilber MS, Hovatta O (2008) Good manufacturing practice and clinical-grade human embryonic stem cell lines. Hum Mol Genet 17(R1):R48–R53

Urbich C, Heeschen C, Aicher A, Dernbach E, Zeiher AM, Dimmeler S (2003) Relevance of monocytic features for neovascularization capacity of circulating endothelial progenitor cells. Circulation 108(20):2511–2516

Veith FJ, Moss CM, Sprayregen S, Montefusco C (1979) Preoperative saphenous venography in arterial reconstructive surgery of the lower extremity. Surgery 85(3):253–256

Wang R, Clark R, Bautch VL (1992) Embryonic stem cell-derived cystic embryoid bodies form vascular channels: an in vitro model of blood vessel development. Development 114(2): 303–316

Wang ZZ, Au P, Chen T, Shao Y, Daheron LM, Bai H, Arzigian M, Fukumura D, Jain RK, Scadden DT (2007) Endothelial cells derived from human embryonic stem cells form durable blood vessels in vivo. Nat Biotechnol 25(3):317–318

Warren L, Manos PD, Ahfeldt T, Loh YH, Li H, Lau F, Ebina W, Mandal PK, Smith ZD, Meissner A et al (2010) Highly efficient reprogramming to pluripotency and directed differentiation of human cells with synthetic modified mRNA. Cell Stem Cell 7(5):618–630

Werner N, Kosiol S, Schiegl T, Ahlers P, Walenta K, Link A, Böhm M, Nickenig G (2005) Circulating endothelial progenitor cells and cardiovascular outcomes. N Engl J Med 353(10):999–1007

Wilmut I, Beaujean N, de Sousa PA, Dinnyes A, King TJ, Paterson LA, Wells DN, Young LE (2002) Somatic cell nuclear transfer. Nature 419(6907):583–586

Wu SM, Hochedlinger K (2011) Harnessing the potential of induced pluripotent stem cells for regenerative medicine. Nat Cell Biol 13(5):497–505

Yamahara K, Sone M, Itoh H, Yamashita JK, Yurugi-Kobayashi T, Homma K, Chao TH, Miyashita K, Park K, Oyamada N et al (2008) Augmentation of neovascularization [corrected] in hindlimb ischemia by combined transplantation of human embryonic stem cells-derived endothelial and mural cells. PLoS One 3(2):e1666

Yamashita J, Itoh H, Hirashima M, Ogawa M, Nishikawa S, Yurugi T, Naito M, Nakao K, Nishikawa S-I (2000) Flk1-positive cells derived from embryonic stem cells serve as vascular progenitor. Nature 408:92–96

Yang J, Chang E, Cherry AM, Bangs CD, Oei Y, Bodnar A, Bronstein A, Chiu CP, Herron GS (1999) Human endothelial cell life extension by telomerase expression. J Biol Chem 274(37):26141–26148

Yao S, Chen S, Clark J, Hao E, Beattie GM, Hayek A, Ding S (2006) Long-term self-renewal and directed differentiation of human embryonic stem cells in chemically defined conditions. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(18):6907–6912

Yoder MC (2009) Defining human endothelial progenitor cells. J Thromb Haemost 7(Suppl 1):49–52

Yoder MC, Mead LE, Prater D, Krier TR, Mroueh KN, Li F, Krasich R, Temm CJ, Prchal JT, Ingram DA (2007) Redefining endothelial progenitor cells via clonal analysis and hematopoietic stem/progenitor cell principals. Blood 109(5):1801–1809

Yu J, Vodyanik MA, Smuga-Otto K, Antosiewicz-Bourget J, Frane JL, Tian S, Nie J, Jonsdottir GA, Ruotti V, Stewart R et al (2007) Induced pluripotent stem cell lines derived from human somatic cells. Science 318(5858):1917–1920

Zhou H, Wu S, Joo JY, Zhu S, Han DW, Lin T, Trauger S, Bien G, Yao S, Zhu Y et al (2009) Generation of induced pluripotent stem cells using recombinant proteins. Cell Stem Cell 4(5):381–384

Chapter 4
Bioprocessing of Human Pluripotent Stem Cells for Cell Therapy Applications

Margarida Serra, Cláudia Correia, Catarina Brito, and Paula M. Alves

Abstract Human pluripotent stem cells (hPSCs), with their unique characteristics for indefinite proliferation and pluripotency, are an appealing source for cell replacement therapies, tissue engineering, drug discovery and *in vitro* toxicology. For the clinical implementation of these cells, there is the need for translating the culture protocols developed at research laboratories into validated bioprocesses that can guarantee reproducibility, scalability, standardization, robustness and safety.

The most attractive strategy for hPSC manufacturing consists in engineering stem cell niches by identifying key factors governing hPSC cell fate and creating culturing approaches that allow for 3D cell organization in a bioreactor-based system where the key environmental conditions are finely controlled. This chapter provides an overview of current bioengineering strategies that could be used to generate large numbers of hPSCs and/or their derivatives with potential application in regenerative medicine and drug discovery.

Keywords Human pluripotent stem cells • Cell therapy • Bioreactors • 3D culturing approaches • Integrated strategies for manufacturing of cell-based products

4.1 Introduction

Advances in stem cell research in recent years have brought stem cell applications in regenerative medicine closer to reality. More specifically, human pluripotent stem cells (hPSCs), including embryonic and induced pluripotent stem cells (hESCs and

M. Serra • C. Correia • C. Brito • P.M. Alves (✉)
Animal Cell Technology Unit, Instituto de Biologia Experimental e Tecnológica (IBET), Apartado 12, Oeiras 2780-901, Portugal
e-mail: marques@itqb.unl.pt; http://tca.itqb.unl.pt

M. Al-Rubeai, M. Naciri (eds.), *Stem Cells and Cell Therapy*, Cell Engineering 8,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-7196-3_4,

hiPSCs, respectively) have garnered a lot of attention owing to their ability to proliferate indefinitely (self-renewal) and differentiate into all mature cells of the human body (pluripotency). These unique properties have opened opportunities not only for novel stem cell-based regenerative medicines, but also for development of drug discovery platforms and promising *in vitro* model systems for the study of early human development.

With "large-scale" applications of hPSCs in the horizon, strong business opportunities exist today both for companies looking to commercialize hPSC-based products as well as to pursue hPSC-based therapies. However, few clinical trials have been carried out so far. A broad disappointment was faced when Geron aborted the world's first clinical trial testing a hESC-derived therapy targeting spinal cord injury in November 2011 (www.geron.com), 1 year after the launch of the trial. Currently, there are only two ongoing clinical trials being conducted by Advanced Cell Technology, aiming at treating genetic eye disorders (Stargardt's Macular Dystrophy and Advanced Dry Age Related Macular Degeneration) with hESC-derived products. What is still delaying a more rapid implementation and/or investment of/in hPSC-based therapies?

A major challenge in this field is the lack of expertise in product development and specialized cell manufacturing and processing that are imperative to bring hPSC-based products to the clinic/market. This chapter reviews recent progress and challenges in the manufacturing of hPSC-based products for clinical application. Particular focus is given to the identification of essential requirements for the implementation of more robust and integrated hPSC manufacturing platforms. The impact of environmental factors, 3-D culturing approaches and bioreactor-based technologies for controlling bioprocess outcomes and product quality are also discussed.

4.2 Critical Needs in the Manufacturing of Stem Cell-Based Therapies

A critical factor in hPSC bioprocessing is to translate the culture protocols developed in research laboratories into clinically applicable manufacturing designs. These platforms must be affordable, reproducible, predictable and clinically effective, while complying with Good Manufacturing Practice (cGMP) requirements. The major challenges include selection of the cell source (allogenic *versus* autologous), production of the required cell numbers (Scale-up *versus* Scale-out), control of cell differentiation process to generate only the cell population required (purity), while assuring the desired phenotype, potency and function (quality), followed by efficient formulation for application (i.e. storage, delivery and administration). These stringent demands require a close communication between fundamental research (from developmental biology to "omics" technologies and advances in immunology) and existing industrial practice (biologists and bioprocess engineers), essentially on automation, quality assurance and regulation.

4.2.1 *Stem Cell Source: Allogenic* Versus *Autologous*

Today, the industry continues to debate whether allogeneic or autologous therapies will ultimately be most successful. Although both past and ongoing trials have been using hESCs derived from allogenic sources, there are still some concerns that need to be tackled so that their use in the clinic can be perfected. In addition to ethical issues related to the manipulation of human embryos, hESC derivatives present a high risk of being rejected by patient's immune systems. Several strategies have been proposed to reduce or prevent the immune response, including the establishment of large banks of immunophenotyped hESC lines, the creation of an universal donor cell by genetic modification, the induction of tolerance by hematopoietic chimerism as well as cell encapsulation in clinically approved biologically innert biomaterials (Hentze et al. 2007; Lui et al. 2009). The advances in cell reprogramming have also sparked hope that hiPSCs might provide a clinical alternative to hESCs, assuring safer patient-specific (autologous) therapies. However, it is important to highlight that autologous hiPSCs are not suitable for the treatment of genetic diseases, requiring additional genetic manipulation steps to produce gene corrected hiPSCs for the specific therapy (Collin and Lako 2011). Moreover, these personalized hiPSC-based therapies face considerable challenges in what concerns the low efficiency yields of reprogramming process and time and costs associated to the cell manufacturing (Brignier and Gewirtz 2010), i.e. the whole process (isolation, reprogramming, expansion, differentiation and purification) will be too expensive for patients and will require long time for cell production and assessment of their medical stability, safety, and efficacy until further administration. Therefore, the establishment of a MHC-typed bank of hiPSCs for allogenic cell transplantation therapies (Taylor et al. 2005) represents a more realistic clinical scenario in the near future. Recently, researches from the Boston University School of Medicine showed that tissues derived from iPS cells in an experimental model were not rejected when transplanted back into genetically identical recipients (Araki et al. 2013), potentiating the use of hiPSC in the clinic. Overall, each type of therapy (autologous and allogenic) faces unique challenges (Fig. 4.1) and evaluating them prior to manufacturing is critical for decisions regarding the appropriate scale, strategy and methodology for up- and down-stream processing and storage, as discussed in future sections.

4.2.2 *Quantity: Scale-Up Versus Scale-Out*

Determining the final scale of production and manufacturing is related to the type of therapy and clinical phase. The production of allogeneic cell-based products is amenable to scale-up (Fig. 4.1), taking advantage of specific bioprocess technology. Manufacturing of stem cells for allogeneic therapies commonly involves establishing and qualifying master and working cell banks (cryopreserved cells), then producing large lots of product for release testing. As in classical biopharmaceutical

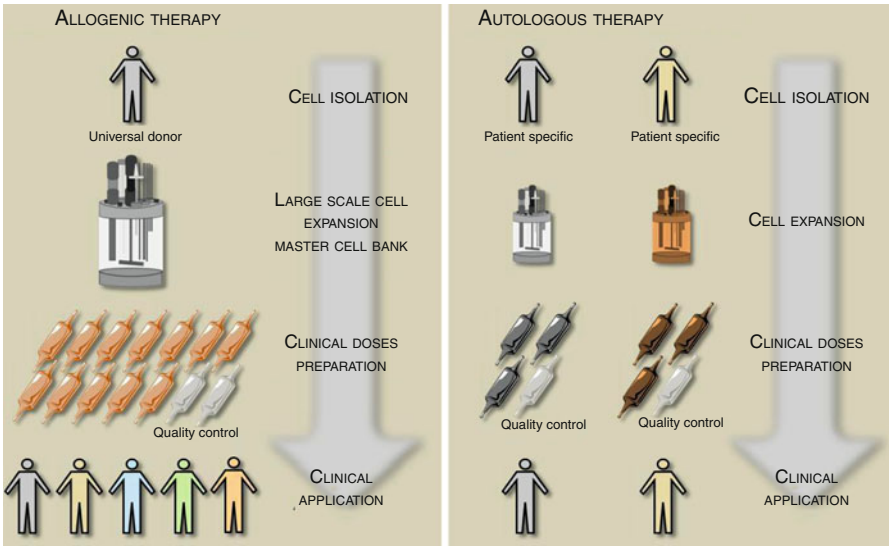


Fig. 4.1 Bioprocessing challenges of allogeneic and autologous therapies. Allogeneic processes generally include master cell banks and large-scale systems and several lots of patient doses. In autologous processing, every lot manufactured is meant to treat only a single patient, and a high portion the final product is lost to quality control tests

manufacturing, the process is scaled up during clinical development, and release testing may be performed on lots that represent hundreds or thousands of product doses (Fig. 4.1). The major challenges in allogeneic manufacturing are (i) maintaining cell product quality and potency while scaling up its production, and (ii) controlling the cost of goods (CoGs). Process scale-up can occur at any point during clinical development stages. However, the regulatory burden incurred when applying such changes increases as a product progresses through the clinical pathway. For example, in early stage trials the regulatory entities may request only comparability studies based on product characterization data; in later stages, clinical bridging studies are required. Therefore, it is imperative to establish and optimize scalable manufacturing processes at early stages, before beginning of phase 3 clinical trials, in order to assure that product quality would not be compromised when transferring to larger scale systems.

On the other hand, production of autologous, patient-specific cell therapy products is not amenable to a scale-up approach, but rather to a scale-out platform in commercial manufacturing (Fig. 4.1). To achieve efficiencies of scale, high-throughput production by small-batch and parallel processing of multiple, separate products in automated and closed systems should be adopted (Brandenberger et al. 2012). Functionally closed process technology provides product and process isolation, maintaining each product entirely within its own separate and sterilized disposable processing set. Such systems are highly amenable for automation and typically associated with extremely low rates of contamination, as described below

(Sect. 4.3.3.4). The major challenge in manufacturing autologous cell therapy products is indeed the logistics associated with handling parallel and similar closed bioprocesses at the same time as well as the greatest potential for product/process variability, since each product is derived and meant to treat only a single patient.

In general, the numbers of hPSCs-derived cells required for effective therapy fall in the range of thousands/millions to few billions, depending on the therapeutic target (Tzanakakis et al. 2000; Lindvall et al. 2004; Lock and Tzanakakis 2007; Jing et al. 2008). For example, for the treatment of Parkinson's disease, it has been proposed that the yield of transplanted cells should allow for at least 1×10^5 grafted dopaminergic neurons to survive (over the long term) in the human putamen (Lindvall et al. 2004). On the other hand, for the replacement of damaged cardiac tissue after myocardial infarction or for the treatment of Type I diabetes, approximately $1–2 \times 10^9$ cells will be required for each patient (50–100 kg) (reviewed in Serra et al. 2012). Since the hPSC volumetric productivities reported by our group (Serra et al. 2010, 2011) and others (reviewed in Serra et al. 2012) fall in the range of $0.1–3 \times 10^6$ cell/mL, the production of cell-based products for autologous and allogeneic cell therapies would require batch sizes with working volumes of 0.1–1 L and 2–20 L respectively, although issues related to the respective efficiencies of differentiation and yields of downstream processing (e.g. for purification and selection of a specific cell type, for cell-microcarrier separation) should be considered as well.

4.2.3 Purity

Unlike traditional pharmaceutical products, strict standards for the purity of cell-based products might not be realistic and might even be undesirable in some cases, where a mixture of several cell types may be necessary to achieve the desired therapeutic effect (Lamba et al. 2010). Thus the first issue is the definition of product purity in a case-by-case approach: which cells "contribute to the beneficial effect" and which cells are "impurities"? Although more insights about the type of cells that "contribute to the beneficial effect" are required, it is well known that undifferentiated hPSCs present tumorogenic potential and are capable to generate tumors in the body after transplantation (Zhao et al. 2011). Therefore, the development of strategies to efficiently eliminate these "impurities" will be essential to allow safe utilization of hPSC derivatives. Recently, efficient methods for the removal of undifferentiated hPSC have been proposed, including the combination of immunodepletion tools (fluorescence-activated cell sorting) with antibodies against SSEA-5 and additional pluripotency surface markers (Tang et al. 2011) and the use of cytotoxic antibodies (Schriebl et al. 2012) or antibodies fragments (Lim et al. 2011) that specifically bind and kill hPSCs in their undifferentiated state.

In addition, the presence of foreign particulate matter, such as microcarriers fines, is unacceptable for injectable products and should be removed prior to administration. These and other major challenges of stem cell purification and downstream processing are discussed in Chap. 8.

4.2.4 Quality

In cell therapy manufacturing it is essential to understand the nature of the product being administered to patients and to ensure that it is the same every time. Essentially, this includes defining the biological aspects (the critical quality attributes- CQAs) of a cell-based product, namely phenotype and potency. Cell genotype and functionality also need to be monitored and controlled throughout the entire bioprocess. Therefore key tests for quality control analysis are necessary at each stage: undifferentiated stem cells have to maintain their pluripotency as well as genetic and epigenetic stability after expansion (as do cells from the master and working cell banks), while stem cell derivatives must express markers of the desired cell lineage and be fully functional after differentiation and purification. Moreover, to develop clinical-grade cells, all procedures (e.g. isolation, reprogramming, expansion, differentiation, purification, cryopreservation) and components (e.g. matrices, culture and cryopreservation media, supplements) must follow the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and European Medicines Agency (EMA) regulations (Unger et al. 2008). Within this context, six clinical-grade hESC lines were already submitted to the UK Stem Cell Bank, offering optimal defined quality and safety necessary for cell transplantation applications (Crook et al. 2007). For hiPSC lines, there are additional drawbacks associated to the protocols used for reprogramming (usually carried out by genetic modifications using viral vectors). At techniques for the generation of safer iPSC lines are improving including the use of non- integrating viral vectors (e.g. adenovirus or baculovirus), exogenous plasmids, protein factors, small molecules or microRNAs (Selvaraj et al. 2010), the potential for hiPSC-based therapies is rising.

4.3 Process Engineering of hPSCs for Clinical Application

The level of complexity for cell-based products is significantly high, requiring robust bioprocesses that should be designed according to pertinent principles (Fig. 4.2). The most effective strategy for manufacturing of hPSC-based products

Stem cell bioprocessing		
Components	Requirements	Goals
• **Stem cells** • **Environmental factors** • **Culturing approaches** • **Bioreactors**	Scalable; affordable; time-saving; automation; bioprocess characterization monitoring and control; regulated; validated; quality assurance; harvesting, storage and transportation	• **Process** Integration, longevity, reproducibility, efficiency, productivity • **Product** Quantity, quality, purity

Fig. 4.2 Design principles for stem cell bioprocessing (Adapted from Placzek et al. (2009))

consists in identifying key factors governing hPSC fate and engineering culturing approaches that allow for 3D cell organization in a bioreactor-based system where key environmental conditions are monitored and rigorously controlled. In this chapter, the importance of these process components on the design of stem cell manufacturing platforms will be presented, highlighting the main requirements needed to fulfill end products' purity, quality and quantity (Fig. 4.2).

4.3.1 Environmental Factors Controlling Stem Cell Fate and Bioprocess Outcome

The fate of stem cells is highly dependent on cues that lie in their extracellular environment. These cues operate on different temporal and spatial scales, driving specific cellular behaviours, ultimately controlling cell proliferation, differentiation or apoptosis. During the last decade, efforts have been made to identify such *stimuli*; (i) extracellular matrix, (ii) soluble factors, (iii) cell-cell interactions, (iv) physical forces and (v) physiochemical conditions have been pointed as relevant cues impacting on the fate of hPSC and consequently on the outcome of hPSC bioprocesses (Azarin and Palecek 2010).

Extracellular Matrix

Extracellular matrix (ECM) is a key component of the stem cell niche *in vivo* and can influence stem cell fate by mediating cell attachment and migration, presenting chemical and physical cues, as well as binding soluble factors. In a natural setting, this environment encloses a complex and dynamic network of proteins, polysaccharides, proteoglycans and water that provide structural and organizational guides for tissue development. The activation of these signaling pathways through the adhesion of specific components of the ECM to cells via integrins/cadherins/cell surface receptors is not trivial as it is highly dependent on the composition, orientation and structure of the ECM (Lukashev and Werb 1998).

The current gold standard for the culture of hPSCs requires the use of Matrigel or feeder cells (mouse embryonic fibroblasts, human foreskin fibroblasts). However, these matrices are complex, poorly-defined and, in some cases, xenogenic and thus, substantial efforts have focused in developing defined substrates for hPSC cultivation, including human recombinant proteins (Rodin et al. 2010) and synthetic substrates (Kolhar et al. 2010; Melkoumian et al. 2010; Villa-Diaz et al. 2010). At least two matrices composed of well-defined and xeno-free components are commercially available (CELLstart™ from Invitrogen, and StemAdhere™ from Stem Cell Technologies). Research is ongoing into designing surface-engineered substrates based on synthetic materials including Synthemax® (from Corning) (Li et al. 2013; Jin et al. 2012) or UV/ozone radiation (Saha et al. 2011), providing attractive

xeno-free standardized and reproducible cell culture platforms for the scalable production of clinically relevant hPSCs.

Soluble Factors

The outcome of stem cell culture depends also on the presence/concentration of growth/differentiation factors which provide survival, proliferation and differentiation signals to the cells. These regulatory molecules can be either added to the culture or secreted by the cells. Upon diffusion through the medium, these factors are sequestered by the ECM and bind to the cell surface receptors thus activating cellular functions. Although we are moving from the "growth factor lottery" that ruled SC media development in the last decade due to the intensive research on the signaling pathways governing hPSC expansion/differentiation (Azarin and Palecek 2010), the production costs and growth factor low stability in culture media are major hurdles for scale-up.

Potential strategies for reducing the concentration of these compounds without compromising the culture outcome include engineering approaches for the design of more stable molecules together with the development of appropriate culture operation modes such as the adoption of fed-batch and perfusion strategies (Serra et al. 2010). Alternatively, these factors can be immobilized on the surface of biomaterials (Ferreira et al. 2007) or even encapsulated in nanoparticles (Maia et al. 2011) aiming at achieving a better control of the cellular microenvironment. Attempts have also been performed regarding the use of small molecules that can be isolated/synthesized economically; with the advent of high-throughput screening technologies, small molecule libraries have been screened to identify molecular interactions leading to particular stem cell behaviors and specific culture outcomes (Ao et al. 2011; Burdick and Watt 2011).

Cell-Cell Interactions

Cell-to-cell communication, either *in vivo* or *in vitro*, can be established via direct contact (juxtacrine communication) or over distance via the diffusion of soluble signals secreted from closer (paracrine signaling) or distant (endocrine signaling) neighboring cells. While juxtacrine cell-cell communication provides a persistent morphogenic cue, allowing the precise control of cellular responses, paracrine signaling is normally time-constrained. The extent of such limitation is dependent on the spatial distance between proximal population of cells. This occurs because signaling molecules may: (1) degrade very quickly, limiting their effectiveness; (2) be taken by cells rapidly, leaving few to travel further, thus creating a heterogeneous environment where cells are exposed to different concentration gradients; (3) have their diffusion hindered by the ECM. These different cell-cell interactions drive a set of stem cell responses, from the induction of programs of differentiation (Tsai and McKay 2000) to the promotion of proliferation and self-renewal properties

(Purpura et al. 2004). In fact, one of the major requirements for the cultivation of hPSCs is the need for tight controlling of cell-cell interactions. It is well established that large colonies present high levels of spontaneous differentiation while individual hPSCs or small clumps do not grow efficiently (Bauwens et al. 2008). In the last years, scalable propagation of hPSCs has been hindered by poor cell survival after enzymatic dissociation into single cells but efficient strategies have recently been proposed to decrease dissociation-induced apoptosis, including the overexpression of anti-apoptotic proteins (Ardehali et al. 2011; Bai et al. 2012) and the combination of heat shock treatment with the use Y-27632, a specific inhibitor for Rho-dependent protein kinase (ROCK) (Singh et al. 2010). Paracrine factors secreted from other cell types have also been reported to drive a set of stem cell responses, from the promotion of proliferation/self-renewal properties (Lee et al. 2011) to the induction of directed differentiation processes (Ramos-Mejia et al. 2011). Therefore, the combination of inoculation strategies with cell concentration values and/or co-cultivation approaches are important parameters that require accurate optimization, aiming at boosting bioprocess yields.

Physical Forces

A number of *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies have demonstrated that physical forces (e.g. hydrodynamic/hydrostatic, mechanical and electrical) play a key role in the development of tissues and organs during embryogenesis as well as their remodeling and growth in postnatal life. Moreover, it has been found that stem cells are sensitive to fluid flow-induced shear stress, compressive and tensional strains, cyclical stretching hydrostatic pressures (Discher et al. 2009). For example, it has been demonstrated that centrifugal forces up to 1,000 g cause shifts in phenotype and proliferation of ESCs (Veraitch et al. 2008). The results of mechanical stress, caused by stirring, on different hPSC cultures are cell line specific (Leung et al. 2011). Moreover, shear sensitive cell lines spontaneously differentiate even in the presence of cell protective polymers, compromising cell growth (Leung et al. 2011). In another study, the authors reported that the application of shear stress to cells both with and without LIF influenced the expression of murine ESC pluripotency markers including Rex-1, Sox-2 and Nanog (Gareau et al. 2012). Further studies on the impact of these physical forces on cell functionality will be needed. Since scalable culture systems often employ perfusion or mixing that can apply mechanical forces to the cells, detailed characterization of these forces will be very important for the design of efficient and adequate bioreactor-based strategies for the manufacturing of cell-based therapies.

Physiochemical Conditions

Although typically cultivated inside incubators operated at standard values of temperature (37 °C), oxygen (20 %) and pH (7.4), several studies have shown that hPSC

expansion/differentiation potential can be enhanced under different operating conditions. Few studies have been conducted on the effect of temperature and pH in hPSC culture so far. For example, it was shown that the extended exposure of hESC cultures for 1–3 h to ambient conditions (resulted in a rapid drop in temperature and rise in pH) inhibits cell proliferation and reduces Oct-4 expression levels (Veraitch et al. 2008). On the other hand, with hPSC cultures, reducing oxygen concentration towards physiological levels (hypoxia 2–6 % of oxygen) is beneficial for maintaining cell pluripotent status; stem cells self-renewal is supported (Serra et al. 2010), spontaneous differentiation is reduced (Ezashi et al. 2005) and karyotypic integrity is maintained (Forsyth et al. 2006), in contrast with normoxia conditions (20 % oxygen). One major problem in the field is the lack of recognition that the oxygen experienced by the cells (pO_{2cell}) is often different from the oxygen in the gas phase (pO_{2gas}), which makes interpretation of the literature difficult. In fact, pO_{2cell} can differ drastically from pO_{2gas}, as it depends on the cell density, culture system (static, stirred, suspension), cellular oxygen consumption rate and oxygen transfer rate in the culture (reviewed in Millman et al. 2009). Efforts to estimate and control pO_{2cell} (Powers et al. 2010; Serra et al. 2010) are essential for better clarification of the role of oxygen on hPSCs' fate.

4.3.2 Robust Strategies for hPSC Bioprocessing: Moving Stem Cells from 2D Monolayers to 3D Culturing Approaches

hPSCs are traditionally cultured in 2-D systems (e.g. Petri dishes, culture flasks and well plates). These cells are usually propagated as colonies on top of a feeder layer of inactivated fibroblasts. Over the last years, inadequacy of conventional 2-D culture systems in resembling the *in vivo* developmental microenvironment has been observed in both basic biology and tissue engineering studies. In fact, tissue-specific architecture, mechanical and biochemical cues, cell-cell and cell-matrix communications are lost under such simplified and highly biased conditions. The inherent uncontrollability, heterogeneity and low production yields associated with these systems have made them unattractive and unsuitable for clinical and industrial applications.

From an industrial perspective, the most robust and amenable way to produce cell-based products would consist on the cultivation of hPSC as a single cell suspension. Although promising results were reported with murine ESCs (using either gene knockout (Ecad-/) or the neutralizing antibody DECMA-1(EcadAb)) (Mohamet et al. 2010), further improvements are required to increase the viability of hESCs. As mentioned above, one of the main requirements for hPSCs cultivation is the need to maintain cell-cell -matrix interactions. The knowledge accumulated from decades of experience in biopharmaceutical industrial processing, including the establishment of novel suspension culture strategies for mammalian cells, has facilitated the transition of hPSCs from static 2D monolayer cultures to dynamic 3D culturing approaches. Today, a variety of 3D suspension culture strategies are

established for hPSC expansion and/or differentiation: cell aggregates, cell immobilization on microcarrier and cell microencapsulation in hydrogels (Table 4.1). Nonetheless, the cultivation of stem cells in a 3D approach is not straightforward, requiring specific cell culture expertise as well as the implementation of robust and sensitive tools/methodologies for cell culture monitoring and characterization. However, the benefits associated to the implementation of successful and affordable bioprocesses and their translation to novel stem cell-based technologies should more than justify the investment. By providing a cellular context closer to what occurs in a native microenvironment, 3D culture strategies can significantly improve cell viability, functionality and proliferation/differentiation potential, offering a higher degree of efficiency, robustness, and predictability to the resulting hPSC manufacturing process (Cukierman et al. 2002; Pampaloni et al. 2007; Lund et al. 2009). It is important to highlight that these 3D cell culture approaches are also promising tools for drug screening application and disease modeling (Jensen et al. 2009).

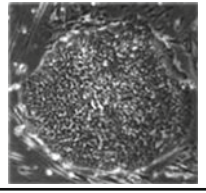
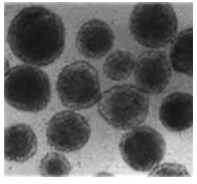
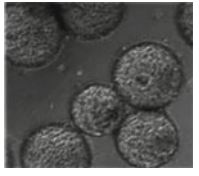
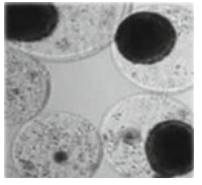
Cell Aggregates

In aggregate cultures, cells can re-establish mutual contacts and recapitulate microenvironments that allow them to express a tissue-like structure, ultimately enhancing cell differentiation and functionality (Burdick and Vunjak-Novakovic 2009; Lund et al. 2009). For hPSCs, this strategy has usually been associated with spontaneous differentiation, promoted by the generation of concentration gradients within the aggregate (Gerecht-Nir et al. 2004; Cameron et al. 2006; Come et al. 2008; Yirme et al. 2008). Knowledge gained from mouse ESC and progresses in stem cell biology has contributed to the design of controlled bioprocesses for hPSC expansion/differentiation as aggregate cultures (Kehoe et al. 2009; Niebruegge et al. 2009; Amit et al. 2010; Krawetz et al. 2010; Olmer et al. 2010; Singh et al. 2010; Zweigerdt et al. 2011). The main limitation of this system is the need to control aggregate size throughout the bioprocess in order to avoid the formation of necrotic centers and/or spontaneous differentiation (Table 4.1). To overcome this drawback suitable culture systems, such us stirred tank bioreactors (Krawetz et al. 2010), must be used and repeated dissociation and re-aggregation steps (Singh et al. 2010) should be integrated in the bioprocess.

Microcarrier Technology

One method for controlling cellular aggregation in suspension conditions is to use microcarriers. A microcarrier is a support matrix that allows the growth of anchorage-dependent cells in suspension systems. A wide range of microcarrier types have been proposed for the cultivation of hPSCs. These supports can be porous or non-porous, composed by gelatin, glass, collagen, cellulose, presenting dimensions within the range of 10–200 μm (Phillips et al. 2008; Fernandes et al.

Table 4.1 Advantages and disadvantages of different culture systems for stem cell bioprocessing

Culture strategy	**2D cultures**	**3D cultures**		
	Colony culture	**Cell aggregates**	**Microcarrier technology**	**Cell microencapsulation**
				
Advantages	Easy visualization/ monitoring	Easy handling	**Non-porous**	Scalable
	Affordable	Scalable	Easy handling	High reproducibility
	Suitable for small-scale studies	High reproducibility	Scalable	High surface to volume ratio
		Preservation of 3D cell-cell contacts	High reproducibility	High cell production yields
		Can mimic stem cells' native microenvironment	Easy visualization/monitoring	Protection from physical forces
		High differentiation efficiency	No limitations in mass and gas diffusion	Preservation of 3D cell-cell and cell-matrix contacts
		High cell production yields	High surface to volume ratio	Flexibility for engineering approaches to improve cell culture performance
			High cell production yields	Process integration in transplantation studies
			Porous	
			Easy handling	
			Scalable	
			High reproducibility	
			High surface to volume ratio	
			High cell production yields	
			Protection from physical forces	

Disadvantages	Low reproducibility	Difficult to control culture outcome	**Non-porous**	Difficulty in culture visualization/ monitorization
	Low scalability	Control of aggregate size	Controlling microcarrier agglomeration/clumping	Limited mass and gas diffusion inside the pores
	Difficult to control culture parameters and diffusion gradients	Single cell harvesting (difficult to dissociate aggregates without compromising cell viability)	Cell-bead separation step required	Cell harvesting (decapsulation step required)
	Low cell production yields	Cell damage due to physical forces	Cell damage due to physical forces (hydrodynamic shear, perfusion flow)	Material costs associated with encapsulation equipment/process and biomaterials
	Limited resemblance to *in vivo* tissues		Material costs (microcarrier)	
			Porous	
			Difficulty in culture visualization/ monitoring	
			Limited mass and gas diffusion inside the pores	
			Cell-bead separation step required (except for biodegradable supports)	
			Material costs (microcarrier)	

Adapted from Serra et al. (2012)

2009; Kehoe et al. 2009; Lock and Tzanakakis 2009; Nie et al. 2009; Oh et al. 2009; Chen et al. 2010, 2011; Lecina et al. 2010; Serra et al. 2010; Storm et al. 2010; Heng et al. 2012; Leung et al. 2011). The microcarrier type should be selected according to stem cell type/characteristics (size, morphology, clonal efficiency) and process requirements (expansion, differentiation, cell harvesting). It is important to highlight that, regarding the culture of hPSCs, these microcarriers should be further functionalized with different coating materials (e.g. ECM proteins) in order to improve cell culture performance namely, cell attachment, growth and differentiation, without compromising their characteristics (Chen et al. 2011). The development of defined, GMP compliant and xeno-free microcarriers has long been awaited.

Another advantage of microcarrier technology in stem cell expansion processes is the flexibility to easily adjust the area available for cell growth, further facilitating the process scale-up. From clinical/industrial perspectives, this attribute has a tremendous impact on reducing the costs of cell manufacturing by reducing the amount of culture media, growth factors and other costly supplements required in hPSC cultivation (Fernandes et al. 2009). However, this approach also has some disadvantages, including potential harmful effects of shear stress (Leung et al. 2011) and microcarrier clumping (Serra et al. 2011) as well as increased operating costs associated with the incorporation of an additional downstream step for cell-bead separation and microcarrier removal (Table 4.1). To overcome this last limitation, clinically approved biodegradable microcarriers are promising approaches. Indeed, gelatin and pharmacologically active microcarriers (PAMs) have been used successfully in adult stem cell-based therapy, showing enhanced cell survival, differentiation and graft integration (Delcroix et al. 2010; Hernandez et al. 2010).

Cell Microencapsulation

The main benefit of cell microencapsulation technology is the possibility of designing the scaffold environment with specific biomaterials selected from the wide range available with different mechanical/chemical properties, correlating to the properties of native tissues (Burdick and Vunjak-Novakovic 2009; Lund et al. 2009). Such tailored microenvironments may be more suitable for the self-renewal of stem cells, for directing their differentiation into specialized cell types, for promoting the organization of cells in 3-D configurations similar to those established *in vivo*. Several scaffolds/biomaterials have been used to enhance the culture of hPSCs including alginate (Siti-Ismail et al. 2008; Serra et al. 2011), hydrogels of agarose (Dang et al. 2004), chitosan (Li et al. 2013) and hyaluronic acid (Gerecht et al. 2007). It is important to highlight that microencapsulation technology potentially contributes for the success of transplantation experiments (Murua et al. 2008). In contrast to cells in suspension, encapsulated tissue constructs are less susceptible to immune rejection, their delivery is better targeted and the *in vivo* degradation kinetics can be tuned allowing a more efficient and functional integration of cells in the host organ (Delcroix et al. 2010; Murua et al. 2008). Thus, the source and properties

of the encapsulation material (i.e. elasticity, stability, permeability, biocompatibility and biosafety) should be selected taking into account the culture outcome, the final application and safety issues.

Cell microencapsulation in hydrogels also ensures a shear stress-free microenvironment while avoiding excessive clumping of microcarriers or aggregates in culture (Siti-Ismail et al. 2008; Chayosumrit et al. 2010; Jing et al. 2010; Serra et al. 2011). This 3D strategy has been shown to be extremely attractive for use in large-scale bioprocesses, enabling tighter control of the culture and higher cell yields than non-encapsulated cultures (Serra et al. 2011) (Table 4.1).

4.3.3 Bioreactors for hPSC Cultivation

Bioreactors have been, and still are, extensively used in chemical/biological industries for the production of antibodies and recombinant proteins amongst many other products. The knowledge accumulated from recent years has facilitated their transition to stem cell bioengineering, in which the cells are the products. In particular, bioreactors for stem cell bioprocessing should be designed to accurately control/regulate the cellular microenvironment that supports cell viability and provides spatial and temporal control of signalling. These environmentally controlled bioreactors should guarantee rapid and controlled cell expansion/differentiation, the efficient local exchange of gases (e.g. oxygen), nutrients, metabolites and growth factors as well as the provision of physiological stimuli (Fig. 4.3). In the end, by generating and maintaining a controlled culture environment, stem cells bioreactors represent a key element for the development of automated, standardized, traceable, cost-effective, and safe manufacturing processes for stem cell-based products. At present, there is a large range of bioreactor types available for hPSC bioprocessing (Placzek et al. 2009) (summarized in Table 4.2): microfluidic devices, rotary cell culture systems, stirred culture vessels and disposable bioreactors have been the main bioreactors explored to date.

Microfluidic Culture Systems

Microfluidic devices, or micro-bioreactors, are efficient small-scale systems mainly used for the optimization of cell expansion and differentiation culture conditions while also providing the precise control over the cell microenvironment (Azarin and Palecek 2010; Placzek et al. 2009). Arrays of micro-bioreactors have been developed to study growth and differentiation of hESC and ASC in a 3-D perfusion system (Cimetta et al. 2009; Fong et al. 2005; Zhao et al. 2009). The microenvironment can be controlled by adjusting operating parameters such as the perfusion rate, resulting in a high-throughput system for evaluating the effects of concentration gradients of soluble factors on various cell processes. However, the main limitations of these culture systems are low scalability and the drawbacks

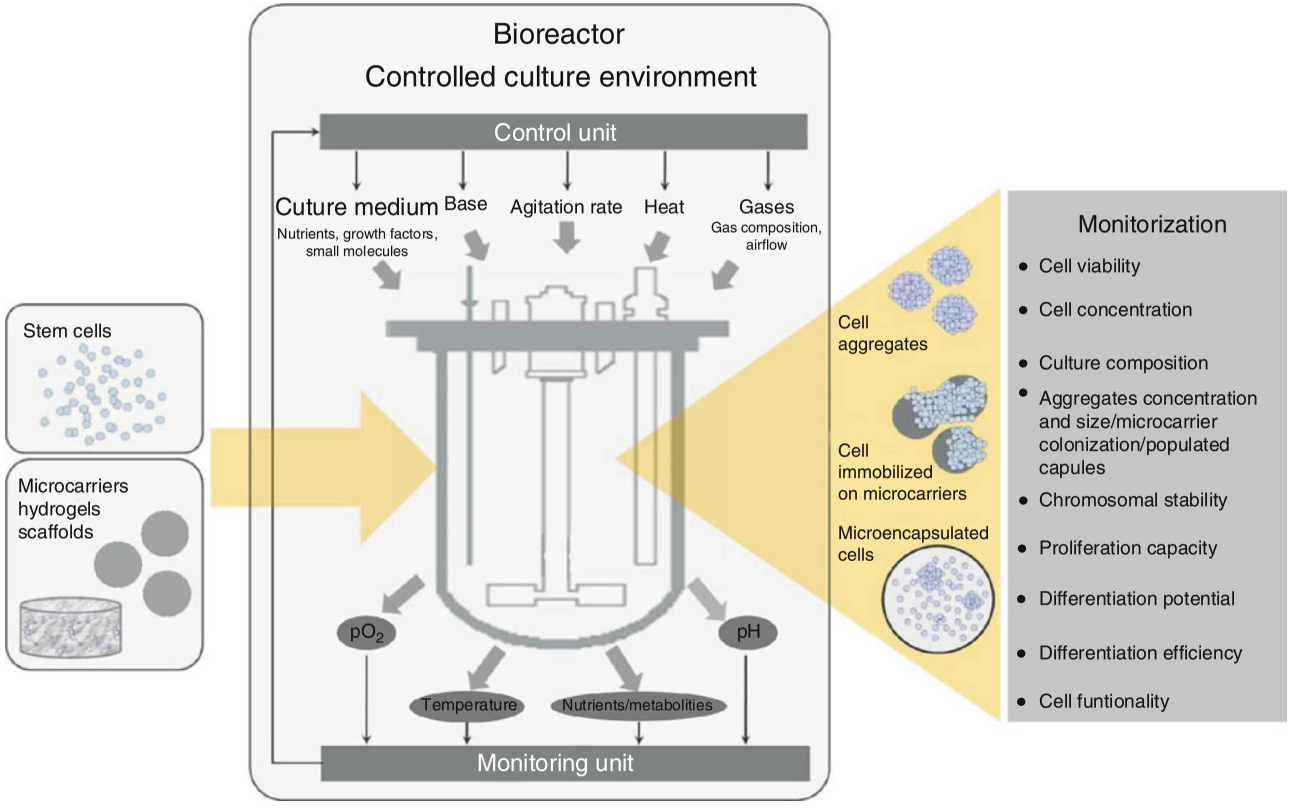


Fig. 4.3 Schematic representation of stirred tank bioreactor system for stem cell cultivation. Fully controlled stirred tank bioreactors provide an automated control of the environment (temperature, pH, pO_2 as well as nutrients/metabolites) mandatory for reproducible stem cell cultivation. Stirred culture vessels are scalable and hydrodynamically well characterized and enable easy non-destructive sampling for continuous monitorization of culture status (e.g. cell concentration/viability, differentiation potential, functionality). These bioreactors provide the operator with the flexibility of culturing hPSCs in different 3D approaches including the cultivation of cell aggregates, cells immobilized on microcarriers or entrapped in microcapsules

Table 4.2 Culture systems for stem cell expansion and differentiation

Bioreactor type	Culture surface area ($\times 10^3$ cm^2/L)	Production ($\times 10^6$ cell/mL)	Easy of sampling	Non-destructive sampling	Monit. & control	Mass transfer	Easy to scale-up	Shear stress (dyn/cm^2)	Operation mode		Culture approach	
									Batch	Perf	2D	3D
Static systems (T-flasks, dishes)	0.29	0.1	High	No	Low	Low	Low	0	Yes	No	Yes	No
Stirred culture systems	2.8	1–10	High	Yes	High	High	High	2–40	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Perfusion chamber	18	10–100	Medium	No	Medium	Medium	Medium	1–5	No	Yes	No	Yes
Perfusion hollow fibre	100–200	100–200	Low	No	Low	Medium	Medium	0	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Rotating wall vessel	18–22	n.a.	Medium	No	Medium	Medium	Low	0.5–2	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Grooved bioreactor	18–20	10–100	Medium	No	Medium	Medium	Medium	0.1–0.5	No	Yes	No	Yes
Packed bed (Bellocel)	18	1.5–200	Medium	No	Low	Medium	High	1–5	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Airlift	2,800	0.5	Medium	Yes	High	High	Medium	10–30	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Disposable bag bioreactors (wave bioreactor)	not available	10–20	High	Yes	High	Medium	High	0.1–0.5	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Adapted from Placzek et al. (2009) and Azarin and Palecek (2009)
n.a. not available

associated to perfusion including high shear stress and continuous removal of important factors secreted by the cells that could ultimately compromise stem cell performance.

Rotary Cell Culture Systems

Developed by NASA, Rotary cell culture (RCC) bioreactors (which includes STLV-slow turning lateral vessel and HARV- high aspect rotating vessel) are composed by a rotating 3-D chamber in which cells remain suspended in near free-fall, simulating microgravity conditions. These low shear stress bioreactors can provide a well mixed environment for cell growth as well as efficient gas transfer through a silicon membrane. Rotary cell culture systems have been used for expansion of cells as of human EBs, and for multiple ASC using scaffolds (Come et al. 2008; Gerecht-Nir et al. 2004; King and Miller 2007).

Amongst the main disadvantages associated to the use of RCC are the limited control of (i) aggregate size and (ii) nutrient/gas concentrations throughout the vessel. This may result in the formation of necrotic centers, leading to cell death inside the aggregates, and uncontrolled microenvironments, caused by the concentration gradients resulted from mass transfer limitations. In addition the working volume of these bioreactors is still low, thus limiting their use in larger scale bioprocesses.

Stirred Culture Vessels

Stirred culture vessels, including spinner vessels and stirred tank, are scalable and hydrodynamically well characterized systems with simple design and operation. The main characteristic of these bioreactors is the possibility of culturing cells in a dynamic stirred environment, overcoming the mass transport and gas transfer limitations of static and other bioreactor systems (Table 4.2). Here, the impeller design and ranges of stirring rate should be selected specifically for each case study since each stem cell type presents different sensitivities in terms of the shear stress. Another important feature of these bioreactors is the feasibility to perform non-destructive sampling thus enabling the continuous monitorization/characterization of the stem cell culture status/performance which is critical for process optimization (Fig. 4.3).

In particular, fully controlled stirred tank bioreactors provide an automated control of the environment, allowing the on-line monitoring and control of specific culture variables (temperature, pH, dissolved oxygen, nutrients) that can affect stem cell self-renewal and directed differentiation, ultimately improving culture outcome and ensuring reproducibility. These bioreactors are highly flexible as they can operate in different culture operation modes (batch, perfusion), can be adapted to different type of bioprocesses (stem cell expansion and/or differentiation) and can be accommodated to different 3-D culture strategies (cell aggregates, microcarriers, microencapsulated cells) (Table 4.2 and Fig. 4.3), presenting widespread potential

in stem cell bioengineering (Jing et al. 2010; Niebruegge et al. 2009). One of the main limitations of stirred culture vessels is the hydrodynamic stress promoted by stirring. Up to now, the minimal volume required to set up the experiments was very high (approximately 50 mL), which compromised the use of stirred bioreactors for high-throughput applications by demanding higher starting cell numbers and increasing the costs associated to optimization studies. Recently large efforts have been made towards the development of smaller scale systems (working volume 10–15 mL) and at least two options are available today including the ambr® systems (from TAP Biosystems) and the low volume spinner flasks (from HexaScreen).

Disposable Technology: Single-Use Bioreactors

The single-use bioreactor concept was introduced by the wave bioreactor bag (now from GE Healthcare) almost 15 years ago. Aiming at establishing larger scale suspension culture of stem cells, numerous disposable bioreactors have been developed: the BIOSTAT CultiBag from Sartorious-Stedim, Air-Wheel® Bioreactor Systems from PBS Biotech, PadReactor from ATMI, and the Mobius® CellReady Single Use Bioreactor from Merck Millipore are some examples. All these single use devices are mechanically agitated aiming at assuring efficient gas and mass transfer within the culture. Conveniently, all come as "single-use", presterilized bioreactors. Although successfully used in multiple biomanufacturing applications, the translation and feasibility of these platforms for hPSCs bioprocessing has not been reported so far.

4.3.4 Integrated Bioprocesses and Tools for hPSC Manufacturing

Optimal hPSC bioprocess should yield large cell quantities, not by embracing traditional scale-up principles (for example, by the use of industrial-scale bioreactors) but through process intensification and integration. Within this context, the establishment of platforms capable of integrating hPSC isolation/reprogramming, inoculation, expansion, differentiation, harvesting and purification would ultimately result in the scale-up of differentiated cells to relevant numbers to satisfy the clinical demands. During the last years, several bioprocesses that combine hPSC expansion and differentiation steps have been reported aiming at providing robust strategies for the scalable production of hPSC derivatives (reviewed in Serra et al. 2012). Another major challenge is the production of master/working cell banks of well-characterized cells in parallel to the manufacturing platform. Although important developments regarding integrated bioprocesses capable of guaranteeing efficient cell cryopreservation after large-scale expansion have recently been achieved (Nie et al. 2009; Serra et al. 2011), further research is necessary. Indeed, the establishment of fully integrated bioprocess for the expansion, differentiation, purification

and cryopreservation of stem cell derivatives will clearly support both autologous and allogenic stem cell therapies where it is often difficult to predict the recovery/availability of patients for transplantation.

From an engineering perspective, the development of a fully automated production platform requires the integration of novel technologies to monitor/control not only a set of process parameters (e.g. pH, pO_2, temperature) but also cell culture status over time including cell viability, phenotype and functionality. Significant benefits would derive from implementing sophisticated sensing/monitoring tools and devices within the manufacturing platform. The traceability, efficacy, safety and quality of the bioprocess would be highly improved, for sure, creating defined and robust GMP platforms to deliver safe and efficacious cell-based products.

4.4 Looking Ahead

The implementation of novel high-throughput methods allowing for a better characterization of cell genetic, epigenetic, proteomic and metabolic status and further understanding of cell biology is ultimately needed. The lack of available data in this field strongly compromises and limits the application of worldwide recognized tools for bioprocess description and prediction - mechanistic knowledge - that would be extremely useful for understanding how hPSCs respond to specific *stimuli* with the ultimate goal of predicting key molecular interactions that impact cell fate (Kirouac et al. 2010).

The development of novel 3D culture strategies and robust bioreactor-based systems is now, more than ever, bringing hPSCs closer to clinical/industrial applications. Recent advances in this field show that there is not an ideal hPSC-based bioprocess capable of embracing all type of therapies and applications. Nonetheless, the knowledge gained during the last years, including the impact of specific environmental factors on hPSC culture combined with the development of robust bioreactors, provides important insights for the implementation of more "universal" hPSC manufacturing platforms. Indeed, the complexity involved in the 3D cultivation of hPSC in a dynamic environment requires a multidisciplinary approach. By combining biology, immunology, engineering, physics, chemistry, and material sciences, stem cells-based products will be more accessible in the near future. Also important is the development of mathematical models and the integration of biostatistics tools capable of predicting the outcome of stem cell bioprocesses (e.g. yields of stem cell expansion/differentiation, cell purity, percentage of cell contaminants, etc.) as well as to provide insights into how the quality, purity and potency of cell-based products would ultimately impact on the efficacy of stem cell transplantation. These advances will for sure contribute to the implementation of robust manufacturing platforms and potentiate the development of novel cell therapies, fulfilling, at last, the high expectations posed by hPSCs.

Acknowledgments The authors would like to acknowledge the financial support received from the Portuguese Foundation for Science and Technology (PTDC/BIO/72755/2006) and from the European Commission (Cell Programming by Nanoscaled Devices, NMP4-CT-2004-500039; Clinigene Network of Excellence, LSHB-CT-2006-018933; HYPERLAB - high yield and performance stem cell lab, 223011).

References

Amit M, Chebath J, Margulets V, Laevsky I, Miropolsky Y, Shariki K, Peri M, Blais I, Slutsky G, Revel M, Itskovitz-Eldor J (2010) Suspension culture of undifferentiated human embryonic and induced pluripotent stem cells. Stem Cell Rev 6:248–259

Araki R, Uda M, Hoki Y, Sunayama M, Nakamura M, Ando S, Sugiura M, Ideno H, Shimada A, Nifuji A, Abe M (2013) Negligible immunogenicity of terminally differentiated cells derived from induced pluripotent or embryonic stem cells. Nature. doi:10.1038/nature11807

Ao A, Hao J, Hong CC (2011) Regenerative chemical biology: current challenges and future potential. Chem Biol 18:413–424

Ardehali R, Inlay MA, Ali SR, Tang C, Drukker M, Weissman IL (2011) Overexpression of BCL2 enhances survival of human embryonic stem cells during stress and obviates the requirement for serum factors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:3282–3287

Azarin SM, Palecek SP (2010) Development of scalable culture systems for human embryonic stem cells. Biochem Eng J 48:378

Bai H, Chen K, Gao YX, Arzigian M, Xie YL, Malcosky C, Yang YG, Wu WS, Wang ZZ (2012) Bcl-xL enhances single-cell survival and expansion of human embryonic stem cells without affecting self-renewal. Stem Cell Res 8:26–37

Bauwens CL, Peerani R, Niebruegge S, Woodhouse KA, Kumacheva E, Husain M, Zandstra PW (2008) Control of human embryonic stem cell colony and aggregate size heterogeneity influences differentiation trajectories. Stem Cells 26:2300–2310

Brandenberger R, Burger S, Campbell A, Fong T, Lapinskas E, Rowley JA (2012) Cell therapy bioprocessing: integrating process and product development for the next generation of biotherapeutics. BioProcess Int 10:30–37

Brignier AC, Gewirtz AM (2010) Embryonic and adult stem cell therapy. J Allergy Clin Immunol 125:S336–S344

Burdick JA, Vunjak-Novakovic G (2009) Engineered microenvironments for controlled stem cell differentiation. Tissue Eng Part A 15:205–219

Burdick JA, Watt FM (2011) High-throughput stem-cell niches. Nat Methods 8:915–916

Cameron CM, Hu WS, Kaufman DS (2006) Improved development of human embryonic stem cell-derived embryoid bodies by stirred vessel cultivation. Biotechnol Bioeng 94:938–948

Chayosumrit M, Tuch B, Sidhu K (2010) Alginate microcapsule for propagation and directed differentiation of hESCs to definitive endoderm. Biomaterials 31:505–514

Chen AK, Chen X, Choo AB, Reuveny S, Oh SK (2010) Expansion of human embryonic stem cells on cellulose microcarriers. Curr Protoc Stem Cell Biol. doi:10.1002/9780470151808.sc01c11s14, Chapter 1: Unit 1C 11

Chen AK, Chen X, Choo AB, Reuveny S, Oh SK (2011) Critical microcarrier properties affecting the expansion of undifferentiated human embryonic stem cells. Stem Cell Res 7:97–111

Cimetta E, Figallo E, Cannizzaro C, Elvassore N, Vunjak-Novakovic G (2009) Micro-bioreactor arrays for controlling cellular environments: design principles for human embryonic stem cell applications. Methods 47:81–89

Collin J, Lako M (2011) Concise review: putting a finger on stem cell biology: zinc finger nuclease-driven targeted genetic editing in human pluripotent stem cells. Stem Cells 29: 1021–1033

Come J, Nissan X, Aubry L, Tournois J, Girard M, Perrier AL, Peschanski M, Cailleret M (2008) Improvement of culture conditions of human embryoid bodies using a controlled perfused and dialyzed bioreactor system. Tissue Eng Part C Methods 14:289–298

Crook JM, Peura TT, Kravets L, Bosman AG, Buzzard JJ, Horne R, Hentze H, Dunn NR, Zweigerdt R, Chua F, Upshall A, Colman A (2007) The generation of six clinical-grade human embryonic stem cell lines. Cell Stem Cell 1:490–494

Cukierman E, Pankov R, Yamada KM (2002) Cell interactions with three-dimensional matrices. Curr Opin Cell Biol 14:633–639

Dang SM, Gerecht-Nir S, Chen J, Itskovitz-Eldor J, Zandstra PW (2004) Controlled, scalable embryonic stem cell differentiation culture. Stem Cells 22:275–282

Delcroix GJ, Schiller PC, Benoit JP, Montero-Menei CN (2010) Adult cell therapy for brain neuronal damages and the role of tissue engineering. Biomaterials 31:2105–2120

Discher DE, Mooney DJ, Zandstra PW (2009) Growth factors, matrices, and forces combine and control stem cells. Science 324:1673–1677

Ezashi T, Das P, Roberts RM (2005) Low O2 tensions and the prevention of differentiation of hES cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:4783–4788

Fernandes AM, Marinho PA, Sartore RC, Paulsen BS, Mariante RM, Castilho LR, Rehen SK (2009) Successful scale-up of human embryonic stem cell production in a stirred microcarrier culture system. Braz J Med Biol Res 42:515–522

Ferreira LS, Gerecht S, Fuller J, Shieh HF, Vunjak-Novakovic G, Langer R (2007) Bioactive hydrogel scaffolds for controllable vascular differentiation of human embryonic stem cells. Biomaterials 28:2706–2717

Fong WJ, Tan HL, Choo A, Oh SK (2005) Perfusion cultures of human embryonic stem cells. Bioprocess Biosyst Eng 27:381–387

Forsyth NR, Musio A, Vezzoni P, Simpson AH, Noble BS, McWhir J (2006) Physiologic oxygen enhances human embryonic stem cell clonal recovery and reduces chromosomal abnormalities. Cloning Stem Cells 8:16–23

Gareau T, Lara GG, Shepherd RD, Krawetz R, Rancourt DE, Rinker KD, Kallos MS (2012) Shear stress influences the pluripotency of murine embryonic stem cells in stirred suspension bioreactors. J Tissue Eng Regen Med. doi:10.1002/term.1518

Gerecht S, Burdick JA, Ferreira LS, Townsend SA, Langer R Vunjak-Novakovic G (2007) Hyaluronic acid hydrogel for controlled self-renewal and differentiation of human embryonic stem cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104:11298–11303

Gerecht-Nir S, Cohen S, Itskovitz-Eldor J (2004) Bioreactor cultivation enhances the efficiency of human embryoid body (hEB) formation and differentiation. Biotechnol Bioeng 86:493–502

Heng BC, Li J, Chen AK, Reuveny S, Cool SM, Birch WR, Oh SK (2012) Translating human embryonic stem cells from 2-dimensional to 3- dimensional cultures in a defined medium on laminin- and vitronectin-coated surfaces. Stem Cells Dev 21(10):1701–1715

Hentze H, Graichen R, Colman A (2007) Cell therapy and the safety of embryonic stem cell-derived grafts. Trends Biotechnol 25:24–32

Hernandez RM, Orive G, Murua A, Pedraz JL (2010) Microcapsules and microcarriers for in situ cell delivery. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 62:711–730

Jensen J, Hyllner J, Bjorquist P (2009) Human embryonic stem cell technologies and drug discovery. J Cell Physiol 219:513–519

Jin S, Yao H, Weber JL, Melkoumian ZK, Ye K (2012) A synthetic, xeno-free peptide surface for expansion and directed differentiation of human induced pluripotent stem cells. PLoS One 7(11):e50880

Jing D, Parikh A, Canty JM Jr, Tzanakakis ES (2008) Stem cells for heart cell therapies. Tissue Eng Part B Rev 14:393–406

Jing D, Parikh A, Tzanakakis ES (2010) Cardiac cell generation from encapsulated embryonic stem cells in static and scalable culture systems. Cell Transplant 19:1397–1412

Kehoe DE, Jing D, Lock LT, Tzanakakis EM (2009) Scalable stirred-suspension bioreactor culture of human pluripotent stem cells. Tissue Eng Part A 16:405–421

King JA, Miller WM (2007) Bioreactor development for stem cell expansion and controlled differentiation. Curr Opin Chem Biol 11:394–398
Kirouac DC, Ito C, Csaszar E, Roch A, Yu M, Sykes EA, Bader GD, Zandstra PW (2010) Dynamic interaction networks in a hierarchically organized tissue. Mol Syst Biol 6:417
Kolhar P, Kotamraju VR, Hikita ST, Clegg DO, Ruoslahti E (2010) Synthetic surfaces for human embryonic stem cell culture. J Biotechnol 146:143–146
Krawetz R, Taiani JT, Liu S, Meng G, Li X, Kallos MS, Rancourt D (2010) Large-scale expansion of pluripotent human embryonic stem cells in stirred suspension bioreactors. Tissue Eng Part C Methods 16:573–582
Lamba DA, McUsic A, Hirata RK, Wang PR, Russell D, Reh TA (2010) Generation, purification and transplantation of photoreceptors derived from human induced pluripotent stem cells. PLoS One 5:e8763
Lecina M, Ting S, Choo A, Reuveny S, Oh S (2010) Scalable platform for human embryonic stem cell differentiation to cardiomyocytes in suspended microcarrier cultures. Tissue Eng Part C Methods 16:1609–1619
Lee WY, Kim J, Gil CH, Lee JH, Song H, Kim JH, Chung HM (2011) Maintenance of human pluripotent stem cells using 4SP-hFGF2-secreting STO cells. Stem Cell Res 7:210–218
Leung HW, Chen A, Choo AB, Reuveny S, Oh SK (2011) Agitation can induce differentiation of human pluripotent stem cells in microcarrier cultures. Tissue Eng Part C Methods 17:165–172
Li Y, Gautam A, Yang J, Qiu L, Melkoumian Z, Weber J, Telukuntla L, Srivastava R, Whiteley E, Brandenberger R (2013) Differentiation of oligodendrocyte progenitor cells from human embryonic stem cells on vitronectin-derived synthetic peptide acrylate surface. Stem Cells Dev 22(10):1497–1505
Lim DY, Ng YH, Lee J, Mueller M, Choo AB, Wong VV (2011) Cytotoxic antibody fragments for eliminating undifferentiated human embryonic stem cells. J Biotechnol 153:77–85
Lindvall O, Kokaia Z, Martinez-Serrano A (2004) Stem cell therapy for human neurodegenerative disorders – how to make it work. Nat Med 10(Suppl):S42–S50
Lock LT, Tzanakakis ES (2007) Stem/progenitor cell sources of insulin-producing cells for the treatment of diabetes. Tissue Eng 13:1399–1412
Lock LT, Tzanakakis ES (2009) Expansion and differentiation of human embryonic stem cells to endoderm progeny in a microcarrier stirred-suspension culture. Tissue Eng Part A 15: 2051–2063
Lui KO, Waldmann H, Fairchild PJ (2009) Embryonic stem cells: overcoming the immunological barriers to cell replacement therapy. Curr Stem Cell Res Ther 4:70–80
Lukashev ME, Werb Z (1998) ECM signalling: orchestrating cell behaviour and misbehaviour. Trends Cell Biol 8:437–441
Lund AW, Yener B, Stegemann JP, Plopper GE (2009) The natural and engineered 3D microenvironment as a regulatory cue during stem cell fate determination. Tissue Eng Part B Rev 15:371–380
Maia J, Santos T, Aday S, Agasse F, Cortes L, Malva JO, Bernardino L, Ferreira L (2011) Controlling the neuronal differentiation of stem cells by the intracellular delivery of retinoic acid-loaded nanoparticles. ACS Nano 5:97–106
Melkoumian Z, Weber JL, Weber DM, Fadeev AG, Zhou Y, Dolley-Sonneville P, Yang J, Qiu L, Priest CA, Shogbon C, Martin AW, Nelson J, West P, Beltzer JP, Pal S, Brandenberger R (2010) Synthetic peptide-acrylate surfaces for long-term self-renewal and cardiomyocyte differentiation of human embryonic stem cells. Nat Biotechnol 28:606–610
Millman JR, Tan JH, Colton CK (2009) The effects of low oxygen on self-renewal and differentiation of embryonic stem cells. Curr Opin Organ Transplant 14:694–700
Mohamet L, Lea ML, Ward CM (2010) Abrogation of E-cadherin-mediated cellular aggregation allows proliferation of pluripotent mouse embryonic stem cells in shake flask bioreactors. PLoS One 5:e12921
Murua A, Portero A, Orive G, Hernandez RM, de Castro M, Pedraz JL (2008) Cell microencapsulation technology: towards clinical application. J Control Release 132:76–83

Nie Y, Bergendahl V, Hei DJ, Jones JM, Palecek SP (2009) Scalable culture and cryopreservation of human embryonic stem cells on microcarriers. Biotechnol Prog 25:20–31

Niebruegge S, Bauwens CL, Peerani R, Thavandiran N, Masse S, Sevaptisidis E, Nanthakumar K, Woodhouse K, Husain M, Kumacheva E, Zandstra PW (2009) Generation of human embryonic stem cell-derived mesoderm and cardiac cells using size-specified aggregates in an oxygen-controlled bioreactor. Biotechnol Bioeng 102:493–507

Oh SK, Chen AK, Mok Y, Chen X, Lim UM, Chin A, Choo AB, Reuveny S (2009) Long-term microcarrier suspension cultures of human embryonic stem cells. Stem Cell Res 2:219–230

Olmer R, Haase A, Merkert S, Cui W, Palecek J, Ran C, Kirschning A, Scheper T, Glage S, Miller K, Curnow EC, Hayes ES, Martin U (2010) Long term expansion of undifferentiated human iPS and ES cells in suspension culture using a defined medium. Stem Cell Res 5:51–64

Pampaloni F, Reynaud EG, Stelzer EH (2007) The third dimension bridges the gap between cell culture and live tissue. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 8:839–845

Phillips BW, Horne R, Lay TS, Rust WL, Teck TT, Crook JM (2008) Attachment and growth of human embryonic stem cells on microcarriers. J Biotechnol 138:24–32

Placzek MR, Chung IM, Macedo HM, Ismail S, Mortera Blanco T, Lim M, Cha JM, Fauzi I, Kang Y, Yeo DC, Ma CY, Polak JM, Panoskaltsis N, Mantalaris A (2009) Stem cell bioprocessing: fundamentals and principles. J R Soc Interface 6:209–232

Powers DE, Millman JR, Bonner-Weir S, Rappel MJ, Colton CK (2010) Accurate control of oxygen level in cells during culture on silicone rubber membranes with application to stem cell differentiation. Biotechnol Prog 26:805–818

Purpura KA, Aubin JE, Zandstra PW (2004) Sustained in vitro expansion of bone progenitors is cell density dependent. Stem Cells 22:39–50

Ramos-Mejia V, Fernandez AF, Ayllon V, Real PJ, Bueno C, Anderson P, Martin F, Fraga MF, Menendez P (2011) Maintenance of human embryonic stem cells in mesenchymal stem cell-conditioned media augments hematopoietic specification. Stem Cells Dev 21(9):1549–1558

Rodin S, Domogatskaya A, Strom S, Hansson EM, Chien KR, Inzunza J, Hovatta O, Tryggvason K (2010) Long-term self-renewal of human pluripotent stem cells on human recombinant laminin-511. Nat Biotechnol 28:611–615

Saha K, Mei Y, Reisterer CM, Pyzocha NK, Yang J, Muffat J, Davies MC, Alexander MR, Langer R, Anderson DG, Jaenisch R (2011) Surface-engineered substrates for improved human pluripotent stem cell culture under fully defined conditions. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:18714–18719

Schriebl K, Satianegara G, Hwang A, Tan HL, Fong WJ, Yang HH, Jungbauer A, Choo A (2012) Selective removal of undifferentiated human embryonic stem cells using magnetic activated cell sorting followed by a cytotoxic antibody. Tissue Eng Part A 18:899–909

Selvaraj V, Plane JM, Williams AJ, Deng W (2010) Switching cell fate: the remarkable rise of induced pluripotent stem cells and lineage reprogramming technologies. Trends Biotechnol 28:214–223

Serra M, Brito C, Sousa MF, Jensen J, Tostoes R, Clemente J, Strehl R, Hyllner J, Carrondo MJ, Alves PM (2010) Improving expansion of pluripotent human embryonic stem cells in perfused bioreactors through oxygen control. J Biotechnol 148:208–215

Serra M, Brito C, Correia C, Alves PM (2012) Process engineering human pluripotent stem cells for clinical applications. Trends Biotechnol 30(6):350–359

Serra M, Correia C, Malpique R, Brito C, Jensen J, Bjorquist P, Carrondo MJ, Alves PM (2011) Microencapsulation technology: a powerful tool for integrating expansion and cryopreservation of human embryonic stem cells. PLoS One 6:e23212

Singh H, Mok P, Balakrishnan T, Rahmat SN, Zweigerdt R (2010) Up-scaling single cell-inoculated suspension culture of human embryonic stem cells. Stem Cell Res 4:165–179

Siti-Ismail N, Bishop AE, Polak JM, Mantalaris A (2008) The benefit of human embryonic stem cell encapsulation for prolonged feeder-free maintenance. Biomaterials 29:3946–3952

Storm MP, Orchard CB, Bone HK, Chaudhuri JB, Welham MJ (2010) Three-dimensional culture systems for the expansion of pluripotent embryonic stem cells. Biotechnol Bioeng 107: 683–695

Tang C, Lee AS, Volkmer JP, Sahoo D, Nag D, Mosley AR, Inlay MA, Ardehali R, Chavez SL, Pera RR, Behr B, Wu JC, Weissman IL, Drukker M (2011) An antibody against SSEA-5 glycan on human pluripotent stem cells enables removal of teratoma-forming cells. Nat Biotechnol 29:829–834

Taylor CJ, Bolton EM, Pocock S, Sharples LD, Pedersen RA, Bradley JA (2005) Banking on human embryonic stem cells: estimating the number of donor cell lines needed for HLA matching. Lancet 366:2019–2025

Tsai RY, McKay RD (2000) Cell contact regulates fate choice by cortical stem cells. J Neurosci 20:3725–3735

Tzanakakis ES, Hess DJ, Sielaff TD, Hu WS (2000) Extracorporeal tissue engineered liver-assist devices. Annu Rev Biomed Eng 2:607–632

Unger C, Skottman H, Blomberg P, Dilber MS, Hovatta O (2008) Good manufacturing practice and clinical-grade human embryonic stem cell lines. Hum Mol Genet 17:R48–R53

Veraitch FS, Scott R, Wong JW, Lye GJ, Mason C (2008) The impact of manual processing on the expansion and directed differentiation of embryonic stem cells. Biotechnol Bioeng 99:1216–1229

Villa-Diaz LG, Nandivada H, Ding J, Nogueira-de-Souza NC, Krebsbach PH, O'Shea KS, Lahann J, Smith GD (2010) Synthetic polymer coatings for long-term growth of human embryonic stem cells. Nat Biotechnol 28:581–583

Yirme G, Amit M, Laevsky I, Osenberg S, Itskovitz-Eldor J (2008) Establishing a dynamic process for the formation, propagation, and differentiation of human embryoid bodies. Stem Cells Dev 17:1227–1241

Zhao F, Grayson WL, Ma T, Irsigler A (2009) Perfusion affects the tissue developmental patterns of human mesenchymal stem cells in 3D scaffolds. J Cell Physiol 219:421–429

Zhao T, Zhang ZN, Rong Z, Xu Y (2011) Immunogenicity of induced pluripotent stem cells. Nature 474:212–215

Zweigerdt R, Olmer R, Singh H, Haverich A, Martin U (2011) Scalable expansion of human pluripotent stem cells in suspension culture. Nat Protoc 6:689–700

Chapter 5
Blood Cell Bioprocessing: The Haematopoietic System and Current Status of *In-Vitro* Production of Red Blood Cells

Susan M. Browne and Mohamed Al-Rubeai

Abstract Haematopoietic stem cells and a number of cell types derived from them are routinely transfused clinically. Haematopoietic lineage cells used for transfusion are predominantly red cells, followed by platelets and granulocytes. However, although blood transfusion has revolutionized modern medicine over the past century, many issues still exist with supply, particularly in developing nations, and adverse reactions and infections are still commonplace raising concerns for both donor and recipient safety. The production of hematopoietic lineage cells *in vitro* would assuage safety concerns and maintain supply. It would also resolve issues such as blood cell shelf-life and ageing by providing homogenous populations of cells; allow for production of universal/rare blood types on demand; and could provide a therapeutic solution in the case of conditions such as haemoglobinopathies. Theoretically it is possible to generate functional, mature cells of all hematopoietic lineages *in vitro*, however, the sheer volumes of blood cells required to meet current transfusion demand (or even demand for rare blood types), and production-associated costs means that, at present, this process is not feasible for routine treatment. Here we review the current state of *in vitro* blood cell production with particular emphasis on the generation of red blood cells/erythrocytes; and explore the technical issues associated with medium-to-large scale manufacturing of these cells, and the likelihood of commercial production and routine clinical use in the future.

Keywords Blood transfusion • Haematopoietic stem cells • *In-vitro* erythropoiesis • Stem cell therapeutics

S.M. Browne
School of Chemical and Bioprocess Engineering,
and Conway Institute for Biomedical and Biomolecular Research,
University College Dublin, Belfield, Dublin 4, Ireland

M. Al-Rubeai (✉)
School of Chemical and Bioprocess Engineering,
University College Dublin, Belfield, Dublin 4, Ireland
e-mail: m.al-rubeai@ucd.ie

M. Al-Rubeai, M. Naciri (eds.), *Stem Cells and Cell Therapy*, Cell Engineering 8,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-7196-3_5,

5.1 Introduction

The first successful human-human blood transfusion was carried out in 1818 by James Blundell, however, red blood cell donation and transfusion did not became routine until the early twentieth century when the discovery of ABO blood groups and the use of anticoagulants increased safety and allowed blood to be collected, stored and distributed in an organised way. Around the same time the efficacy of platelet transfusion to reduce the risk of bleeding in thrombocytopenic patients was also recognised, however, at this point platelet numbers were increased through the administration of large amounts of whole blood and it wasn't until the 1970s that transfusion of platelet concentrates became routine.

The Cook County Hospital in Chicago last year celebrated the 75th anniversary of the opening of the first hospital blood bank and in the relatively short period since then the field of blood transfusion has grown to the extent that it is now estimated some 92 million whole blood donations are collected throughout the world annually (World Health Organization 2011). In addition to red blood cells, platelets are routinely transfused for the treatment of thrombocytopenia and platelet dysfunction, and, though demand has traditionally been low due to problems collecting sufficient quantities and maintaining functionality, there has been a resurgence of interest in granulocyte transfusion for the treatment of neutropenia. Platelets for transfusion are derived either through the separation of whole blood units into components – concentrated red cells, platelets, fresh-frozen plasma, and cryoprecipitate – with concentrates from four to five donors combined to generate a platelet transfusion unit; or a single unit can be isolated per donor via platelet aphaeresis (a safer method as it limits the likelihood of recipient infection). Granulocytes can also be collected by aphaeresis; however, the administration of steroids/growth factors is generally required to mobilize sufficient quantities to the peripheral circulation and thus granulocyte donation and transfusion remains limited.

The development of organised systems for blood component donation and transfusion has revolutionised health care, however, issues still exist relating to supply and safety, particularly in developing nations. Of the 92 million annual whole blood donations, approximately half are collected in high-income countries even though these countries only represent about 15 % of the global population. In its most recent worldwide survey of blood donation and utilization patterns the World Health Organization proposed that somewhere between 30 and 50 donations per 1,000 population per year would to be sufficient to maintain an adequate national blood supply. However, while in high-income countries the median whole-blood donation rate is roughly 36 donations/1,000 population, in middle-income nations it is 12 donations/1,000 population and for low income nations only 3 donations/1,000 population; and half of all countries surveyed report less than 10 donations/1,000 population (Fig. 5.1) (World Health Organization 2011). Even in high-income nations localised shortages are often reported (US Department of Health and Human Services 2011) and even some EU member states report sizeable shortages year-on-year (European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare 2009). It is also believed that the ageing demographic of many high-income countries will lead

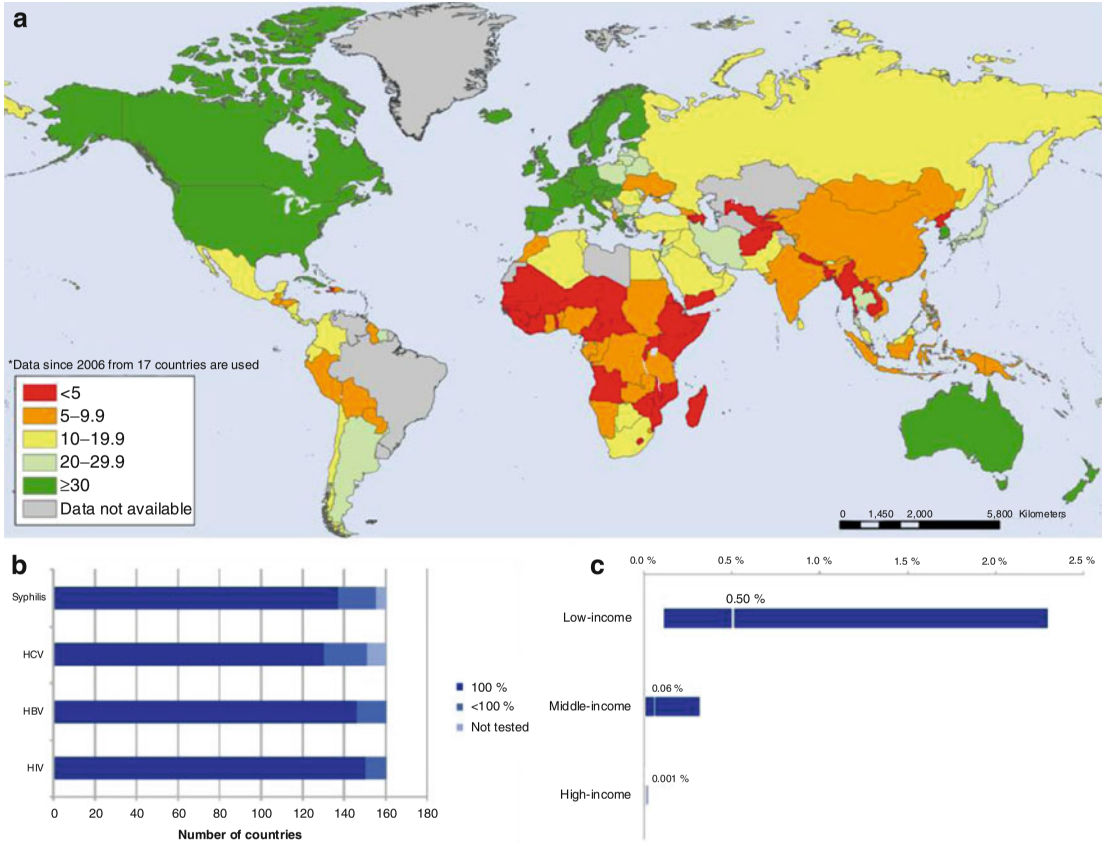


Fig. 5.1 Worldwide blood donation levels and blood product screening. (**a**) Blood donation levels per 1,000 population. (**b**) Level of laboratory screening for transfusion transmissible infections. (**c**) Prevalence of HIV in donated blood by country income group; numbers shown indicate median value while *left* and *right bars* show lower and upper quartiles respectively (Adapted from WHO Global Database on Blood Safety (2011))

to shortages of supply as the size of the donor base falls and the proportion of the population over the age of 65 (by far the largest recipient group in high-income countries) expands.

In addition to supply issues there are still safety problems associated with both blood donation and transfusion – primary among these are sepsis, haemolysis, allergic reactions and anaphylaxis, TRALI (transfusion related acute lung injury), TACO (Transfusion associated circulatory overload) and transfusion associated HCV in blood component recipients; and loss of consciousness, nerve irritation, and induction of anaemia in donors. Although the WHO recommends that all blood components should be screened for evidence of infection prior to release, and states that screening should be mandatory for HIV, Hepatitis B, Hepatitis C, and syphilis, almost a quarter of countries (39 out of 164) surveyed stated that blood donations are not routinely tested for TTIs (transfusion transmissible infections) (Fig. 5.1), with irregular supply of test kits cited as one of the most common obstacles to testing (World Health Organization 2011). Low income countries have the lowest likelihood of testing in spite of the highest prevalence of TTIs and the highest percentage of infections in those units that are tested. In addition to these challenges, blood centres throughout the world are also struggling to develop guidelines to deal with new and emerging diseases such as variant CJD or as yet unidentified threats.

Another safety issue is the age/storage duration of transfused blood cells – red cells undergo biochemical changes with time in storage such as loss of ATP and 2,3-DPG and suffer membrane damage, thus the cut-off for storage is 42 days; platelets and granulocytes meanwhile have very short storage times and must be used as soon as possible (platelets have a maximum storage time of 5 days and granulocytes have a maximum storage of 2 days) as functionality is quickly lost. Platelets also have an increased likelihood of bacterial contamination due to their storage at 22 °C.

A major issue is that blood cells are not produced for market like other commodities – their supply relies on the altruism of donors, and they are also highly heterogeneous with respect to blood group antigens, donor age, infection status, and storage time. With this in mind many are looking towards *in-vitro* manufacturing of blood cells to achieve a reliable and well characterised blood supply. In this chapter we will summarise the achievements to date in the field of *in-vitro* blood cell production and examine the challenges to be overcome if this system is to become a routine, large-scale alternative to donor blood cell collection. The ultimate aim is to achieve the routine production of safe, matched, well characterised, pathogen-free blood products in sufficient amounts to maintain a constant supply, all at a realistic cost. We have reached the stage where it is technically possible to generate all types of hematopoietic cells *in-vitro* from hematopoietic stem cells (derived from various sources), although, how far we are from reaching the point where it is possible to generate these cells in sufficient quantities to meet market demands at acceptable costs is debatable. Here we summarise research to date on the *in-vitro* production of cells of hematopoietic lineages, and discuss some of the challenges associated with the transfer of this technology from the lab towards large scale production at sufficient levels to supply clinical demand.

5.2 The Haematopoietic System and Haematopoiesis

The hematopoietic system comprises all blood cells and blood forming tissues. In the average human adult this consists of between 4.5 and 5 l of blood, approximately 7 % of body weight, and of bone marrow, the major site of blood cell production in the adult, which makes up a further 4.5 % body weight (Stiene-Martin et al. 1998). The blood is made up of the various blood cells (red (erythrocytes) and white (leukocytes) blood cells) and platelets (~45 % total volume) suspended in liquid plasma (~55 % total volume) and has a range of functions in the body including regulation of temperature, pH and osmolarity, nutrient and hormone transport and waste removal, gas exchange, coagulation, and the various specific and non-specific immune functions. RBCs (red blood cells) compose by far the largest fraction of blood cells, and distribute oxygen throughout the body; platelets (cell fragments that are sloughed from large megakaryocyte cells), although not technically cells, represent the second largest fraction, and are responsible for clotting; while WBCs (white blood cells) can be divided into monocytes/macrophages which phagocytose pathogens and dead/apoptotic cells; granulocytes – granular cells responsible for non-specific immunity against pathogens; and lymphocytes – specific immune cells involved in antigen presentation, and antibody-mediated immune responses. See Table 5.1 for a list of blood components and corresponding functions (although volumes for leukocytes are given per L of peripheral blood, they are mostly situated/active within the various other tissues, and thus these figures may not represent their full quotient). The bone marrow is encased in the endosteum (a membrane lining the marrow cavity), and contains vessels and nerves, hematopoietic cells at progressive stages of differentiation, stromal cells and an extracellular matrix (ECM) made up of fibronectin, collagen, and various proteoglycans all arranged in a highly organized 3-D structure.

The hematopoietic system is in constant turnover and is maintained throughout the lifetime of an organism by the generation of new blood cells from hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs) – primitive, undifferentiated, multipotent cells whose function is divided between either self-renewal, or expansion and differentiation into the mature blood lineages. Vertebrate haematopoiesis occurs in two successive and overlapping waves – primitive and definitive – which differ in anatomic sites and in the types of cells produced. Initially during fetal development primitive haematopoiesis occurs in the extra-embryonic yolk-sac blood islands generating primitive erythroblasts and macrophages, allowing early oxygen delivery and protection from pathogens in the embryo. Definitive haematopoiesis then proceeds in the yolk-sac and foetal liver to produce a transient population of erythroid-myeloid progenitors (EMPs), and in the AGM (aorta-gonad-mesonephros) region of the embryo producing HSCs from the hemogenic endothelium (Sood and Liu 2012; Baron et al. 2012). HSCs then move to the fetal liver, followed by the fetal spleen and eventually the bone marrow once this is sufficiently developed to support haematopoiesis. The pool of HSCs that is generated in the hemogenic endothelium during embryogenesis is sufficient to reconstitute the haematopoietic system throughout the lifetime of the organism.

Table 5.1 Blood components

Component		Composition	Function	Volume
Plasma		≥90 % water & dissolved proteins e.g. Albumin; globulins; fibrinogen	Carries glucose, nutrients, hormones, growth factors, electrolytes, clotting factors etc. Maintains pH, osmolarity.	Approx. 55 % of blood volume 2.3–2.8 L in average adult
Erythrocytes		Biconcave disc approx. 7 μm High haemoglobin content Lacking nuclei and organelles	Transportation of O_2	5×10^{12} cells/L
Monocyte/ macrophages		Contain lysosomal enzymes Mononuclear cells 12–22 μm	Phagocytosis of microorganisms; foreign bodies; apoptotic cells; erythroid nuclei Antigen presentation	4×10^{8} cells/L
Megakaryocytes/ platelets		Megakaryocytes are large cells with multi-lobed polyploid nuclei Develop long, cytoplasmic processes that fragment into platelets	Platelet production Clotting	3×10^{11} platelets/L
Granulocytes	Neutrophils	Distinct granules in cytoplasm which contain enzymes such as peroxidases and proteases Polymorphonuclear-multi-lobed, segmented nuclei 10–15 μm	Phagocytosis of bacteria and fungi	5×10^{9} cells/L
	Eosinphils		Destroys larger parasites and modulates allergic inflammatory responses	2×10^{8} cells/L
	Basophils		Releases histamine in certain immune reactions	$2–5 \times 10^{7}$ cells/L
Lymphocytes	T-Cells	No obvious granules in cytoplasm Mononuclear – nucleus may vary in shape, but is a single mass 6–8 μm	Kill virus-infected cells and regulate activities of other leukocytes	1×10^{9} cells/L
	B-Cells		Produces antibodies	2×10^{9} cells/L
	NK cells		Kill virus-infected cells and some tumour cells	1×10^{8} cells/L

After birth haematopoiesis occurs primarily in the bone marrow – occurring throughout the skeleton, including the long-bones, during childhood; and then decreasing in the number of sites with maturity so that in adults it is mainly confined to the sternum, cranium, ribs, vertebrae, pelvis, and just the proximal regions of the long bones; although extramedullary haematopoiesis can take place in the spleen, liver and lymph tissues in times of hematopoietic stress (O'Malley 2007).

HSCs were the first identified stem cell (a primitive cell capable of self-renewal and multi-lineage differentiation) (Till and McCulloch 1961) and remain the best

characterized to date. As well as self-renewal the HSC is multipotent and generates all cell types of hematopoietic lineage. The decision between self-renewal and differentiation of HSCs into the various blood cells is regulated by cues from their surrounding microenvironment, or "niche".

The balance between self-renewal and differentiation is vital – sufficient self-renewal is required to maintain an infinite supply of HSCs for reconstitution throughout life, and adequate levels of blood cells (more than 10^{11} cells/day in the average adult) need to be produced to prevent cytopenia, while at the same time regulating proliferation to prevent overproduction – as is the case with leukemia or polycythemia. In addition, different hematopoietic cell types have different rates of turnover in the body, so a complex regulatory system is required.

The concept of the HSC niche, first proposed by Schofield in 1978, hypothesizes that the self-renewing stem cell is associated with a cohort of cells (the niche) that prevent its maturation, while differentiation is triggered in its progeny if they cannot occupy this same niche (Schofield 1978). Although the HSC niche has been extensively studied its precise composition is still open to debate. It is generally believed that alternate niche conditions maintain HSCs in either a quiescent/G0 state or an active proliferating state. Thus, an adequate pool of primitive cells is maintained, while a constant supply of cells is provided for reconstitution. Two main "niches" have been proposed – an osteoblastic/endosteal niche near the trabecular bone surface, where quiescent HSCs have been shown to localize, and a sinusoidal/endothelial niche near the vascular interface which maintains active HSCs – however, consensus has not been reached as to whether these sites represent two distinct niches, two overlapping niches, or whether the HSCs represented in each are actually discrete stem cell sub-types (Wang and Wagers 2011) (Fig. 5.2).

Evidence of an osteoblastic niche was provided by studies which showed that HSCs in the bone marrow were localized in close proximity to osteoblasts at the endosteum and that a correlation existed between the number of quiescent HSCs and the number of osteoblasts. In addition, osteoblasts are one of the main sources of CXCL12 (chemokine stromal-derived factor-1), which plays an important role in HSC homing, and binds to the CXCR4 and CXCR7 receptors on HSCs, and physiological hypoxia in the osteoblastic/endosteal environment has been shown to both increase CXCL12 expression and to be involved in maintaining self-renewal of HSCs (Shiozawa and Taichman 2012).

The profile of the proposed vascular niche still remains controversial; however vascular endothelial cells have also been shown to express CXCL12, and oxidative stress (typical of the higher oxygen tension at the vascular sinusoids) has been shown to trigger an exit of quiescent HSCs from dormancy supporting the notion of separate quiescent and active niches (Shiozawa and Taichman 2012).

Some interesting studies over the past few years have also shown effects of circadian rhythms on the HSCs and their niche. Noradrenalin secreted by sympathetic nerves in the bone marrow has been shown to inhibit CXCL12 expression, while the sympathetic nervous system has also been shown to inhibit osteoblast production, and increase osteoclast activity (Shiozawa and Taichman 2012).

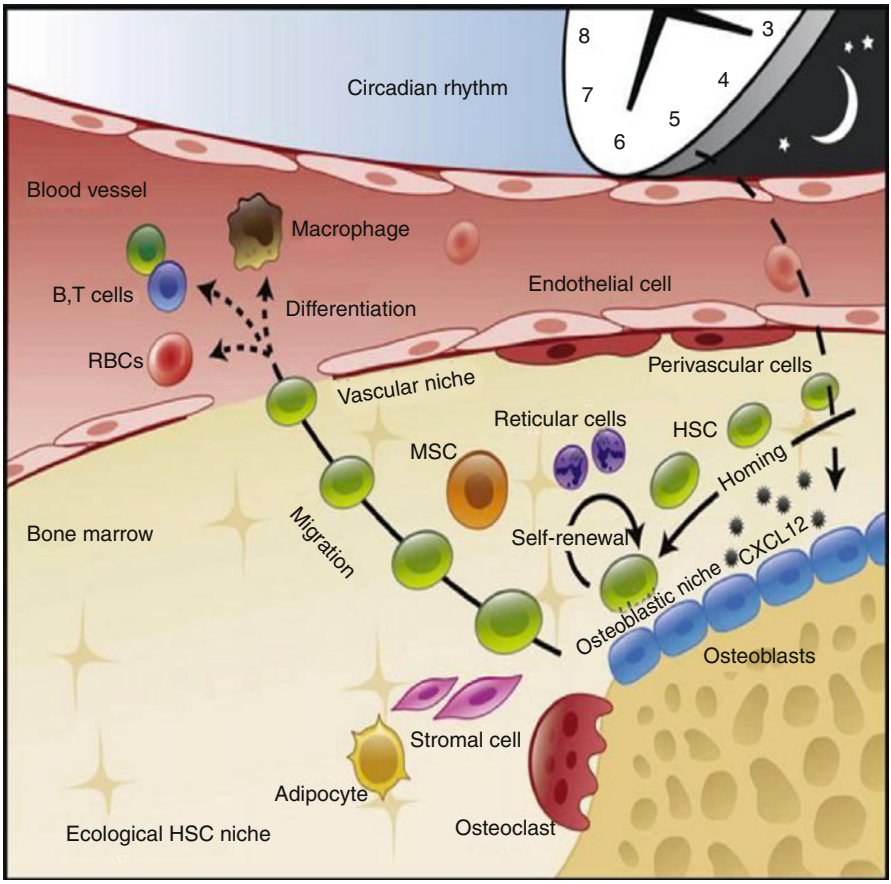


Fig. 5.2 Schematic of proposed stem cell niche environments (Shiozawa and Taichman 2012)

5.3 Expansion and Differentiation of Blood Cell Lineages

Once the HSC leaves the niche the formation of mature blood cells proceeds through a hierarchical format – LT-HSCs (long-term repopulating haematopoietic stem cells) give rise to ST-HSCs (short-term HSC), which give rise to multipotent progenitors (MPPs) which, although they can generate a number of different cell types, can no longer self-renew. MPPs then generate progenitor cells that are restricted to either lymphoid or myeloid differentiation – the common lymphoid progenitor (CLP), or the common myeloid progenitor (CMP) – which in turn generate megakaryocyte/erythrocyte progenitors (MEPs), or granulocyte/monocyte progenitors (GMPs) respectively (Fig. 5.3). Classification of these groups is based on temporal expression of particular combinations of cell surface antigens (Sigvardsson 2009).

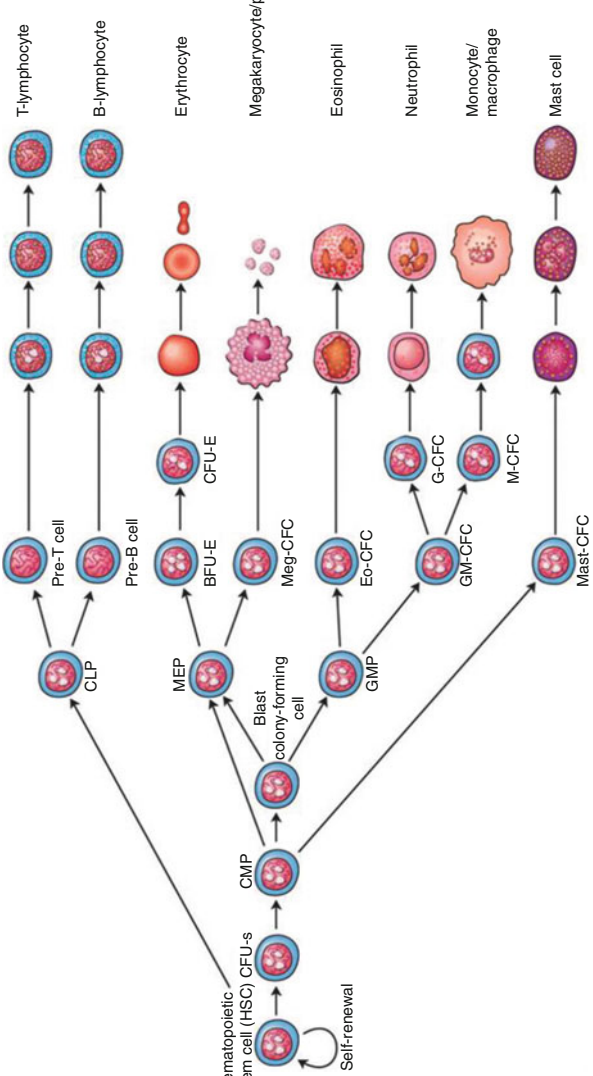


Fig. 5.3 Self-renewal and differentiation of haematopoietic stem cells and development of haematopoietic lineages into mature blood cells (Metcalf 2007)

Differentiation of stem/progenitor cells into the various mature blood cell types is regulated by HIMs (Hematopoietic Inductive Environments), with contributions made from stromal cells (fibroblasts, reticular cells, endothelial cells, adipocytes and osteoblasts), other hematopoietic cells, extracellular matrix proteins (including collagen, fibronectin and proteoglycans) cytokines (e.g. Interleukins, Thrombopoietin and Stem Cell Factor), and physiological factors such as O_2 gradients and pH.

5.3.1 Erythrocyte/RBC Development

From the MEP stage erythroid development passes through the progenitor stages of slowly dividing BFU-E (Blast Forming Unit-Erythroid) and rapidly dividing CFU-E (Colony Forming Unit-Erythroid); followed by maturation through various erythroid precursors – pro-erythroblasts, basophilic erythroblasts, polychromatic erythroblasts, and orthochromatic erythroblasts; orthochromatic erythroblasts then extrude their nuclei to form reticulocytes, which develop into mature erythrocytes (Fig. 5.4).

Many of the factors involved in supporting this developmental pathway were deciphered throughout the 1990s in studies using genetically modified mouse models and human ex-vivo erythroid cultures. Thus it was concluded that the early stages of culture are largely dependent on the cytokines Stem Cell Factor (SCF) (Dai et al. 1991) and Interleukin-3 (IL-3) (Papayannopoulou et al. 1993), and glucocorticoids, which maintain cells in an immature progenitor state to enable maximum proliferation (Muta et al. 1995; von Lindern et al. 1999). Erythropoietin (Epo), while not having a distinct effect on the progenitor stage on its own (Sui et al. 1996; Wu et al. 1997), can act in synergy with SCF in promoting proliferation (Muta et al. 1994; Panzenbock et al. 1998). Once cells reach the pro-erythroblast stage they are reliant on insulin and Epo (Muta et al. 1994), which enables erythroid differentiation through activation of the tyrosine kinase JAK2 and, in turn, the transcription factor STAT5, and prevents apoptosis through expression of the anti-apoptotic protein Bcl-X_L (Dolznig et al. 2002). As maturation proceeds cells become iron dependent, and adhesion to the extracellular matrix protein fibronectin has been shown to be important for terminal differentiation and enucleation (Hattangadi et al. 2011).

Throughout differentiation hemoglobin accumulates, chromatin condenses, cell size decreases and, finally, cellular organelles such as nuclei and mitochondria are packaged and extruded. This progression is regulated by growth factor-initiated signalling through various cell surface receptors leading to activation of specific transcription factors, chromatin modifying agents and micro-RNAs (Hattangadi et al. 2011).

During maturation in-vivo erythroblasts are located with macrophages in “erythroblastic islands”, where erythroblasts of varying levels of maturity are attached to a central macrophage through various adhesion molecules, with immature cells on

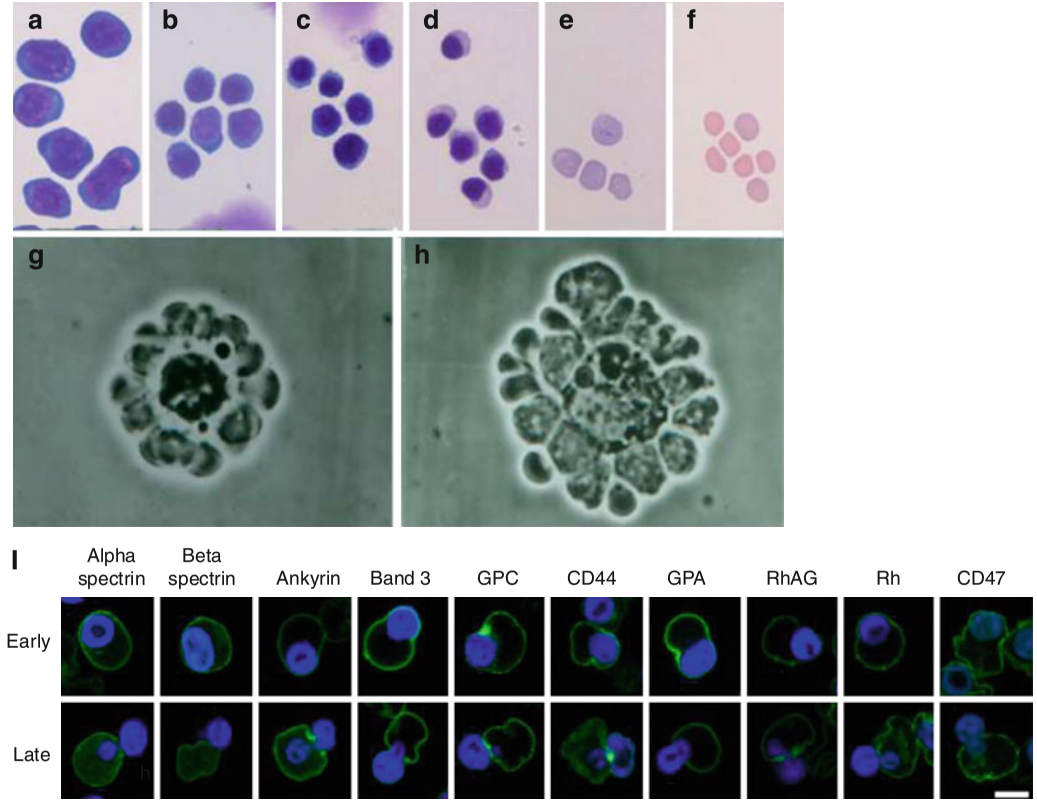


Fig. 5.4 (**a**–**f**) Wright-Giemsa stains of maturing erythroid cells, (**a**) pro-erythroblasts, (**b**) basophilic erythroblasts, (**c**) polychromatic erythroblasts, (**d**) orthochromatic erythroblasts, (**e**) reticulocytes, and (**f**) mature red blood cells. (**g**, **h**) Optical microscope pictures of erythroblastic islands (An and Mohandas 2011); (**i**) membrane sorting during enucleation – fluorescence microscopic images of cells undergoing early (*top row*) and late (*bottom row*) enucleation. Nuclei are stained with Hoechst and show in *blue* while surface proteins are stained with individual primary antibodies and detected with Alexa-488 conjugated secondary antibodies (Bell et al. 2013)

the periphery and cells of increasing maturity situated in advancing proximity to the central macrophage. After extrusion the nucleus is rapidly phagoctyosed and degraded by the macrophage. Although a direct involvement of macrophages in erythroid differentiation and maturation has not been conclusively proven, the close association of erythroblasts to macrophages during maturation, and the arrangement of the maturing cells with the least mature cells at the outermost edges and the most mature cells closest to the macrophage, has led many to suggest that macrophages somehow regulate the maturation process, possibly through the provision of iron (An and Mohandas 2011).

Although the main hypothesis surrounding the mechanism of erythroblast enucleation has been proposed as a form of asymmetric cytokinesis (Keerthivasan et al. 2012), the precise signalling processes involved are still unclear, although vesicle trafficking has been shown to be involved (Keerthivasan et al. 2010), as has cytoskeletal remodelling (Ubukawa et al. 2012), the event is likely the complex interaction of a number of factors (Ji et al. 2011). Enucleation involves the extrusion of plasma membrane enclosed nuclei, along with endoplasmic reticular proteins and several non-essential surface-proteins from the cell. All essential components required for the continued functioning of the nascent reticulocyte, and in turn the mature erythrocyte must be retained – these are mainly cytoskeletal and membrane proteins, along with some key cytoplasmic proteins and endocytic machinery (Bell et al. 2013). Excess surface proteins and protein complexes are sorted and discarded along with the nuclei (Fig. 5.4) (Bell et al. 2013). Extrusion of erythroblast nuclei (a process specific to mammals) and other cellular organelles leads to the formation of a pliable, deformable, non-replicating bi-concave erythrocyte – essentially a sac of haemoglobin the main purpose of which is to transport oxygen throughout the body.

Probably the most important aspect of erythroid differentiation and maturation is haemoglobin production. The haemoglobin molecule is a tetrameric structure consisting of four peptide chains each holding a heme molecule, containing an iron atom, at its centre (Fig. 5.5a). Globin-chain combinations vary with each stage of ontogeny, embryonic haemoglobin can have the following formats – $\xi_2\varepsilon_2$ (Gower I); $\alpha_2\varepsilon_2$ (Gower II), or $\xi_2\gamma_2$ (Portland); foetal chains are $\alpha_2\gamma_2$; while adult chains are $\alpha_2\beta_2$ (HbA1) or $\alpha_2\delta_2$ (HbA2 – a variant form) (Fig. 5.5b).

5.4 Sources of Hematopoietic Stem/Progenitor Cells

HSCs are characterised by their ability to reconstitute the hematopoietic system of deficient recipients following transplantation and are generally defined by the expression of the surface marker CD34 and the lack of CD38 and lineage specific markers, however, even within the $CD34^+$ population there is a large amount of heterogeneity, and different subsets with varying expansion and differentiation potential exist depending on the location from which they are isolated (Bender et al. 1994).

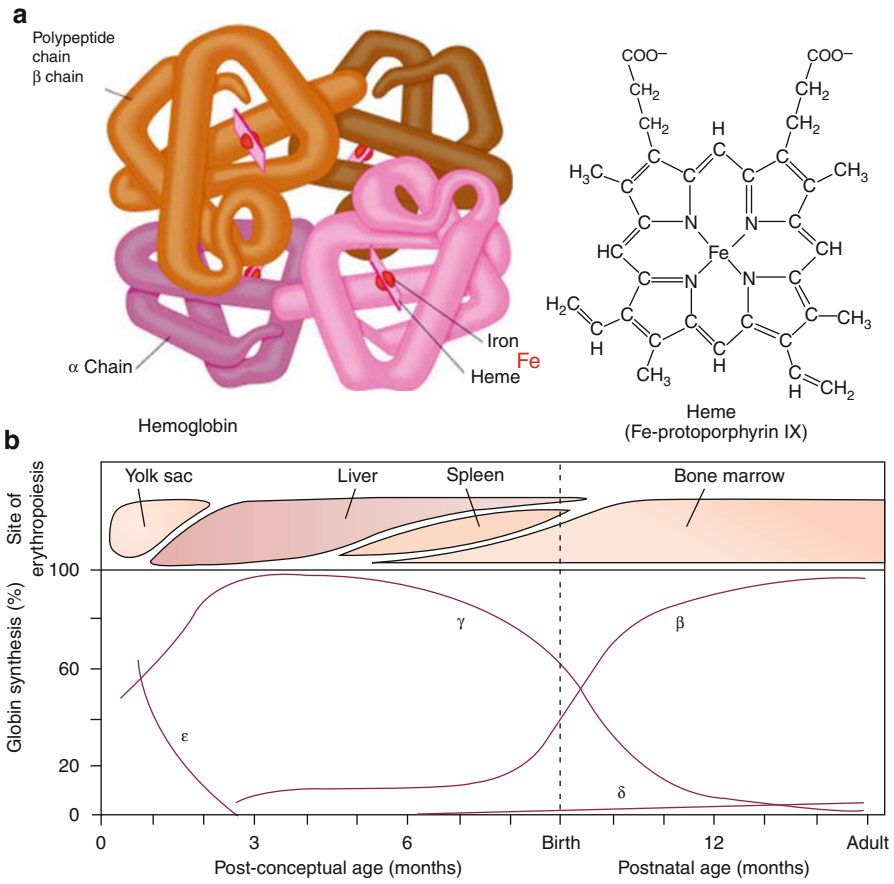


Fig. 5.5 Globin chain synthesis. (**a**) Schematic of the conformational structure of adult haemoglobin, showing two α-globin chains and two β-globin chains, each holding a central heme molecule, and also chemical structure. (**b**) Patterns of globin chain expression during human development (Higgs et al. 2012)

As well as bone marrow and foetal tissues (foetal blood, liver, bone marrow, pancreas, spleen and kidney, and also the extra-embryonic amniotic fluid and placenta), HSCs can be harvested from peripheral blood, mobilized peripheral blood (the administration of cytokines such as granulocyte colony-stimulating factor leads to increased mobilization of HSCs from the bone marrow to the peripheral blood), and umbilical cord blood (UCB) (Wang et al. 1996; Abdulrazzak et al. 2010).

The choice of HSC source for *in-vitro* production of blood cells is a trade-off between expansion potential in culture, functionality of the derived cells, and accessibility of the HSCs for differentiation (Table 5.2). Peripheral blood derived HSCs are highly accessible as they can be harvested from buffy coats (the white cell content of blood) which are separated from normal whole blood donations and, if not used for platelet retrieval, are discarded.

Table 5.2 Sources of hematopoietic stem cells

	Source	Accessibility	Yield/ unit	Advantages	Disadvantages	
Proliferative capacity	PB	High	-10^5–10^6 cells/ units PB	Readily available waste product Inexpensive Mature phenotype of derived cells	Relatively low proliferative capacity	Maturity of derived blood cells
	mPB	Moderate	-3×10^8 cells/ Donation (10–12 L apheresis vol.)	Higher stem cell yied than regular peripheral blood Mature phenotype of derived cells	Requires cytokine administration +/– chemotherapy Generally restricted to autologous stem cell retrieval for BM reconstitution	
	BM	Low	-10^{10} cells/1 L donation	Mature phenotype of derived cells	Difficult to obtain Generally restricted donation for BM reconstitution	
	UCB	High	-3×10^6 cells/100 ml unit	High number HSCs/TNC High proliferative capacity	Small unit size Immature phenotype of derived cells	
	Placenta	High	$-2 \times 1\ 0^7$ cells/unit	High number HSCs/TNC High proliferative capacity Significantly larger unit size than UCB	Inefficiency of current isolation protocols Immature phenotype of derived cells	
	Foetal tissues	Low	FBM -1×10^8/ foetus FL -1–1.5×10^8/ foetus	High number HSCs/TNC High proliferative capacity Lower immunogenicity	Ethical issues Small units size Immature phenotype of derived cells	
	ESC	Theoretically unlimited	N/A	Cell line – unlimited source	Ethical issues Immature phenotype of derived cells	
	iPSC	Theoretically unlimited	N/A	Cell line – unlimited source	Safety issues Immature phenotype of derived cells	

However, HSCs derived from peripheral blood have low proliferation potential compared to other sources and are present at a low frequency in peripheral blood. Although administration of cytokines to increase the frequency of HSCs in peripheral blood is possible, this is generally restricted to clinical transplantation for bone marrow reconstitution and has limited potential as a source for large scale *ex vivo* blood cell production. The same can be said for bone marrow, which has a high frequency of HSCs which have a high proliferation potential but, due to difficulties with accessibility and the low quantities available, this also represents an unlikely source material for medium to large-scale production.

UCB is relatively accessible, and although the unit size is small (approx. 100 ml), it has a high frequency of HSC per nucleated cell, and, like HSCs from foetal tissues

these have a high proliferation potential. In addition to the umbilical cord the placenta also contains HSCs, although, as with UCB the numbers of these decrease with gestational age; also retrieval is difficult with current protocols which typically yield about 1/10 the HSCs derived from UCB per unit (Robin et al. 2009). Foetal tissues, in spite of small tissue sizes, also have a high frequency of HSCs. However, access and acceptability are a sensitive issue as the harvesting of HSCs from aborted foetuses may be even more of an ethical challenge for many than the use of embryonic stem cells (see below).

Generally, more primitive cells have a higher proliferation potential. Foetal blood and liver HSCs proliferate to a greater extent than cord blood or bone marrow HSCs, which in turn proliferate to a greater extent than peripheral blood HSCs (Abdulrazzak et al. 2010). This is believed to be associated with their respective telomere lengths (Vaziri et al. 1994) – telomeres are nucleoprotein structures at the end of chromosomes which shorten with each cell division and maintain chromosome stability. In spite of this high proliferation potential though, these primitive cells also show a more primitive phenotype following differentiation e.g. erythrocytes generated ex-vivo from cord blood or foetal liver HSCs generate the embryonic (ζ and ε) and foetal (γ) globin chains as opposed to the adult β chains, with maturation, and show lower levels of enucleation (the final extrusion of nuclear content required to generate a functional RBC) (Neildez-Nguyen et al. 2002; Pourcher et al. 2011) (Fig. 5.5).

Due to the low number of cells/unit typically obtained for HSCs attempts have been made to increase the amount of starting material by maintaining self-renewal of primitive HSCs before differentiation into different blood cell types. Most of this work has been carried out in the context of increasing HSC numbers for bone marrow reconstitution in a clinical setting and includes recreation of the stem cell niche (Timmins and Nielsen 2011).

An alternative, and in theory unlimited, source material for differentiation into blood cells may be found in ESCs (embryonic stem cells) and iPSCs (induced pluripotent stem cells). ESCs are undifferentiated, pluripotent cell lines, derived from the inner cell mass of the blastocyst stage of the embryo (Fig. 5.6), which have a high telomerase activity, display normal karyotypes, and can be maintained

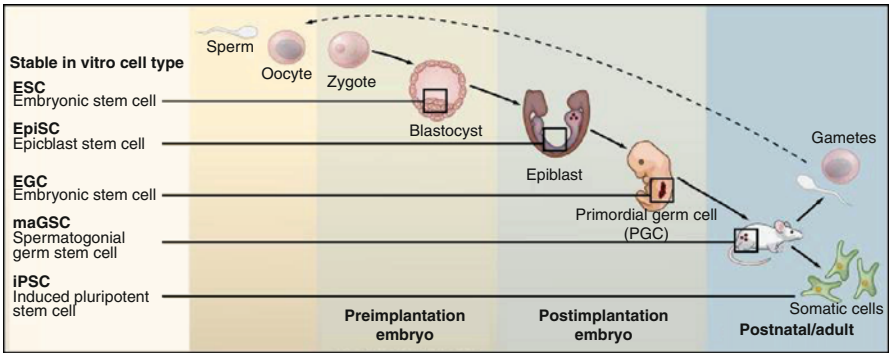


Fig. 5.6 Pluripotent stem cells (Hanna et al. 2010)

indefinitely in culture in an undifferentiated state when co-cultured with MEF (murine embryonic fibroblast) stromal lines (Thomson et al. 1998). Upon removal from these stromal layers they can differentiate into cells from all three germ layers – ectoderm, endoderm, and mesoderm – and theoretically into all cell types, with the mesoderm layer capable of differentiating into hematopoietic precursor cells; either through the formation of embryoid bodies, or by co-culture with tissue specific stromal lines e.g. when human ESCs are co-cultured on stromal lines derived from hematopoietic tissues (murine yolk sac and bone marrow) they give rise to $CD34^+$ haematopoietic precursors and differentiated cells expressing lineage-specific markers (GpA for Erythroid, CD15 on myeloid cells, and CD41 on mega-karyocytes) (Itskovitz-Eldor et al. 2000; Kaufman et al. 2001).

In somatic cells induction of pluripotency can be achieved through transfection with the transcription factors *oct4*, *klf4*, *sox2*, and *myc* (Takahashi et al. 2007) or *oct4*, *sox2*, *nanog*, and *lin28* (Yu et al. 2007). As with ESCs these iPSCs can also be maintained indefinitely in culture in an undifferentiated, pluripotent state followed by differentiation into hematopoietic cells (Fig. 5.6) (Lengerke et al. 2009). This allows the generation of autologous cells for transfusion/transplantation, removing the immune barriers that can be associated with ESC derived cells.

However, there are still many issues that need to be overcome with ESCs and iPSCs before they can become a credible starting material for blood cell production. First and foremost are the ethical issues associated with ESCs and the fact that ESC research is still not licenced in a number of countries; in this sense a more acceptable alternative to ESCs may be hiPSCs, although it has not yet been conclusively shown that ESCs and iPSCs are functionally identical and further research is needed in this area before iPSCs can be regarded as a definitive replacement for ESCs (Puri and Nagy 2012). Ex-vivo culture of ESCs and iPSCs is also much more expensive and complex than that of other HSC sources, in iPSCs reprogramming efficiency is low, and differentiation efficiencies are also low for both cell types.

Although they initially display normal karyotypes there is still the possibility of malignancy with ESCs with extended culture periods and there have been a number of reports of genetic instability (Puri and Nagy 2012). With iPSC residual expression of transgenes is an issue, and in particular the oncogenic potential of *c-MYC* needs to be taken into account. Further research has shown though that *c-MYC* expression is not essential for pluripotency which can be achieved with different combinations of transcription factors, and although induction time is longer in the absence of *c-MYC* and the efficiency of reprogramming is significantly decreased, it is more specific (Yu et al. 2007; Nakagawa et al. 2008; Miura et al. 2009). Further attempts to improve the safety of iPSC include the use of reduced numbers of transgenes, excisable vectors, non-integrating episomal vectors, RNA transfection, and direct protein transduction (Kim et al. 2008, 2009; Stadtfeld et al. 2008; Lacoste et al. 2009; Lin et al. 2009; Yusa et al. 2009; Yakubov et al. 2010; Hu et al. 2011).

In addition to the oncogenic potential and insertational mutagenesis associated with transgenes, iPSCs may also have an inherent susceptibility to genomic

infidelity. It has been proposed that somatic and germ cell lineages do not have the same level of protection of genome integrity. IPSCs undergo an initial reprogramming to a pluripotent state through enforced expression of synthetic transcription factors, as well as the transformation of an already semi-/fully-differentiated somatic cell type to a pluripotent state, and thus undergo two additional steps at which they can acquire genetic modifications (Puri and Nagy 2012); it has also been shown that some iPSCs retain an 'epigenetic memory' of the DNA methylation patterns of their original somatic cell type, or may retain specific micro-RNA patterns (Puri and Nagy 2012).

As with the "naturally occurring" sources of HSCs, with ESCs and iPSCs, the primitive state of the starting cells gives rise to a primitive hematopoietic program with generation of embryonic globin chains. Recently though, hematopoietic progenitors (progenitors of myeloid, erythroid and megakaryocytic, but not lymphoid lineages) have been generated directly from adult fibroblast cells, by-passing the primitive, pluripotent state and maintaining adult developmental patterns (Szabo et al. 2010).

5.5 Ex-Vivo Culture of Red Blood Cells

The complexity of hematopoietic cell development is a particular challenge when it comes to the production of blood cells *in-vitro*. Large scale cell culture has traditionally been confined to continuous cell lines which provide a relatively uniform cell population, thus the dynamic nature of blood cell maturation makes process optimization more difficult. Culture conditions, seeding densities and media formulations need to be adapted to each stage of maturation, efforts need to be made to maintain synchronicity of the cell populations as the culture progresses, and interactions with numerous soluble and cell/matrix-specific factors need to be taken into account. Although regulation of O_2 and pH in the bioreactor can remove some of this complexity in culture it is often difficult to maintain efficient gas exchange without excessive shear effects. Complications also arise from the reliance on serum supplementation of cell culture medium to support growth and protect cells from shear stress. Serum is undefined and contains unknown mitogens and growth factors, which can affect proliferation and differentiation of HSCs; there are also the safety implications to consider with the use of animal-derived serum, or components like albumin or transferrin, if the cells generated are destined for therapeutic use.

Due to their evolving nature, *in vitro* cultures of hematopoietic cell types typically follow a general format of multi-phase cultures with each phase enlisting different cytokine combinations and medium components with/without co-culture with stromal cells. Various physiological factors, such as dissolved oxygen, may also be regulated in a stage-specific manner. Below we will summarize research to date on the *in vitro* generation and expansion of RBCs.

5.5.1 *In-Vitro Erythrocyte Generation: Developing Culture Conditions*

The most obvious blood cell candidate for *in-vitro* production is the RBC, or erythrocyte. As discussed above, erythrocytes are by far the most transfused blood cell type. They are also the most populist cell type in the blood with at about 700-times the total number of leukocytes combined, and over 10-times the number of platelets (Table 5.1). A number of attempts have been made to create RBC substitutes including hemoglobin-based solutions and vesicles, and perfluorocarbon-based synthetic oxygen carriers (Sakai et al. 2008; Tsuchida et al. 2009; Castro and Briceno 2010); however, these products have yet to gain widespread regulatory approval and are unlikely to replace, or even supplement to any great extent, traditional blood donation. Thus research has become more focused on the *in-vitro* generation of blood.

There are three main challenges in producing RBCs *in vitro* – foremost is achieving the extremely high cell densities required through enhancement of cell proliferation in the stem/progenitor phase, followed by the maximization of differentiation and enucleation to generate a fully mature and physiologically functional erythrocyte population and finally, once cells have enucleated, removal of the extruded nuclei from culture.

Initial attempts at erythroid culture ex-vivo were based on colony-forming assays carried out in semi-solid medium. This format made it difficult to manipulate culture conditions and carry out prolonged culturing protocols, or achieve high cell densities to obtain sufficient cells for further analysis. However, improved availability of growth factors through the cloning of genes for SCF, Epo, and IL-3 in the late 1980s and their subsequent production in recombinant protein systems paved the way for the development of liquid culture systems that allowed expansion at a much larger scale and gave improved flexibility in sampling and analysis (Fibach et al. 1989, 1991). These liquid culture systems proved very effective for the study of pathways involved in both normal and pathological Erythropoiesis (Fibach and Rachmilewitz 1990; Dalyot et al. 1992; Fibach et al. 1993), and allowed further elucidation of the effects of different cytokine/growth factor combinations on proliferation and regulation of lineage commitment and differentiation of HSPCs (Hematopoietic Stem and Progenitor Cells) into each of the blood cell lineages (Brugger et al. 1993), and more specifically into exclusively erythroid cultures (Dai et al. 1991; Papayannopoulou et al. 1993; Muta et al. 1995; Wu et al. 1997) – see Sect. 5.3.1.

To date culture systems generating RBCs from the following stem cell sources have been described – PB, mPB, BM, FL, iPSC and ESC (Giarratana et al. 2005; Boehm et al. 2009; Anstee 2010; Pourcher et al. 2011). The processes employed typically follow a multi-phase format (two, three or four phases) in basal medium, supplemented with high levels of iron in the form of transferrin, bovine serum albumin (BSA), and insulin, with various cytokine cocktails (typically an expansion

phase with SCF, IL-3 and Epo, followed by a differentiation phase with Epo alone, and a maturation phase free from exogenous cytokines) and with/without feeder layers/stromal cells over the course of roughly 3 weeks of culture. Other optional additives include dexamethasone, a steroid hormone which can be added to the initial progenitor phase of culture to inhibit maturation and thus enhance proliferation; β-mercaptoethanol (to prevent excess generation of oxygen radicals), hydrocortisone (a glucocorticoid that promotes erythroid proliferation) and cyclosporine (to inhibit growth of contaminating lymhpocytes or monocytes).

The majority of erythroid cultures are carried out over the course of 21–30 days, yet it has been shown that by maintaining progenitor cells in an immature state, through sustained supplementation of the culture medium with SCF and steroids, much greater fold expansions can be achieved through extending proliferation phases of culture for up to 60 days (Leberbauer et al. 2005). However, it has also been shown that if the culture period is extended by too long differentiation is not as robust, and proper hemoglobinisation of cells is inhibited (Timmins et al. 2011).

By 2002 descriptions of mass production of mature erythroid cells was shown to be possible, however, at this point, no or low levels of enucleation were described (Neildez-Nguyen et al. 2002; Migliaccio et al. 2002). Luc Douays' group, at INSERM in Paris, suggested that enucleation *in-vitro* is not necessary and showed that erythroid precursors when injected into NOD/SCID mice, undergo terminal differentiation and enucleation in-vivo (Neildez-Nguyen et al. 2002). This first report looking specifically at the efficacy of producing RBCs *in-vitro* for transfusion managed a 200,000-fold mean expansion of $CD34^+$ cells isolated from UCB into a pure erythroid culture, however, as these cells were derived from UCB they produced predominantly foetal haemoglobin (26:74 HbA:HbF). Also using this serum-free system terminal differentiation was not possible *in-vitro* and the majority of cells died at the basophilic erythroblast stage in culture. In spite of this they were able to achieve terminal differentiation and enucleation by injecting Day 10 cells (predominantly BFU-E progenitors) into a mouse model. Injected cells remained viable, proliferated and completed maturation in-vivo with mature cells showing predominantly HbA production – the switch from HbF to HbA presumably being triggered by to the prevailing environmental conditions in the adult mouse (Neildez-Nguyen et al. 2002).

By 2005 the same research group had improved their expansion rates from UCB $CD34^+$s by tenfold to up to 2×10^6–fold expansion (with $1. \times 10^5$ and 1.2×10^5–fold expansions respectively from BM, and mPB derived $CD34^+$s) and saw full enucleation *in vitro*, producing cells that were functionally comparable to native, adult RBCs. This was achieved through co-culture with either the MS-5 murine stromal line or with mesenchymal stem cells throughout differentiation. Again, $CD34^+$s from adult sources produced HbA while those from UCB produced predominantly HbF (Giarratana et al. 2005).

The following year Yukio Nakamura's group in Japan showed that enucleation was possible *in-vitro* without the presence of stromal cells; however, these cultures

contained Plasmanate (a commercially available human plasma derivative). Between 40 and 80 % enucleation was shown with higher levels of enucleation in cultures containing a glucocorticoid inhibitor – highlighting the effect of serum/plasma glucocorticoids in blocking maturation (Miharada et al. 2006).

As well as functional studies of derived cells, molecular studies have shown the reproduction of in-vivo patterns of erythroid gene expression in these cultures, however, further understanding of the exact pathways involved, and the nutritional requirements of *in-vitro* erythroid development is still required as many of these cultures still show high levels of cell death in the later stages of differentiation – a significant problem if these cells themselves, rather than a secreted product, are the intended therapy (Ronzoni et al. 2008).

Once effective erythroid development was proven, optimisation studies began to look to further improving culture viability and increasing fold-expansions. By altering the feeding strategy to a daily passaging regimen, Boehm et al. (2009) managed to increase the fold-expansion of non-mobilized peripheral blood-derived $CD34^+$ cells to 1×10^6 – a level that had only previously been shown for UCB derived cells, a source with much higher proliferative capacity. This was likely achieved through the reduction in levels of inhibitory factors by daily dilution of culture medium.

Another strategy to improve proliferation is to maintain $CD34^+$s in an immature and self-renewing state for a period before allowing high-level proliferation and differentiation of cells. This can improve the proliferations achieved by almost 1,000-fold. Fujimi et al. (2008), achieved this by co-culturing CB derived $CD34^+$s with human telomerase (*h-tert*) transduced stromal cells for 2 weeks in serum-free medium containing SCF, thrombopoietin, and FLT-3/FLK-2 ligand before a second culture phase with Epo, a third with/without macrophage co-culture and a final, fourth, maturation phase, to yield the equivalent of 8 transfusable blood units from 1 CB unit (Fujimi et al. 2008). Removal of extruded nuclei and any cellular debris from cultures was achieved by using de-leukocyting filters.

As well as macrophages and murine or human stromal cells, mesenchymal stem cells have also been shown to be effective in co-culture studies (Giarratana et al. 2005; Baek et al. 2008). Co-culture with MSCs from day 8 of culture, either for 3 days (Giarratana et al. 2005; Baek et al. 2008), or for up to 2 weeks (Baek et al. 2008), has shown to be very effective in inducing terminal differentiation and enucleation; it would appear that the function of stroma is in its capacity as an adhesive substrate for developing erythroblasts, as cells co-cultured without direct cell contact were unable to enucleate. The source of cells for stromal co-culturing is also significant, as it has been shown that co-culturing with CB-derived mesenchymal stromal cells is more effective than using those derived from BM (Baek et al. 2008).

In spite of the high-fold expansions and maximized enucleation that have been shown in erythroid cultures these have generally been achieved through a reliance on serum/plasma-supplementation, conditioned medium (e.g. from bladder carcinoma cell line 5637-ref) and co-culture with stromal cells. Low viability at the later

stages of culture are contributed to by shear stress due to the fragility of erythroid membranes, and although one group has shown improvements on fold expansions and viability in serum- and stroma-free culture through the addition of the chemical surfactant Poloxamer 188 to protect from shear, the expansions achieved from UCB $CD34^+$s were relatively low compared to other reports (Baek et al. 2009). The most impressive reports of serum/stroma-free culture so far come from a group at the University of Queensland who have shown very high levels of expansion and full terminal maturation in defined culture conditions using $CD34^+$ cells from UCB owing to an extended proliferation phase (Timmins et al. 2011). Kim and Baek (2011) have shown a similar fold expansion of UCB $CD34^+$s up to day 13 of culture, although in this case the proliferation phase was not extended so the same overall expansion was not achieved. This group also showed an improvement in viability in the later stages of culture through the addition of vitamin C and hypothermic culture at 27 °C (Kim and Baek 2012).

In spite of this most groups still rely on a serum-free proliferation phase followed by a differentiation phase (at which stage erythroid precursor cells are more prone to apoptosis) using human plasma/serum (2–5 %) to prevent apoptosis of developing erythroblasts. Human plasma, although still not ideal, provides less worry in terms of safety and in certain situations autologous plasma could be used for patient-specific blood cell production.

5.5.2 Manipulation of Physical Conditions

A novel approach to enhancing ex-vivo erythroid cultures has been through the modification of cell culture surfaces. Although most of the research carried out on erythroid culture development is in cell culture plates or T-flasks maintained under static conditions, not much attention had been paid to the subject of culture surfaces as the cells themselves are not adherent. Yet the rationale in testing the effects of physical parameters in erythroid culture is well-founded given the impact of physical effects on in-vivo Erythropoiesis, such as the adhesive interactions with various stromal cell types and ECM proteins in the BM, and the intimate association in-vivo of erythroblasts with macrophages as they develop. Added to these adhesive interactions are various physiological gradients within BM such as pH, O_2, and even shear effects.

Bearing in mind the net negative charge that erythrocytes display Baek et al. (2010) tested the effects of altering the surface charges of culture plates, speculating that binding of negatively charged cells to positively charged culture surfaces could go some way to mimicking cell-stroma interactions. By altering culture surfaces with hydroxyl, carboxyl and amide groups, they showed that the use of positively-charged hydrophilic surfaces, as opposed to hydrophobic surfaces; negatively charged surfaces; and a combination of positive and negative charges, almost doubled the level of enucleation of erythroid cultures derived from CB $CD34^+$s (Baek et al. 2010).

The same group have also looked at temperature of culture in the later maturation stages that typically show a high proportion of cell death. Reduction of culture temperature to 27 °C when the cell population had reached the orthochromatic erythroblast stage led to a reduction in apoptosis, an increase in enucleation, and an improvement in cellular integrity (Kim and Baek 2012). The addition of vitamin C in the final stages of culture also showed a protective effect and a reduction in the levels of reactive oxygen species (Kim and Baek 2012). The effects of manipulating other physical parameters have also been explored, notably pH and oxygen tension.

Cell cultures are maintained at 20 % pO_2 (roughly atmospheric level) under typical laboratory conditions in a 5 % CO_2 incubator, even though physiological levels are generally in the range of 2–8 %. Thus an obvious parameter to analyse when optimising culture conditions for primary cells is oxygen tension. Results from various studies have, however, been contradictory in this regard.

The first demonstration of liquid erythroid cultures by Fibach et al. employed low oxygen tension (6 %), along with raised CO_2 (7 %), in phase 2 after an initial Epo independent phase but this report did not provide comparisons to normoxic conditions (Fibach et al. 1989).

Hypoxia (1 or 5 % O_2) has been shown to promote erythroid development and maintain early Erythropoiesis in colony-forming assays and liquid culture, and although further differentiation is inhibited at this level once cells return to normoxia differentiation proceeds as normal (Lu and Broxmeyer 1985; Cipolleschi et al. 1997). Analysis of growth at physiological levels (2–8 % O_2) throughout the course of proliferation and differentiation in a liquid culture system showed that decreasing O_2 levels had a cytotoxic effect compared to normoxic (20 %) conditions, and led to reduced growth, Epo-receptor expression and haemoglobinization, along with an increase in the ratio of HbF to HbA; although reduced O_2 did seem to promote differentiation of cells (Rogers et al. 2008). Analysis of altered O_2 concentrations in a phase-specific manner also showed an improvement in erythroid development following hypoxic-incubation of immature erythroid cells as opposed to more mature cells of later phases; this study also confirmed the increase in HbF production at lower O_2 tensions (Vlaski et al. 2009). A criticism of these studies however, is that O_2 concentration was regulated at the level of the incubator rather than taking measurements directly from culture. In-culture variations in oxygen tension in well-plates can be strikingly large, due to cellular uptake, altering cell densities as cultures proliferate, and diffusional effects of gas through culture media, thus the actual dO_2 levels in the cultures examined are likely to be quite different to incubator set-points.

Effects of shear stress and agitation of cultures, and the possibility of their knock-on effects on gas-diffusion and improved mixing of cultures, have also been examined. In 24-well plate format agitation at 15 rpm (rocks per minute) was shown to improve progenitor growth in the proliferation phase and hasten differentiation, possibly though the prevention of cell-surface adhesion (Boehm et al. 2010). However, under these same conditions, viability was decreased during the differentiation stage (Boehm et al. 2010).

A contrasting study described a negative effect of agitation on early proliferation in low density cultures, although the same effects on viability during differentiation were replicated in a 1 L wave-bioreactor set to the same agitation rate (Timmins et al. 2011). Initially in this larger-scale study the drop in viability was seen during maturation phase if cultures were maintained at normoxia, however, if the oxygen tension was decreased by 50 % the cultures remained viable and gave comparable results to the static control (Timmins et al. 2011). This lead the authors to speculate that the cell death effects of increased agitation during maturation were due to increased gas diffusion rather than a direct effect of increased agitation culminating in increased shear and/or decreased substrate adhesion.

As acknowledged previously the regulation of the culture environment during stem cell cultivation is very important for erythroid development *in-vitro*, and even seemingly small changes in culture parameters can affect proliferation and differentiation. Changes in pH as small as 0.2 points can affect lineage decisions in HSC culture, and a small shift from pH 7.2–7.6 has been shown to an increase in the proportion of erythroid cells from approximately 50–80 % along with increasing cell density (McAdams et al. 1998). Even cells grown in the same medium formulations purchased from different suppliers can show differences in proliferation and differentiation, presumably due to slight differences in buffering capacity (Susan Browne, personal observation).

Environmental regulation is difficult though in the static culture systems currently being used where cells are typically cultured in T-flasks with dilution feeding at fixed time-points days apart, rather than a constant perfusion of medium that is maintained at set points for pH and dissolved gases. These medium dilutions lead to sharp changes in the concentration of nutrients and cytokines, and dilution of autocrine and paracrine factors (Timmins and Nielsen 2011), and also cause a sudden change in dissolved O_2 profile of the culture (Susan Browne, unpublished data); thus it is difficult to maintain a culture environment that mimics in-vivo conditions.

5.5.3 Scale-Up of In-Vitro Erythropoiesis

In terms of scale up of RBC manufacturing, only one group has published data on culturing to terminal maturation at bioreactor scale at present, using a bag/wave-type bioreactor for the later stages of culture (from day 8). However, this process uses a large amount of media due to its feeding strategy, with cultures beginning at 1×10^4 cells/ml and diluted to 1×10^5 at regular intervals (Timmins et al. 2011). These low seeding densities are common in most culture protocols for *in vitro* RBC production with Lahoti et al. (2012) showing that, for optimum expansion, cultures need to be reseeded to a density of 3×10^5 cells/ml every 36 h during proliferation (Fig. 5.7). This requirement for low seeding densities has been suggested to be due to a cell-cell interaction associated inhibition, as cell density as a function of

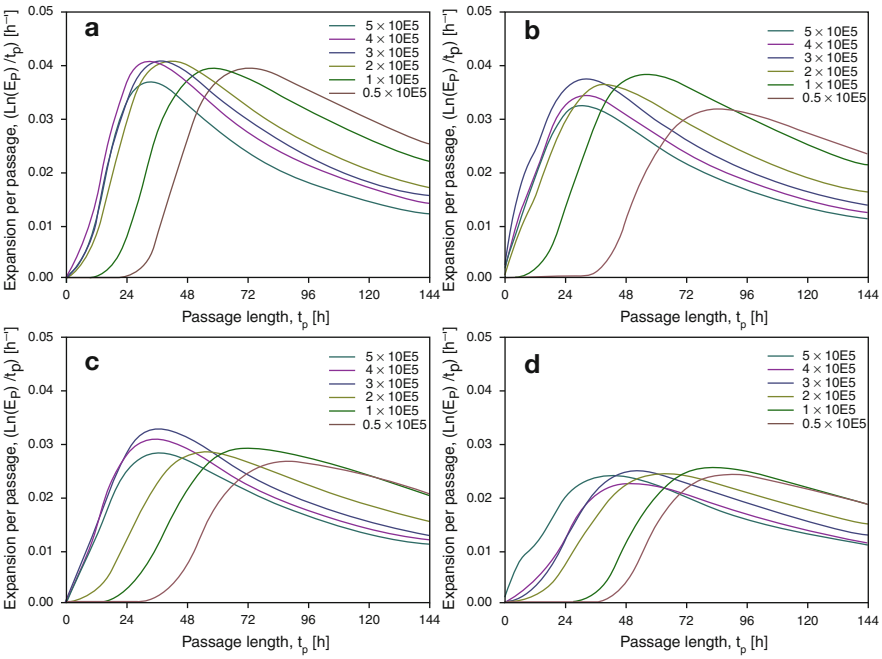


Fig. 5.7 Calculations of optimum seeding densities and medium renewal rates for erythroid differentiation of HSCs (Lahoti et al. 2012)

surface area, rather than media volume appears to affect proliferation, although the opposite is true during differentiation where increased cell density confers a protective effect (Boehm et al. 2009). Another likely reason is the induction of feedback-inhibition by paracrine factors secreted by more mature sub-populations in culture (Csaszar et al. 2012). This would also make sense in terms of surface area/cell volume findings, as although these are suspension cells, the majority of culture systems used to-date are maintained under static conditions and thus cells settle to the bottom of the well. Here there are likely locally high concentrations of these inhibitors, rather than homogenous dilution of cell-secreted factors throughout the culture medium.

Another recent report has shown generation of erythroid-lineage cells in a novel hollow-fiber reactor (Housler et al. 2012). These reactor types allow higher cell densities to be achieved through more efficient nutrient and gas-exchange, as they offer a structure that is closer in format to in-vivo conditions. Here cells were maintained in a "pseudo-continuous" culture with intermittent removal and re-inoculation of cells, although they did not show the same expansion and differentiation levels of other studies in static conditions, or in the wave-type reactor (Housler et al. 2012).

The type of bioreactor required for RBC production is likely to be of a complex formation rather than a simple stirred-tank due to the complexity of culture process and to enable isolation of fully mature cells in a homogenous population, and free of nuclei. It seems imperative however, that a move is made soon to bioreactor culture, whether small or exploratory scales, if significant improvements in this culture system are to be achieved. Stem cells are notoriously sensitive to their microenvironment, and thus that environment needs to be regulated as much as possible to enable repetition and homogenization of results.

5.5.4 Generation of Erythrocytes from Pluripotent Stem Cells

Inevitably research in this area has begun to focus on the generation of RBCs from ESCs and iPSCs. As cell lines these sources would, in theory, provide an infinite source of cells for differentiation into RBCs. Erythoid progenitor cells can be generated from pluripotent stem cells either by co-culture of cells with stromal layers such as foetal liver cells, yolk-sac endothelial cells, bone marrow or OP9 stromal cells; or via the generation of embryonic bodies and haemangioblasts (embryonic precursors of blood and endothelial cells) (Olivier et al. 2006; Lu et al. 2008). So far, however, ES and iPSC have shown limited expansion *in vitro* in culture systems designed to produce RBCs, are complex and expensive in terms of culturing conditions and cytokine cocktails required, do not show consistent growth in culture, show primitive patterns of differentiation (with expression of embryonic and foetal globin chains), and lower enucleation levels than more definitive sources . It is obvious also, that a greater understanding of the process of haemoglobin switching from primitive to definitive forms is required, although this is also applicable in the case of cells derived from UCB $CD34^{+}$s.

However, research is continuing at a fast pace in this area due to the potential that these cell lines offer once conditions for their growth and differentiation are optimised, with Peyrard et al., calculating that only 3 iPSC cell lines would be necessary to cover 90 % of alloimmunized Caucasians (Peyrard et al. 2011). Given that most of the research to date on these cell lines has been directed from the angle of molecular and cellular functionality, rather than taking a bioprocessing approach of cell line selection and culture optimisation, it is likely that there is a lot of scope in this area for further improvement of yields and proliferation efficiencies.

Pourcher et al. (2012) have proposed the *in-vitro* RBC generation from foetal liver derived HSCs as a study model to improve the amplification potential of these cell lines in the meantime. They suggest foetal liver HSCs to represent an intermediary state between ES/iPSCs and more mature UCB or adult derived HSCs as they show similar differentiation patterns to the more primitive cell types, with foetal globin chains and low enucleation, but show much higher proliferation than ES or

iPSC, at up to two-log folds higher than even bone marrow or CB derived HSCs (Pourcher et al. 2011).

A recent advancement by the Nakamura group in Japan has been the generation of cell lines following initial direction of ESCs towards the erythroid lineage, rather than using ESC cell lines and carrying out an extended erythroid differentiation step repeatedly with each culture. Initially showing this for murine cells (Hiroyama et al. 2008), they have since replicated the process for human cells to generate an immortalized erythroid progenitor cell line, that is capable of differentiation and maturation *in-vitro* (Hiroyama et al. 2013).

5.5.5 Current Status of In-Vitro Erythropoiesis

Proof of principle studies have already shown the efficacy of *in vitro* generated RBCs in vivo in both mice and humans, and functional studies have shown that *in-vitro* generated cells show comparable profiles to their ex-vivo counterparts (Neildez-Nguyen et al. 2002; Giarratana et al. 2005, 2013). It has also been shown that once generated, these cells can be stored (Migliaccio et al. 2009; Kim and Baek 2012) and in theory they could have an extended storage duration as the cells produced in culture are synchronous in terms of age and thus could be stored for up to 120 days, in comparison to the 42 day cut-off for donated blood.

Meeting the demands of the RBC market is still a long way off due to the huge volumes of cells required. A typical unit of RBCs (roughly 500 ml) contains 2×10^{12} cells. Timmins and Nielsen (2011) have calculated that, operating at current expansion levels, it would take 30,000 batch cultures in 20,000 L bioreactor systems operating at a maximum cell density of 5×10^7 cell/ml to meet the annual RBC requirements of the US alone, and at present even meeting the requirements of transfusion recipients who are alloimmunized or have rare blood types would be difficult – described in Table 5.3 (Timmins and Nielsen 2009, 2011).

However, the pace of research into optimising culture conditions is intensifying, including the move towards fully defined culture medium; the reduction in medium costs through the identification of suitable peptide mimetics and small molecules to replace expensive cytokines; and the development of improved and intensified bioreactor systems.

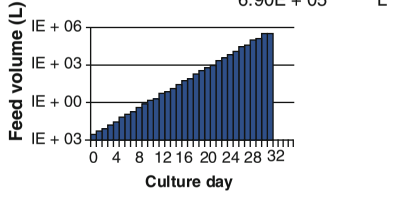
HSCs from peripheral blood and UCB/placenta probably represent the most likely sources for blood cell production for the short- to medium-term future for safety reasons while further optimisation and validation of pluripotent systems is carried out. The most favourable scenario is for research to proceed on all HSC sources for the foreseeable future, with PB and UCB HSCs used as source material in the interim until all safety concerns are met with iPSCs. It seems clear however, that the routine use of *in-vitro* generated blood products is no longer a case of if, but a case of when.

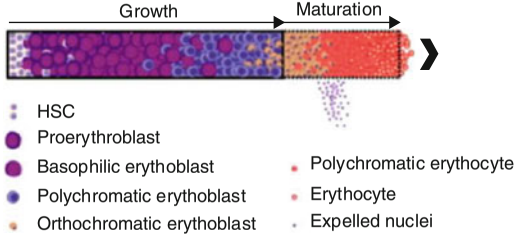
Table 5.3 Hypothetical costing for large scale RBC production (Timmins and Nielsen 2011)

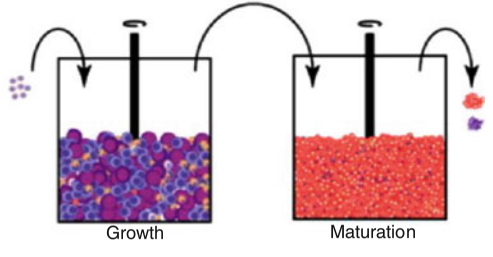
Production requirements		
Recipients	3.00E + 05	/year
Transfusion rate	3	units/recipient
Phenotypes	10	
Units/phenotypes	9.00E + 04	/year

Continuous process (per phenotype)		
Operating period	365	days/year
Production rate	247	units/day
Cell flux	2.05E + 13	cells/hour
Doubling time	12	hours
Number of growing cells	3.56E + 14	cells
Maturation time	48	hours
Number of maturing cells	9.86E + 14	cells
Total cell number	1.34E + 15	cells
Cell density	1.00E + 09	cells/mL
Operating volume	1342	L
Hollow fibre diameter	100	μm
Hollow fibre length	170873	km
Membrane area	53681	m^2
Media capacity	5.00E + 07	cells/mLday
Feed rate	2.68E + 04	L/day
Media consumption	9.80E + 06	L/year

Fed-batch process (per phenotype)		
Batch duration	35	days
Cycles	10.4	/year
Batch yield	8.63E + 03	units/batch
Maximum density	5.00E + 03	cells/ml
Maximum operating volume	3.45E + 03	L
Total volume	6.90E + 05	L
Media consumption	7.20E + 06	L/year







References

Abdulrazzak H, Moschidou D, Jones G, Guillot PV (2010) Biological characteristics of stem cells from foetal, cord blood and extraembryonic tissues. J R Soc Interface 7:S689–S706

An XL, Mohandas N (2011) Erythroblastic islands, terminal erythroid differentiation and reticulocyte maturation. Int J Hematol 93:139–143

Anstee DJ (2010) Production of erythroid cells from human embryonic stem cells (hESC) and human induced pluripotent stem cells (hiPS). Transfus Clin Biol 17:104–109

Baek EJ, Kim HS, Kim S, Jin H, Choi TY, Kim HO (2008) In vitro clinical-grade generation of red blood cells from human umbilical cord blood CD34+ cells. Transfusion 48:2235–2245

Baek EJ, Kim HS, Kim JH, Kim NJ, Kim HO (2009) Stroma-free mass production of clinical-grade red blood cells (RBCs) by using poloxamer 188 as an RBC survival enhancer. Transfusion 49:2285–2295

Baek EJ, You J, Kim MS, Lee SY, Cho SJ, Kim E, Kim HO (2010) Enhanced production of red blood cells in suspension by electrostatic interactions with culture plates. Tissue Eng Part C Methods 16:1325–1334

Baron MH, Isern J, Fraser ST (2012) The embryonic origins of erythropoiesis in mammals. Blood 119:4828–4837

Bell AJ, Satchwell TJ, Heesom KJ, Hawley BR, Kupzig S, Hazell M, Mushens R, Herman A, Toye AM (2013) Protein distribution during human erythroblast enucleation *in-vitro*. PLoS One 8:e60300

Bender JG, Unverzagt K, Walker DE, Lee W, Smith S, Williams S, Vanepps DE (1994) Phenotypic analysis and characterization of Cd34+ cells from normal human bone-marrow, cord-blood, peripheral-blood, and mobilized peripheral-blood from patients undergoing autologous stem-cell transplantation. Clin Immunol Immunopathol 70:10–18

Boehm D, Murphy WG, Al Rubeai M (2009) The potential of human peripheral blood derived CD34+ cells for ex vivo red blood cell production. J Biotechnol 144:127–134

Boehm D, Murphy WG, Al Rubeai M (2010) The effect of mild agitation on in vitro erythroid development. J Immunol Methods 360:20–29

Brugger W, Mocklin W, Heimfeld S, Berenson RJ, Mertelsmann R, Kanz L (1993) Exvivo expansion of enriched peripheral-blood Cd34+ progenitor cells by stem-cell factor, interleukin-1-beta (Il-1-beta), Il-6, Il-3, interferon-gamma, and erythropoietin. Blood 81:2579–2584

Castro CI, Briceno JC (2010) Perfluorocarbon-based oxygen carriers: review of products and trials. Artif Organs 34:622–634

Cipolleschi MG, Dippolito G, Bernabei PA, Caporale R, Nannini R, Mariani M, Fabbiani M, RossiFerrini P, Olivotto M, DelloSbarba P (1997) Severe hypoxia enhances the formation of erythroid bursts from human cord blood cells and the maintenance of BFU-E in vitro. Exp Hematol 25:1187–1194

Csaszar E, Kirouac DC, Yu M, Wang WJ, Qiao WL, Cooke MP, Boitano AE, Ito C, Zandstra PW (2012) Rapid expansion of human hematopoietic stem cells by automated control of inhibitory feedback signaling. Cell Stem Cell 10:218–229

Dai CH, Krantz SB, Zsebo KM (1991) Human burst-forming units-erythroid need direct interaction with stem-cell factor for further development. Blood 78:2493–2497

Dalyot N, Fibach E, Rachmilewitz EA, Oppenheim A (1992) Adult and neonatal patterns of human globin gene-expression are recapitulated in liquid cultures. Exp Hematol 20:1141–1145

Dolznig H, Habermann B, Stangl K, Deiner EM, Moriggl R, Beug H, Mullner EW (2002) Apoptosis protection by the Epo target Bcl-X-L allows factor-independent differentiation of primary erythroblasts. Curr Biol 12:1076–1085

The collection, testing and use of blood and blood components in Europe. 2009 Report. Department of Biological Standardisation, OMCL Network. European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines & Healthcare (EDQM). Council of Europe. Strasbourg, France

Fibach E, Rachmilewitz EA (1990) Proliferation and differentiation of erythroid progenitors in liquid culture – analysis of progenitors derived from patients with polycythemia-vera. Am J Hematol 35:151–156

Fibach E, Manor D, Oppenheim A, Rachmilewitz EA (1989) Proliferation and maturation of human erythroid progenitors in liquid culture. Blood 73:100–103

Fibach E, Manor D, Treves A, Rachmilewitz EA (1991) Growth of human normal erythroid progenitors in liquid culture – a comparison with colony growth in semisolid culture. Int J Cell Cloning 9:57–64

Fibach E, Burke LP, Schechter AN, Noguchi CT, Rodgers GP (1993) Hydroxyurea increases fetal hemoglobin in cultured erythroid-cells derived from normal individuals and patients with sickle-cell-anemia or beta-thalassemia. Blood 81:1630–1635

Fujimi A, Matsunaga T, Kobune M, Kawano Y, Nagaya T, Tanaka I, Iyama S, Hayashi T, Sato T, Miyanishi K, Sagawa T, Sato Y, Takimoto R, Takayama T, Kato J, Gasa S, Sakai H, Tsuchida E, Ikebuchi K, Hamada H, Niitsu Y (2008) Ex vivo large-scale generation of human red blood cells from cord blood CD34(+) cells by co-culturing with macrophages. Int J Hematol 87:339–350

Giarratana MC, Kobari L, Lapillonne H, Chalmers D, Kiger L, Cynober T, Marden MC, Wajcman H, Douay L (2005) Ex vivo generation of fully mature human red blood cells from hematopoietic stem cells. Nat Biotechnol 23:69–74

Giarratana MC, Marie T, Darghouth D, Douay L (2013) Biological validation of bio-engineered red blood cell productions. Blood Cells Mol Dis 50:69–79

Hanna JH, Saha K, Jaenisch R (2010) Pluripotency and cellular reprogramming: facts, hypotheses, unresolved issues. Cell 143:508–525

Hattangadi SM, Wong P, Zhang LB, Flygare J, Lodish HF (2011) From stem cell to red cell: regulation of erythropoiesis at multiple levels by multiple proteins, RNAs, and chromatin modifications. Blood 118:6258–6268

Higgs DR, Engel JD, Stamatoyannopoulos G (2012) Thalassaemia. Lancet 379:373–383

Hiroyama T, Miharada K, Sudo K, Danjo I, Aoki N, Nakamura Y (2008) Establishment of mouse embryonic stem cell-derived erythroid progenitor cell lines able to produce functional red blood cells. PLoS One 3:e1544

Hiroyama T, Miharada K, Sudo K, Danjo I, Aoki N, Nakamura Y (2013) Establishment of immortalized human erythroid progenitor cell lines able to produce enucleated red blood cells. PLoS One 8:59890

Housler GJ, Miki T, Schmelzer E, Pekor C, Zhang XK, Kang L, Voskinarian-Berse V, Abbot S, Zeilinger K, Gerlach JC (2012) Compartmental hollow fiber capillary membrane-based bioreactor technology for in vitro studies on red blood cell lineage direction of hematopoietic stem cells. Tissue Eng Part C Methods 18:133–142

Hu KJ, Yu JY, Suknuntha K, Tian SL, Montgomery K, Choi KD, Stewart R, Thomson JA, Slukvin II (2011) Efficient generation of transgene-free induced pluripotent stem cells from normal and neoplastic bone marrow and cord blood mononuclear cells. Blood 117:E109–E119

Itskovitz-Eldor J, Schuldiner M, Karsenti D, Eden A, Yanuka O, Amit M, Soreq H, Benvenisty N (2000) Differentiation of human embryonic stem cells into embryoid bodies comprising the three embryonic germ layers. Mol Med 6:88–95

Ji P, Murata-Hori M, Lodish HF (2011) Formation of mammalian erythrocytes: chromatin condensation and enucleation. Trends Cell Biol 21:409–415

Kaufman DS, Hanson ET, Lewis RL, Auerbach R, Thomson JA (2001) Hematopoietic colony-forming cells derived from human embryonic stem cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98:10716–10721

Keerthivasan G, Small S, Liu H, Wickrema A, Crispino JD (2010) Vesicle trafficking plays a novel role in erythroblast enucleation. Blood 116:3331–3340

Keerthivasan G, Liu H, Gump JM, Dowdy SF, Wickrema A, Crispino JD (2012) A novel role for survivin in erythroblast enucleation. Haematologica 97:1471–1479

Kim HO, Baek EJ (2011) Red blood cell engineering in stroma and serum/plasma-free conditions and long term storage. Tissue Eng Part A 18:117–126

Kim JB, Zaehres H, Wu GM, Gentile L, Ko K, Sebastiano V, Arauzo-Bravo MJ, Ruau D, Han DW, Zenke M, Scholer HR (2008) Pluripotent stem cells induced from adult neural stem cells by reprogramming with two factors. Nature 454:646–650

Kim D, Kim CH, Moon JI, Chung YG, Chang MY, Han BS, Ko S, Yang E, Cha KY, Lanza R, Kim KS (2009) Generation of human induced pluripotent stem cells by direct delivery of reprogramming proteins. Cell Stem Cell 4:472–476

Lacoste A, Berenshteyn F, Brivanlou AH (2009) An efficient and reversible transposable system for gene delivery and lineage-specific differentiation in human embryonic stem cells (vol 5, pg 332, 2009). Cell Stem Cell 5:568–568

Lahoti V, Murphy W, Al Rubeai M (2012) Mathematical approach for the optimal expansion of erythroid progenitors in monolayer culture. J Biotechnol 161:308–319

Leberbauer C, Boulme F, Unfried G, Huber J, Beug H, Mullner EW (2005) Different steroids co-regulate long-term expansion versus terminal differentiation in primary human erythroid progenitors. Blood 105:85–94

Lengerke C, Grauer M, Niebuhr NI, Riedt T, Kanz L, Park IH, Daley GQ (2009) Hematopoietic development from human induced pluripotent stem cells. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1176:219–227

Lin TX, Ambasudhan R, Yuan X, Li WL, Hilcove S, Abujarour R, Lin XY, Hahm HS, Hao E, Hayek A, Ding S (2009) A chemical platform for improved induction of human iPSCs. Nat Methods 6:805–808

Lu L, Broxmeyer HE (1985) Comparative influences of phytohemagglutinin-stimulated leukocyte conditioned medium, hemin, prostaglandin-E, and low oxygen-tension on colony formation by erythroid progenitor cells in normal human-bone marrow. Exp Hematol 13:989–993

Lu SJ, Feng Q, Park JS, Vida L, Lee BS, Strausbauch M, Wettstein PJ, Honig GR, Lanza R (2008) Biologic properties and enucleation of red blood cells from human embryonic stem cells. Blood 112:4475–4484

McAdams TA, Miller WM, Papoutsakis ET (1998) pH is a potent modulator of erythroid differentiation. Br J Haematol 103:317–325

Metcalf D (2007) Concise review: hematopoietic stem cells and tissue stem cells: current concepts and unanswered questions. Stem Cells 25:2390–2395

Migliaccio G, Di Pietro R, di Giacomo V, Di Baldassarre A, Migliaccio AR, Maccioni L, Galanello R, Papayannopoulou T (2002) In vitro mass production of human erythroid cells from the blood of normal donors and of thalassemic patients. Blood Cells Mol Dis 28:169–180

Migliaccio G, Sanchez M, Leblanc A, Masiello F, Tirelli V, Migliaccio AR, Najfeld V, Whitsett C (2009) Long-term storage does not alter functionality of in vitro generated human erythroblasts: implications for ex vivo generated erythroid transfusion products. Transfusion 49:2668–2679

Miharada K, Hiroyama T, Sudo K, Nagasawa T, Nakamura Y (2006) Efficient enucleation of erythroblasts differentiated in vitro from hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells. Nat Biotechnol 24:1255–1256

Miura K, Okada Y, Aoi T, Okada A, Takahashi K, Okita K, Nakagawa M, Koyanagi M, Tanabe K, Ohnuki M, Ogawa D, Ikeda E, Okano H, Yamanaka S (2009) Variation in the safety of induced pluripotent stem cell lines. Nat Biotechnol 27:743–745

Muta K, Krantz SB, Bondurant MC, Wickrema A (1994) Distinct roles of erythropoietin, insulin-like growth-factor-I, and stem-cell factor in the development of erythroid progenitor cells. J Clin Invest 94:34–43

Muta K, Krantz SB, Bondurant MC, Dai CH (1995) Stem-cell factor retards differentiation of normal human erythroid progenitor cells while stimulating proliferation. Blood 86:572–580

Nakagawa M, Koyanagi M, Tanabe K, Takahashi K, Ichisaka T, Aoi T, Okita K, Mochiduki Y, Takizawa N, Yamanaka S (2008) Generation of induced pluripotent stem cells without Myc from mouse and human fibroblasts. Nat Biotechnol 26:101–106

Neildez-Nguyen TMA, Wajcman H, Marden MC, Bensidhoum M, Moncollin V, Giarratana MC, Kobari L, Thierry D, Douay L (2002) Human erythroid cells produced ex vivo at large scale differentiate into red blood cells in vivo. Nat Biotechnol 20:467–472

Olivier EN, Qiu CH, Velho M, Hirsch RE, Bouhassira EE (2006) Large-scale production of embryonic red blood cells from human embryonic stem cells. Exp Hematol 34:1635–1642

O'Malley DP (2007) Benign extramedullary myeloid proliferations. Mod Pathol 20:405–415

Panzenbock B, Bartunek P, Mapara MY, Zenke M (1998) Growth and differentiation of human stem cell factor erythropoietin-dependent erythroid progenitor cells in vitro. Blood 92: 3658–3668

Papayannopoulou T, Brice M, Blau CA (1993) Kit ligand in synergy with interleukin-3 amplifies the erythropoietin-independent, globin-synthesizing progeny of normal human burst-forming units-erythroid in suspension-cultures - physiological implications. Blood 81:299–310

Peyrard T, Bardiaux L, Krause C, Kobari L, Lapillonne H, Andreu G, Douay L (2011) Banking of pluripotent adult stem cells as an unlimited source for red blood cell production: potential applications for alloimmunized patients and rare blood challenges. Transfus Med Rev 25:206–216

Pourcher G, Mazurier C, King YY, Giarratana MC, Boehm D, Douay L, Lapillone H (2012) Human fetal liver: an *in vitro* model of erythropoiesis. Stem Cells Int 2011:10, 405429

Puri MC, Nagy A (2012) Concise review: embryonic stem cells versus induced pluripotent stem cells: the game is on. Stem Cells 30:10–14

Robin C, Bollerot K, Mendes S, Haak E, Crisan M, Cerisoli F, Lauw I, Kaimakis P, Jorna R, Vermeulen M, Kayser M, van der Linden R, Imanirad P, Verstegen M, Nawaz-Yousaf H, Papazian N, Steegers E, Cupedo T, Dzierzak E (2009) Human placenta is a potent hematopoietic niche containing hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells throughout development. Cell Stem Cell 5:385–395

Rogers HM, Yu XB, Wen J, Smith R, Fibach E, Noguchi CT (2008) Hypoxia alters progression of the erythroid program. Exp Hematol 36:17–27

Ronzoni L, Bonara P, Rusconi D, Frugoni C, Libani I, Cappellini MD (2008) Erythroid differentiation and maturation from peripheral CD34(+) cells in liquid culture: cellular and molecular characterization. Blood Cells Mol Dis 40:148–155

Sakai H, Sou K, Horinouchi H, Kobayashi K, Tsuchida E (2008) Haemoglobin-vesicles as artificial oxygen carriers: present situation and future visions. J Intern Med 263:4–15

Schofield R (1978) Relationship between spleen colony-forming cell and hematopoietic stem-cell – hypothesis. Blood Cells 4:7–25

Shiozawa Y, Taichman RS (2012) Getting blood from bone: an emerging understanding of the role that osteoblasts play in regulating hematopoietic stem cells within their niche. Exp Hematol 40:685–694

Sigvardsson M (2009) New light on the biology and developmental potential of haematopoietic stem cells and progenitor cells. J Intern Med 266:311–324

Sood R, Liu P (2012) Novel insights into the genetic controls of primitive and definitive hematopoiesis from zebrafish models. Adv Hematol 2012:830703

Stadtfeld M, Nagaya M, Utikal J, Weir G, Hochedlinger K (2008) Induced pluripotent stem cells generated without viral integration. Science 322:945–949

Stiene-Martin EA, Lotspeich-Steininger CA, Koepke JA (1998) Clinical hematology. Principles, procedures, correlations, 2nd edn. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia

Sui XW, Tsuji K, Tajima S, Tanaka R, Muraoka K, Ebihara Y, Ikebuchi K, Yasukawa K, Taga T, Kishimoto T, Nakahata T (1996) Erythropoietin-independent erythrocyte production: signals through gp130 and c-kit dramatically promote erythropoiesis from human CD34(+) cells. J Exp Med 183:837–845

Szabo E, Rampalli S, Risueno RM, Schnerch A, Mitchell R, Fiebig-Comyn A, Levadoux-Martin M, Bhatia M (2010) Direct conversion of human fibroblasts to multilineage blood progenitors. Nature 468:521–526

Takahashi K, Tanabe K, Ohnuki M, Narita M, Ichisaka T, Tomoda K, Yamanaka S (2007) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from adult human fibroblasts by defined factors. Cell 131:861–872

Thomson JA, Itskovitz-Eldor J, Shapiro SS, Waknitz MA, Swiergiel JJ, Marshall VS, Jones JM (1998) Embryonic stem cell lines derived from human blastocysts. Science 282:1145–1147

Till JE, McCulloch EA (1961) Direct measurement of radiation sensitivity of normal mouse bone marrow cells. Radiat Res 14:213

Timmins NE, Nielsen LK (2009) Blood cell manufacture: current methods and future challenges. Trends Biotechnol 27:415–422

Timmins NE, Nielsen LK (2011) Manufactured RBC – rivers of blood, or an oasis in the desert? Biotechnol Adv 29:661–666

Timmins NE, Athanasas S, Gunther M, Buntine P, Nielsen LK (2011) Ultra-high-yield manufacture of red blood cells from hematopoietic stem cells. Tissue Eng Part C Methods 17:1131–1137

Tsuchida E, Sou K, Nakagawa A, Sakai H, Komatsu T, Kobayashi K (2009) Artificial oxygen carriers, hemoglobin vesicles and albumin-hemes, based on bioconjugate chemistry. Bioconjug Chem 20:1419–1440

Ubukawa K, Guo YM, Takahashi M, Hirokawa M, Michishita Y, Nara M, Tagawa H, Takahashi N, Komatsuda A, Nunomura W, Takakuwa Y, Sawada K (2012) Enucleation of human erythroblasts involves non-muscle myosin IIB. Blood 119:1036–1044

US Department of Health and Human Services (2011) Report of the US Department of Health and Human Services. The 2009 national blood collection and utilization survey report. US Department of Health and Human Services, Office of the Assistant Secretary for Health, 2011. US Department of Health and Human Services, Washington, DC

Vaziri H, Dragowska W, Allsopp RC, Thomas TE, Harley CB, Lansdorp PM (1994) Evidence for a mitotic clock in human hematopoietic stem-cells – loss of telomeric DNA with age. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 91:9857–9860

Vlaski M, Lafarge X, Chevaleyre J, Duchez P, Boiron JM, Ivanovic Z (2009) Low oxygen concentration as a general physiologic regulator of erythropoiesis beyond the EPO-related downstream tuning and a tool for the optimization of red blood cell production ex vivo. Exp Hematol 37:573–584

von Lindern M, Zauner W, Mellitzer G, Steinlein P, Fritsch G, Huber K, Lowenberg B, Beug H (1999) The glucocorticoid receptor cooperates with the erythropoietin receptor and c-Kit to enhance and sustain proliferation of erythroid progenitors in vitro. Blood 94:550–559

Wang LD, Wagers AJ (2011) Dynamic niches in the origination and differentiation of haematopoietic stem cells. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 12:643–655

Wang JCY, Doedens M, Dick JE (1996) Primitive human hematopoietic cells are enriched in cord blood compared to normal adult bone marrow or G-CSF-mobilized peripheral blood. Blood 88:2500–2500

World Health Organization (2011) Global database on blood safety report 2011. World Health Organization

Wu H, Klingmuller U, Acurio A, Hsiao JG, Lodish HF (1997) Functional interaction of erythropoietin and stem cell factor receptors is essential for erythroid colony formation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 94:1806–1810

Yakubov E, Rechavi G, Rozenblatt S, Givol D (2010) Reprogramming of human fibroblasts to pluripotent stem cells using mRNA of four transcription factors. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 394:189–193

Yu JY, Vodyanik MA, Smuga-Otto K, Antosiewicz-Bourget J, Frane JL, Tian S, Nie J, Jonsdottir GA, Ruotti V, Stewart R, Slukvin II, Thomson JA (2007) Induced pluripotent stem cell lines derived from human somatic cells. Science 318:1917–1920

Yusa K, Rad R, Takeda J, Bradley A (2009) Generation of transgene-free induced pluripotent mouse stem cells by the piggyBac transposon. Nat Methods 6:363–369

Chapter 6
Bioprocessing Challenges Associated with the Purification of Cellular Therapies

Benjamin D. Weil and Farlan S. Veraitch

Abstract An ever increasing number of cellular therapies are in development for the treatment of a wide variety of diseases. One of the major challenges facing the translation of whole cell products into licensed therapies is the development of efficient, scalable purification processes. Current devices struggle to provide high resolution separations whilst ensuring sufficient cellular recovery. The removal of soluble and intracellular contaminants during processing is largely mitigated with precedence upon upfront validation of all materials and supplies. However, with an increasing number of cellular products reaching clinical trials, stricter regulation and adherence to biotech safety standards will require the design of novel, built-for-purpose purification systems. The most significant developments have been within the microfluidics field, where intrinsic physical and biochemical cell properties are utilised to fabricate high purity, high yield systems. With current research pushing the boundaries of throughput and looking to integrate microsystems into upstream processing, a new era of cell purification systems, based on regulatory requirements instead of retrofitting available technology from similar industries, may be fast approaching.

Keywords Cellular therapy • Purification • Cell isolation • Soluble contaminants • Intracellular contaminants • Impurities • Cell bioprocessing • Downstream processing • Cell sorting • Stem cells • Regulation • Novel separation devices • Microsystem • Microfluidic • Apheresis • FACS • MACS

B.D. Weil • F.S. Veraitch (✉)
Department of Biochemical Engineering,
University College London,
Torrington Place, London WC1E 7JE, UK
e-mail: f.veraitch@ucl.ac.uk

M. Al-Rubeai, M. Naciri (eds.), *Stem Cells and Cell Therapy*, Cell Engineering 8,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-7196-3_6,

Abbreviations

ATPS	Aqueous Two-Phase Systems
CGMP	Current Good Manufacturing Practice
CGTP	Current Good Tissue Practice
CQAs	Critical Quality Attributes
CTCs	Circulating Tumour Cells
DEP	Dielectrophoresis
DEP-FFF	Dielectrophoretic Field-Flow Fractionation
DMSO	Dimethyl Sulfoxide
FACS	Fluorescent Activated Cell Sorting
FBS	Foetal Bovine Serum
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
GFP	Green Fluorescent Protein
GMP	Good Manufacturing Practice
GvHD	Graft versus Host Disease
HDE	Humanitarian Device Exception
hESCs	human Embryonic Stem Cells
HUD	Humanitarian Use Device
IND	Investigational New Drug application
LCM	Laser Capture Microdissection
mAb	monoclonal Antibody
MACS	Magnetic Activated Cell Sorting
mESCs	mouse Embryonic Stem Cells
MOFF	Multi-Orifice Flow Fractionation
MSCs	Mesenchymal Stem Cells
NCs	Nucleated Cells
PBPCs	Peripheral Blood Progenitor Cells
PDMS	Polydimethylsiloxane
PEG	Polyethylene Glycol
PMA	Pre-market Approval
QA	Quality Assurance
QC	Quality Control
RBC	Red Blood Cell
RPE	Retinal Pigment Epithelium
TRP	Tissue Reference Group
WBC	White Blood Cell

6.1 Introduction

Drug manufacture processes have been developed and refined over decades, hand-in-hand with regulatory bodies, to allow the creation of generic purification platforms. For example biopharmaceuticals based on recombinant protein production

frequently use a system comprising of three chromatography purification and polishing steps. For the production of clinical-grade material at commercially viable scales, techniques to remove viral and bacterial contaminants must be demonstrated and validated. Pharmaceuticals rely on harsh (usually pH dependent) viral inactivation steps, followed by nanofiltration to ensure viral removal (Yokoyama et al. 2004; Zhou et al. 2008). For cellular therapies, environmental conditions must operate within a much narrower bandwidth with cell viability, and consequently product efficacy, being paramount. Various instances of viral blood or respiratory infections following stem cell transplants have been reported (Yokoyama et al. 2004; Han et al. 2011; Liu et al. 2011a; Forest et al. 2011; Rynans et al. 2012; Busca et al. 2012). Similar risk factors exist for microbial contaminations. Large volume leukapheresis (purification) of peripheral blood stem cells was monitored over a 12 year period. Administration to patients demonstrated the transfer of microbial pathogens, with contamination through thawing and processing steps noted (Donmez et al. 2012).

The handling and manipulating of living material requires purification devices to maintain sterility, while operating with an environment which maintains biological viability. Intrinsic variation between the source of cellular material (from a cell bank, donor or autologous transplant) has led to unique biological, processing and engineering demands for cell therapies (see Fig. 6.1). Pluripotent cells require a directed differentiation towards a rare target cell type, from within a heterogeneous population (Serra et al. 2012). To identify and subsequently isolate the target cells, purity and process efficiency are vital due to low cell numbers. Therapies derived from blood constituents require a lower resolution separation, usually concentrating a cell type before intravenous administration. Maintaining sterility is key for these purification steps to ensure no foreign pathogens are introduced. Allogeneic donor material from a cell bank will be cryopreserved for storage and transportation. In this instance a further purification step to remove the cryopreservative is necessary. Due to the diverse purification concerns for different cell sources, few systems are designed for generic usage, with therapeutic purification strategies currently derived on an almost case-by-case basis.

Another challenge associated with cell purification is the cost, which varies greatly dependent on the process utilised (Seeger et al. 2007). Processing of autologous peripheral CD34-positive blood stem cells was assessed in three medical centres across America. The cost of pre-apheresis, the leukapheresis procedure followed by thawing, product assays and sterility testing was assessed (Meehan et al. 2000). Although the same procedure was used, the expenditure of each institution varied greatly, demonstrating the need for clarification and standardisation over cell therapy purification.

6.2 Purification Requirements

6.2.1 Removal of Cellular Contaminants

Due to their ability to differentiate into multiple cell types and proliferate extensively, stem cell based therapies have a range of explicit safety concerns specified

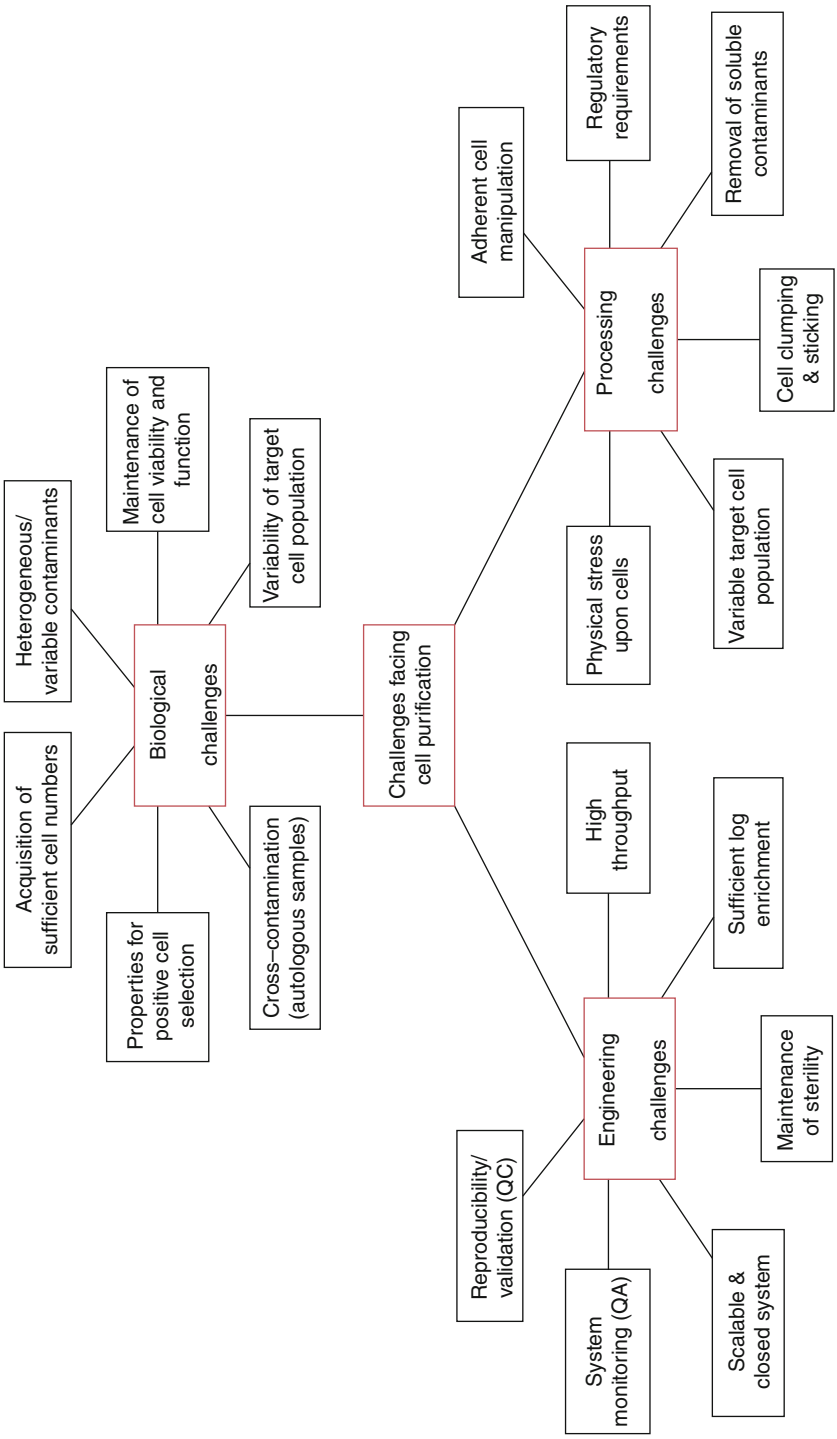


Fig. 6.1 Challenges associated with the purification of cellular therapies

Table 6.1 Specific burdens for cell-based products prior to human transplantation

Concern for cellular product	Assessment criteria for each concern
Product composition	• Individual cells types present
	Note: Product can contain more than one cell type and be classed as pure
	Relative cell proportions (analysis of marker expression)
	Cell viability
Product purity	• Key contaminants (e.g. undifferentiated stem cells)
	Note: The inability to detect a specific contaminant does not prove purity, safety studies in animal models are necessary
	Bacterial/viral release panel testing
Product potency	• In vitro testing of cellular functionality
	• Animal models

Adapted from Halme and Kessler (2006)

by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Key regulatory issues include the propensity for teratoma formation via undifferentiated or partially differentiated cells; the migration of cells from their intended transplantation site; elicited immunogenic responses and cellular impurities formed during differentiation protocols (Fink 2009). For GMP approval, quality control (QC) of cellular products must assess phenotype, functional activity, microbiological safety, and cell types present (Sensebé 2008). Quality assurance (QA) protocols are specific to each process, but general areas of interest for cellular products have been generated (see Table 6.1).

Autologous therapies have previously received greater lenience with regard to transplantation, as cells are sourced and returned to the same patient. However since 2006, the FDA has slowly trended towards tightening these guidelines (Freeman and Fuerst 2012). The Tissue Reference Group (TRG: an FDA-created panel to deal with the regulation of human cellular and tissue-based products) claimed that the autologous (bedside) separation of stem cells from adipose tissue, for either orthopaedic or breast reconstruction procedures, parallels the manufacture of a drug (Rodriguez 2012; Tissue Reference Group 2011). Tissue-based procedures which take place in the same operating session are currently exempt from FDA regulation, instead being controlled by medical professional societies. By classifying the procedure as a biologic, surgeons will have to submit an Investigational New Drug application (IND) to the FDA. This process is time consuming and expensive.

Core requirements for Current Good Tissue Practice (CGTP) centre on the prevention of communicable diseases being introduced or spread through treatment. This criteria is ensured through the screening and testing of critical quality attributes (CQAs). These CQAs include cellular identity – confirming presence of the cell population; potency – to ensure biological functionality is retained; purity – ensuring no unwanted cell types or residual impurities remain; and safety – to guarantee no pathogenic microorganisms or tumorigenic material is present (Carmen et al. 2012). More information regarding the regulation of cellular therapies has been published by the FDA and related sources (Fink 2009; Halme 2006; Burger 2003).

6.2.2 Removal of Soluble (or Intracellular) Contaminants

In addition to the removal of unwanted populations and cell debris, processing components and other external contaminant risks must be considered during purification. Supplements added during manufacture including growth factors, cryopreservatives, enzymatic solutions and serum must be removed before administration. Safety concerns over the introduction of endotoxin, bacterial, fungal, parasitic or viral contaminants must be addressed. Many process impurities such as host cell proteins are removed via chromatographic steps in biopharmaceuticals (Shukla et al. 2008). For cell therapies, instead of removing these contaminants during processing, upfront sourcing of GMP components is opted for. All materials used during manufacture must be purchased through regulatory approved suppliers, and validated for therapeutic usage. As a result, cell purification devices often only address extracellular contaminants (see Table 6.2). A complete buffer exchange is required to ensure soluble contaminant removal, with the buffer dilution volume dependent on purification demands. A compromise between wash steps (centrifugation) and the risk of cellular damage through shear or biological change must be made. Separating rare populations with low cell numbers exacerbates this requirement to mitigate excess washing. Cell losses of 20–30 % are expected with washing steps (Lemarie et al. 2005).

Viruses, Bacteria and Fungi

Preventing the transmission or introduction of communicable disease is the primary goal of regulator guidance. Viral contaminants present a significant challenge for cell therapies, with viral inactivation (via low pH treatment) impossible due to the need to maintain cell viability. Quality control combined with strict sourcing of material and process components is usually the required route. Detection systems now exist for bacterial and viral contaminants such as real-time PCR assays or immunomagnetic separation combined with functionalised quantum dots, which utilise fluorescent nanocrystals to detect specific contaminants (Liandris et al. 2011; Choi et al. 2009). These systems are cheap, robust and can be disposable (Cooney et al. 2012). It is also possible to utilise immunochromatographic strips (lateral flow tests) for the detection of viruses (Xiang and Li 2011). Multiple analytes can be tested simultaneously on the same strip, providing a fast response to any pathogen tested.

More recently novel cell isolation devices have been developed with virus removal in mind. Microfluidic platforms possess the ability to separate pathogens from human cell samples based on intrinsic cell and fluid properties, such as particle size-based diffusion (Zhao and Cheng 2011; Jung et al. 2011). Elsewhere, semi-automated high throughput devices have been designed to remove bacteria from blood samples (Wu et al. 2009). Over 80 % removal of fungal contaminants from whole blood has been demonstrated, with flow rates up to 20 ml/h (Yung et al. 2009). Similar techniques have been utilised for DNA isolation from whole blood,

Table 6.2 Breakdown of impurity removal from current cell separation techniques

	Contaminant to be removed											
	Extracellular		Soluble									
Cell separation procedure	Undesired cell populations + apoptotic cells	Cell debris	Extracellular protein (matrix/host cell proteins)	Trypsin/ collagenase	Serum	Viruses	Endotoxin	Bacteria	Cryopreservative (DMSO)	Xenogeneic proteins	Leachables	Growth factors
Density gradient centrifugation	✓[a]	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	✓	✓	✓	✓
Continuous flow fluidised bed (KSep)	×	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	✓	✓	✓	✓
Filtration	×	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	✓	✓	✓	✓
FACS	✓	✓	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
MACS	✓	✓	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Chromatography (Cryogels)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	✓	✓	✓	✓
Field-assisted separations	✓	✓	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Panning	✓[a]	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Manual dissection	✓	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

[a]Addition higher resolution cell purification steps (such as MACS) may follow

suggesting that if sufficient throughputs can be achieved, soluble contaminants could be efficiently removed via microfluidic platforms (Wiesinger-Mayr et al. 2011). The combination of pathogen and cell purification has been achieved with a microfluidic device, operating to remove microbes as well as platelets and leukocytes from whole blood (Wei Hou et al. 2012). The device operates at 1 ml/h with over 80 % removal of pathogens and inflammatory cells.

Mycoplasma

The most notorious and prevalent external contaminant is often mycoplasma (Armstrong et al. 2010). Mycoplasma is a type of bacteria which does not contain a cell wall. The first noted contamination of human cell cultures was in 1956 (Robinson and Wichelhausen 1956). Infections present a significant challenge to the cell therapy industry today as Mycoplasma tends to proliferate at a slow pace in cell culture making infections difficult to detect. As a result, these properties can lead to facility-wide infections. Nucleic acid-based detection platforms exist to identify infected cells (allowing batch quality control testing), but the only real solution to prevent the spread of mycoplasma lies with well defined, characterised processes and adherence to CGTP (Lawrence et al. 2010). This is achieved by ensuring all process components are obtained through validated vendors and stored correctly (as detailed in the Code of Federal Regulations – FDA 2001).

Serum

Foetal Bovine Serum (FBS) is commonly used as a nutritional supplement for cell culture media (Kuznetsov et al. 2000). Although occurrences are rare and often only noted after long-term observation, immune reactions can occur in patients who have received transplanted cells which have been cultured in FBS-rich media (Phinney and Prockop 2007; Selvaggi et al. 1997). In addition, animal derived products present in the manufacturing process invite the risk of viral, fungal or bacterial contamination through the use of livestock (Focus on Alternatives 2009). Attempts to mitigate the serum demand from cell culture have demonstrated success, with various serum-free protocols now available (Amit et al. 2004; Ricci-Vitiani et al. 2007; Thomas et al. 2009). However, purification systems must be able to efficiently and reproducibly remove serum. An added complication is the retention of xenogeneic proteins from FBS in the cytoplasm of cells, removal of which would result in the loss of cell viability and functionality (Spees et al. 2004). Even with numerous drawbacks, FBS containing media remains a ubiquitous supplement for cell culture and is employed in research laboratories around the world, due to FDA approval for human clinical products. Further discussion with regard to the use of serum in clinical applications is necessary, with a predicted move towards serum-free media for cell therapies.

Cryopreservatives (DMSO)

Cryopreservation expands the commercial opportunity of cell therapies by permitting independent sites for collection, manufacture and administration. By extending the shelf life, product safety is improved during transportation and storage (Hubel 2011). Various side effects have been correlated with the presence of the cryopreservative dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) in clinical studies, leading to the conclusion that removal is necessary before infusion of cellular products. In transfusion studies of autologous peripheral blood progenitor cells (PBPC) without DMSO removal, 25.25 % of patients presented side effects (Donmez et al. 2007). Side effects ranged from hypertension and lung oedema to nausea, vomiting and dizziness. A correlation between DMSO concentration, infusion volume and instances of patient side effects was established. To confirm this assessment, studies into the prevalence of side effects following a (dilution) wash step have demonstrated a significant decrease in the number and severity of cases (Lemarie et al. 2005). Furthermore, wash steps have been shown to illicit negligible impact upon cell efficacy (Nagamura-Inoue et al. 2003). Various wash buffers are used to dilute the sample in stages to avoid cell osmotic shock, with the process lasting around an hour (Akkök et al. 2009). Various new microfluidic platforms are in development which aim to increase throughput while demonstrating efficient removal, without affecting cell recovery or viability (Mata et al. 2008). The FDA currently defines DMSO as a class 3 solvent in ICH Q3C, with an upper limit of 50 mg/day recommended dosage. In practice, regulators allow therapies to include up to a gram per kilogram per day (FDA 2011b). With mounting evidence against its injection, especially in solid tissue where diffusion is limited, regulation regarding safe dosage levels are expected to tighten.

6.3 Existing Cell Purification Systems

Operational characteristics of commercial cell separation devices vary greatly dependent on the method of separation and cell type isolated (see Table 6.3). The most commonly used cell purification method is apheresis – the gold standard for blood derived therapies (Szczepiorkowski et al. 2010). One alternative is filtration systems, which provide low shear separations for soluble and cellular contaminant removal (Aoki et al. 2004). For the isolation of rare cells within a heterogeneous population (such as progenitor cell purifications) fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS) is the most established method (Loken and Herzenberg 1975). For clinical separations of the same nature, magnetic-activated cell sorting (MACS) is the most common technique, with the most frequently used device being Miltenyi Biotec's CliniMACS (Grützkau and Radbruch 2010; Ringhoffer et al. 2004).

Table 6.3 Operational characteristics of commercial cell separations currently being applied in the cell therapy field

Clinical cell separation								
Device	Manufacturer	Method of separation	Cell type isolated	Processing time	Purity (%)	Viability (%)	Process yield (%)	Reference
Isolex 300(i)	Baxter	MACS	CD34+ cells	2–3 h	90	>92	25–51	FDA (1999), Gryn et al. (2002)
CliniMACS	Miltenyi Biotec	MACS	Haematopoietic progenitors/ Mesenchymal stromal cells/T-cells/Dendritic cells	2.5–3 h	78–90	78–99	15.7–43.4	Miltenyi et al. (1990), Miltenyi Biotec (2004)
CEPRATE® SC	CellPro	Continuous flow Immunoadsorption	CD34+ cells from autologous PBPC	<1 h	72	36.6	41.4	de Wynter et al. (1995)
Sepax®	Biosafe	Density gradient base separation	Mononuclear cells from bone marrow	35 min	–	80.5	83	Aktas et al. (2008), Henderson et al. (2010)
CELLector flask	Applied Immune Science	Antibody panning selection	Broad range of cell types	2–3 h	32.5	15.1	17	de Wynter et al. (1995)
SmartPReP 2 BMAC™	Harvest Technologies Corporation	Centrifugation	Autologous stem cells from bone marrow aspirate	<15 min	–	–	74.6+13.7	Harvest Technologies (2011)
COBE® 2991 Cell Processor	CaridianBCT	Centrifugation	Autologous stem cells from bone marrow aspirate	14–28 min	85–90	98	47	Olack et al. (1999)
Elutra® Cell Separation system	CaridianBCT	Counter-flow elutriation	Monocyte enrichment of apheresis products	1 h	13.6–79.5	93.8+2	79–100	Gulen et al. (2008)
Celution 800/ CRS	Cytori	Real-time cell processing	Adipose-derived regenerative cells	1–3 h	60	89.2+1.1	–	Lin et al. (2008)
FACS IV flow cytometer	Becton Dickinson Biosciences	FACS	Broad range of cell types	2–4 h	73.6	15.5	39.2	de Wynter et al. (1995)

Note: Purity, viability and yields are based on different cell and culture conditions as detailed in each reference. The percentages may vary based on the cell type isolated and experimental methods tested for each device

6.3.1 Antibody-Dependent Purification Techniques

Current strategies for the separation of progenitor or 'tissue-specific' stem cells are dominated by immunoseparation techniques (Wobus and Boheler 2005). A primary, target cell specific, antibody is incubated with the sample before a secondary antibody (possessing the ability to be isolated via a physical characteristic i.e. magnetism or fluorescence) is bound to the primary. Alternatively the primary can be directly conjugated onto magnetic beads or a fluorescent tag to eliminate the requirement of a secondary antibody.

A move towards affinity-based, positive separation has occurred through the discovery of specific surface antigens for target cell types. One example is the CD34 antigen which is expressed by haematopoietic cells. Selection of CD34-positive cells is commonly used for the purification of blood samples prior to transplantation (Berenson et al. 1988; Civin et al. 1984). This technique is now utilised in most bone marrow, cord blood or peripheral cell derived therapies, as well as in tests for diabetes, graft versus host disease and myocardial infarction (Phinney and Prockop 2007). Nine clinical trials in 2011 alone used CD34-positive selection of hematopoietic progenitor cells (Bersenev 2012). Affinity separations provide higher selectivity than centrifugation-based protocols (as discussed in 3.3) and have expedited the clinical translation of cellular therapies where rare cell types must be isolated (Wognum and Eaves 2003). Many other cellular products have been limited by the lack of a specific surface antigen with desired expression characteristics. Isolation of the target cell population is reliant upon the discovery of unique surface markers, to provide the purity required for clinical application.

Antibody panning is the simplest antibody-mediated cell separation technique. A flask is coated with a specific antibody which allows a corresponding antigen on the target cell population to bind (Morecki et al. 1990). Non adherent, unwanted cells are washed from the flask, before the target population is eluted via physical agitation. A low purity, around 50 %, is produced in comparison to current methods, but the fundamental strategy of cell antibody-mediated attachment was proven viable (de Wynter et al. 1995).

Immunoadsorption has also been used in scalable batch and continuous column-based devices (Baran et al. 1982; Mahara and Yamaoka 2010). Cells remain label-free through processing, and systems are cheaper than FACS and MACS. Column clogging and challenges with cell:bead interactions have limited the success of systems. Cryogels have also been used in column cell separations (Dainiak et al. 2007; Kumar and Bhardwaj 2008). The cryogel (a monolith structure, created from one solid piece of material) contains many channels running through the column which can capture cells via affinity, charge or hydrophobic interaction. Monolith columns are commercially available up to 8 L in size, with channel diameters greater than 30 μm diameter (Jungbauer and Hahn 2008). Low recoveries and concern about cell damage from shear force and pressure have restricted their clinical application.

The most common, established methods for separating rare cell types from a heterogeneous population are FACS and MACS (Amos et al. 2012). Purification via flow cytometry (or FACS) sorts cells based on their light scattering properties and

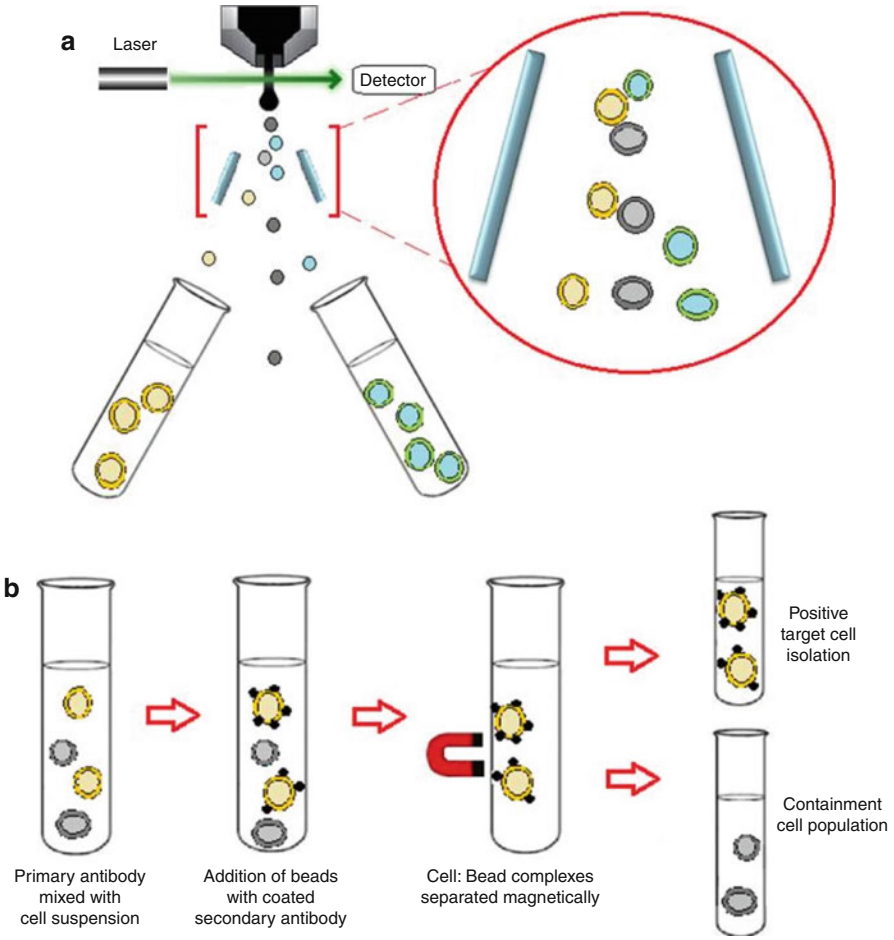


Fig. 6.2 (**a**) Fluorescence activated cell sorting: target cells of interest are tagged with an antibody which has been linked to a fluorescent marker. As the sample passes through a laser, the light will excite the fluorescent marker resulting in light emission. This interaction is analysed to determine the target cell population. An electrical charge is applied to cells types to allow sorting into different collection tubes. (**b**) Magnetic activated cell sorting: the sample is incubated with an antibody which binds specifically to the target cells of interest. Paramagnetic beads, coated in a secondary antibody capable of binding to the first, are then introduced to the sample. The cell:bead complexes are held in place with a magnetic field while unbound material is washed away. Alternatively, beads coated in an antibody which binds specifically to the target cells can be utilised to mitigate the requirement of a secondary antibody, and can be detached from cells after processing

fluorescence (Jensen 1989). The process sample is mechanically separated into a single cell suspension, before each cell is interrogated by a laser. A positive or negative charge is applied to each cell to facilitate isolation of phenotype-specific cells, labelled with a fluorescent marker (see Fig. 6.2a). A background and future look into the uses of FACS has been reviewed by Stanford University (Herzenberg et al. 2002).

Due to the ability to sort cells based on multiple parameters while achieving high purities, FACS has many applications in the biotechnology industry (Mattanovich and Borth 2006). Although single cell suspensions are sorted at rates of 10,000–20,000 cells per second, FACS is usually confined to research or analytical purposes. The capital costs to purchase the machine and (as with all immunoseparations) the high cost of the antibodies, sourced from a CGMP supplier, must be considered. However, at present no other non-antibody-mediated methods for the separation of rare populations which produce equally high target cell-fold purities, have been established.

Due to the lack of a unique marker for most cell types, some successful clinical purification strategies combine positive and negative selection (Grützkau and Radbruch 2010; Wognum and Eaves 2003). Negative selection defines procedures which remove unwanted cell types from the product. Specific contaminants which are known to cause therapeutic concern, such as undifferentiated cell types from stem cell derived transplants, can be purged via antigen specific selection (Thomas et al. 1999). The first positive clinical scale purification of CD34-positive T cells was the CEPRATE SC, created by Cellpro. Stem cells, labelled with biotinylated anti-CD34 antibodies, were bound to avidin coated beads. After a wash step to remove unbound cells, physical agitation was used to elute the target population. However, this method lacked the purity or recovery to operate as an efficient and scalable procedure. A T cell removal up to three-log was achieved, with a CD34-positive cell yield between 31 and 79 % (Handgretinger et al. 1997; Farag 2002). The product purity was insufficient to mitigate an immunological reaction with Graft versus Host Disease (GvHD) often noted post-transplantation (Hassan et al. 1996).

More recently MACS has combined antibody-mediated cell separations with paramagnetic beads. The primary antibody is incubated with the cell sample, before a secondary antibody immobilised onto paramagnetic beads is added. A magnetic field retains the cell:bead complexes while unbound material is eluted (see Fig. 6.2b). The Isolex 300i from Baxter was approved by the FDA in 1999 for the separation of CD34-positive cells from autologous peripheral blood progenitor cells for transplantation, following myeloablative therapy in cancer patients (FDA 1999). Currently the device can only be used off-protocol (at the discretion of physicians) for indications other than the FDA approved basis. The cells are mixed with a mouse anti-CD34 monoclonal antibody (mAb) in a batch system, before the addition of sheep anti-mouse IgG coated paramagnetic beads (Dynabeads M-450). Unbound cells are then washed away. The target CD34-positive cells captured on the beads are held within the device by a magnetic field. A peptide which competes with the primary antibody is used to elute bound cells. A range of 3.5–4.8 log depletion is achieved with a yield between 41 and 69 % (Martín-Henao et al. 2001; Farag 2002). The Isolex 300i software also allow for simultaneous negative contaminant removal with a positive selection step. Combining both positive and negative selection increased T cell log depletion by an average of 5.1 (Martín-Henao et al. 2001).

The addition of immuno-paramagnetic beads has greatly increased the purity of CD34-positive cell separations. A comparison between the Isolex 300i® and CEPRATE® devices resulted in final purities of 93 and 61.5 % respectively

(Björkstrand et al. 1999). Similar inefficient cell recovery was noted in both devices, with neither yielding over 50 % of CD34-positive cells.

Another competing immunomagnetic selection device is CliniMACS from Miltenyi Biotec. The CliniMACS device operates via incubation of anti-CD34 antibody-coated paramagnetic nanobeads (50–100 nm diameter) with the cell suspension. Bound cells are then retained via flow through a tube which contains a ferromagnetic core. This core is magnetised via a permanent magnet to capture cell:bead complexes, while permitting wash steps to remove unwanted material. Elution is achieved by removal of the magnetic field. A four to five log depletion of T cells can be expected, with a recovery of 71 % (McNiece et al. 1997; Schumm et al. 1999). Similarly to the Isolex 300i, significant cell loss during processing due to the limited selectivity of batch systems, cellular loss during washing steps and adherence to tubing and other materials presents a major problem for therapeutic function. Additionally in both systems, cell recoveries vary significantly batch-to-batch, with yields between 30 and 90 % noted (Björkstrand et al. 1999).

In September 2011, Miltenyi Biotec submitted a humanitarian device exemption (HDE) application for the isolation of CD34-positive cells from heterogeneous haematological cell populations (FDA 2011a). A humanitarian use device (HUD) must treat fewer than 4,000 individuals per year, with no other instrument available to perform the role. In this instance, clinical data which would demonstrate efficacy for a pre-market approval (PMA) application is not required. Currently 162 CliniMACS devices are distributed between 97 institutions in the US (Johansen 2011).

A common trend through MACS devices is the limitation of cellular recovery. Various factors affecting CD34-positive cell isolations from apheresis products have been investigated, including the variability of monocyte selection and constituent concentrations (red blood cells and platelets), as well as the initial percentage of CD34-positive target cells. The quantity of red blood cell and platelet contaminants were shown to have a negligible impact upon yield, suggesting that the wash steps in this instance adequately remove insoluble debris (Gryn et al. 2002). Most notable was the impact of the initial number of CD34-positive cells. Increasing the initial number significantly reduced the yield and was associated with an increase in purity (Gryn et al. 2002). This, in addition to the large variation of yields measured, suggests that the limiting factor for MACS devices is the binding efficiency of cells to beads. Currently all magnetic purification systems are performed in batch operating systems which does not allow for the high level of control and selectivity which can be achieved using column systems (Arnold et al. 1985; Roy and Pai 1999).

As well as concerns over cell:bead binding efficiency, other investigations into the therapeutic feasibility of MACS are on-going. A study evaluating the removal of pluripotent (teratoma forming) cells from an embryonic stem cell derived product, found that an estimated 31 steps would be required to achieve a purity of 10^{-1} undifferentiated cells per dosage (Schriebl et al. 2010). The highest selectivity available at present is affinity-based magnetic cell sorting, however, new engineering approaches are required to increase the target cell yield. By combining positive and negative selection techniques product purities could be increased, but running multiple runs is impractical at present due to cell losses.

6.3.2 Fluorescent Tagging

If no distinct physical feature or unique surface protein can be found, fluorescent tagging has been shown to provide an effective purification platform for selection via intracellular gene expression. Green fluorescent protein (GFP) tagging of target populations has been used to provide 'proof of principle' studies for progenitor cell transplantations. One common use is to identify a target cell type from within a heterogeneous population, derived through the directed differentiation of stem cells (such as CK19-positive insulin-producing cells derived from mouse embryonic stem cells (mESC)) (Naujok et al. 2008). Fluorescence provides a method to easily identify the required population for extraction via FACS, when no specific surface marker is present for alternative affinity purification techniques.

Lentiviral vectors are often used for stable gene delivery in both in vitro and in vivo application. However, for clinically relevant processes, genetically modifying cells presents an additional regulatory burden, such as with induced pluripotent cells (Schambach et al. 2010). A risk of viral vector shuffling, resulting in the transduction and consequent transplantation of undesired cell types, presents a significant challenge (Blömer et al. 2005). Additionally viral vectors used for GFP tagging have been shown to remain within cell suspensions, even after extensive washing (Blömer et al. 2005). As a result, tag-less cell sorting methodologies have been developed such as fractionation or immunological separation techniques (Roda et al. 2009a, b; Braakman et al. 2008).

6.3.3 Physical Separation of Target Cell Population

Gradient density separation, exploiting physical variations in size and density between cell populations, is frequently used as a low resolution isolation step for processing whole blood, cord blood or bone marrow derived material. Various indications from haematological to neurological or autoimmune treatments use an apheresis purification step. Density gradient media, such as Ficoll or iodixanol-based media, is often added to cell suspensions for processing, which can achieve two to five fold concentration (Wognum and Eaves 2003). Fractionation of whole blood by apheresis is exploited to isolate buffy coat (the fraction of blood containing white blood cells and platelets), with various saline wash steps integrated to remove the gradient density solution (Fadel et al. 2011).

Tissue derived cells, such as mesenchymal stem cells isolated from adipose tissue, are enzymatically dissociated before filtration, washing and centrifugation steps (Fadel et al. 2011). Devices, such as Cytori's Celution 800/CRS, now automate the clinical extraction and processing of adipose-derived stem cells in a sterile, closed system. This includes a wash step and subsequent centrifugation, allowing supernatant removal after pellet formation.

The success of apheresis devices is indicative to the simplicity of the process. The procedure is fast, relatively cheap and can operate in a closed, point-of-care environment. Separation is reliant upon variation between cell size and density to

create clear bands of material post-centrifugation. The separations are fairly crude, only removing select bands of cellular waste, and often performed in combination with higher resolution purification steps such as MACS.

Filtration is the main competitor to gradient separation at present. With the ability for continuous operation, a wider range of materials and scales can be processed (Choi et al. 2007). Furthermore, filtration devices are commonly closed, disposable systems which do not generate aerosols (Hibino et al. 2011). Various novel microfluidic devices using filtration have been developed recently (see Table 6.4 and Chap. 4).

Table 6.4 Novel microsystems utilising different intrinsic cell or affinity properties for research-grade cell separations

Method of separation	Cell type isolated	Throughput	Purity (%)	Reference
Microbeads coating CTCs to allow Continuous size-based isolation	CTCs from peripheral blood samples	–	–	Hughes et al. (2012b), Lin et al. (2012)
E-selectin and antibody coated microfluidic device	CTCs from buffy coat samples of patients diagnosed with metastatic cancer	–	–	Hughes et al. (2012a)
Alcohol-dispersed elecrospun magnetic nanofibers	Primary CD3+ T lymphocytes	–	–	Kim et al. (2012)
Continuous microfluidic margination	Microbes, platelets and leukocytes from whole blood	~1 ml/h per channel	80/90 % removal of bacteria & inflammation cellular components	Hou et al. (2012)
Particle deformation in a continuous microfluidic channel	Platelet isolation from diluted whole blood	–	99.9 %	Nam et al. (2012)
Microscale vortices isolating cells based on diameter	CTCs spiked in blood	7.5×10(6) cells/s [ml/min scale]	–	Hur et al. (2011)
Biomimetic postcapillary expansions	NCs from whole blood	5 nl/s	94±4.5 %	Jain and Munn (2011)
Porous membrane in a microfluidic device	Separating whole blood samples into constituents	–	99.9 %	Wei et al. (2011)

Table 6.4 (continued)

Method of separation	Cell type isolated	Throughput	Purity (%)	Reference
Pinched flow dynamics (size-based separation)	CTCs spiked in blood	~10(8) cells/min	>80 % cell recovery	Bhagat et al. (2011)
Combination of MOFF and DEP	CTCs spiked in blood	126 µl/min flow rate	RBC removal – 99.24 % WBC removal – 94.23 %	Moon et al. (2011)
Non-contact acoustic cell trapping in disposable glass capillaries	Aspirating, trapping and dispensing red blood cells	–	–	Hammarström et al. (2010)
Two-phase laminar flow in a microfluidic chip	Leukocyte and erythrocyte cells from whole blood	2 µl/min	–	Tsukamoto et al. (2009)
Membrane antigen aptamers	CTC cells from peripheral blood	2.5 mm/s (29 min with 1 ml volume)	90 % of LNCaP cells (prostate cancer cell line)	(Dharmasiri et al. 2009)
Continuous flow ribbon-like capillary device	MSCs from epithelial cells	30 min	Near 100 %	Roda et al. (2009a, b)
DEP-FFF	Stem cell enrichment from adipose tissue suspension	–	–	Vykoukal et al. (2008)
Microfluidic device with mAbs covalently attached	CTC isolation from whole blood	–	–	Adams et al. (2008)
Cell-capture microtubes coated with adhesion molecules	Haematopoietic stem and progenitor cells	–	16–20 % CD34+ cell purity	Narasipura et al. (2008), Wojciechowski et al. (2008)
LCM	Isolation of rare cell types from tissue sections	–	–	Li et al. (2008)
3D mammalian cell separator biochip based on cell deformability	Non-invasive separation of heterogeneous populations	2,800 cells/min	–	Choudhury et al. (2012)

Aqueous two-phase systems (ATPS) have been utilised for low specificity recovery and primary purification operations. When two incompatible aqueous solutions are mixed together, they form two clear phases. The biphasic system can be composed of either polymer-polymer or polymer-salt formations. The most commonly used polymer is dextran and polyethylene glycol (PEG) (Diamond and Hsu 1990). Cells or macromolecules can then be partitioned into either phase (or between the liquid:liquid interface) dependent on size, net charge and hydrophobicity (Albertsson 1970). Affinity ATPS has demonstrated recovery of CD34-positive cells with a 75 % yield and 80 % purity (Kumar et al. 2001). Two-phase flow has also been shown in microfluidic chips, separating leukocytes and erythrocytes from whole blood at 2 μl/min (Tsukamoto et al. 2009).

For certain applications, manual dissection may be acceptable with no requirement for larger, more complicated purification systems. If a distinct morphology can be noted for target cell populations, phase contrast images can be used to identify and subsequently isolate cells. If this criterion can be met, a cheap, highly selective method is available for separations. Manual dissociation has been used for a number of controlled differentiations from pluripotent or multipotent cells, when a distinct morphology is observed. Retinal pigmented epithelium (RPE) cell transplantation to treat dry Age-Related Macular Degeneration (AMD), such as the on-going clinical trials with Advanced Cell Technology (ACT), uses a manual isolation. Pigmented cells are selected via a stereomicroscope and a monolayer, established through enzymatic dissociation with trypsin or collagenase (Klimanskaya 2006). Another example of manual dissociation is the separation of cardiomyocytes derived from pluripotent stem cell, where beating clusters of cells can be observed and isolated (Shinozawa et al. 2012). Laser microdissection can be utilised to dissociate smaller or fluorescently tagged populations (Bonner et al. 1997). Accurate, relatively gentle separations can be achieved, but high levels of technical training and expertise are required to operate the instrument. Furthermore, issues with scalability and equipment costs still remain. Recently more commercial laser dissection instruments have been created which reduce the once significant capital cost (Hanson et al. 2011).

If no notable visual distinction can be identified within a population, other physical dissociation techniques are available. Raman spectroscopy uses the principle of cell polarisation to discriminate between populations, based on visible or near infrared light resonance (Long 1977). Instead of MACS or FACS, where indirect interrogations of externally labelled cells are carried out, Raman spectroscopy measures a direct, intrinsic cell signal. The interaction between cells and monochromatic light from a laser results in a shift of energy states, or excitation, which is referred to as inelastic scattering or Raman scattering (Kneipp et al. 1997) (see Fig. 6.3). To date, Raman activated cell sorting (RACS) has been integrated into fluidic platforms with proof of concept established (Lau et al. 2008). Disadvantages with this technique include low throughput, labour intensive processing and extensive operator training requirements. A more detailed report on the uses of Raman spectroscopy for cell sorting and imaging has been created by the Kroto Research Institute in Sheffield (Li et al. 2012).

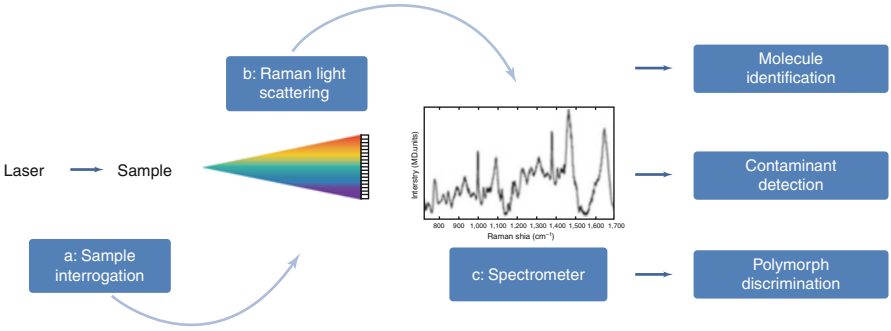


Fig. 6.3 Raman spectroscopy: monochromatic light from a laser interacts with a sample (**a**). Photons are absorbed and re-emitted at an altered frequency as the molecules are excited (**b**). This shift in frequency is called the Raman Effect. Scattered light is focused with a lens, before a spectrometer is used to create a Raman spectrum for the sample (**c**). The spectrum can be used to determine cell types in situ, detect contaminants present, or identify a chemical compound's polymorph (crystalline structure)

Another physical separation method is adhesion, such as the isolation of human mesenchymal stem cells by their adherence to plastic (Kassem 2004). A purification combining Percoll gradients with cell culture has shown rat foetal liver cells could be separated with a purity of 95 % (Liu et al. 2011b). Limitations to adherent processes include time and labour dependence, as well as frequently requiring further processing steps (Tondreau et al. 2004).

6.4 Novel Systems

6.4.1 Future Trends in Cell Purification

The broadest area of new development for cell purification is within the microfluidic field. Many novel devices for the isolation of rare cell populations and removal of pathogenic materials have been developed in microscale systems. Microsystems significantly reduce cell losses, while allowing for automation and minimising contamination risks (Dharmasiri et al. 2010). By assessing recently accepted patent applications (accumulated through Google Patents) for cell separation devices, microfluidic operations such as filtration and fractionation were shown to comprise 40 % of patents. Patents relating to current clinical cell separations devices, such as MACS, FACS and apheresis, totalled to only 31 %. This data agrees with the hypothesis that fewer clinical devices exist for common purification techniques and predominantly, new development is within the microfluidic field.

6.4.2 *Novel Cell Separation Devices*

Devices which produce high purities in addition to high cellular recovery tend to suffer from issues with low throughput and scale. As an analytical technique, microfluidic platforms now exist with the capacity to isolate rare cell populations for diagnostic or therapeutic monitoring applications (Plouffe et al. 2012). Although microfluidic devices sort cells at a slower rate than FACS and other methods, the flexibility bestowed through laminar flow allows cells to be accurately isolated by intrinsic physical or biochemical properties. Lab-on-chip devices are fabricated out of polydimethylsiloxane (PDMS), creating closed system, disposable devices to separate small volumes of cell material. Integration with existing devices, such as in situ imaging instruments, has greatly increased the clinical feasibility (Li et al. 2012). With research focusing on increasing the throughput of microsystems, feasible alternatives to centrifugation and other clinically utilised devices are being developed (see Table 6.4).

One limitation to cell isolation is the method to identify the desired cell population for removal. A novel approach to compete with antibody-dependent separations now exists through the use of aptamers (Guo et al. 2008; Nery et al. 2009). Aptamers are nucleic acids which can target specific biomarkers which are often inaccessible to antibodies. The ability for greater molecular recognition, due to their small, flexible structure, complements microsystem designs with distinct flow channels for cell sorting (Dharmasiri et al. 2009).

Label-free cell sorts have also been developed, such as field flow fractionation (FFF) or dielectrophoresis (DEP). Both take advantage of morphological or biological differences to separate cells based on variable cell density, size or shape. FFF operates by an applied field, perpendicular to the direction of flow which results in differential flow dynamics for cell populations. Elution time can be correlated to the complexity (density) of cellular material. Instead of separation via flow, DEP captures or directs cells by applying a non-uniform electric field across microfluidic channels (Vykoukal et al. 2008). The force experienced by cells is dependent on cell polarisation. Slight variations in intracellular constituents of cells can be utilised to generate a polarisation gradient. Field-dependent cell sorting has often been viewed as an analytical scale technology, however, microscale separations can now operate up to 1 ml/min (Hou et al. 2012). Applications for DEP also include non-viable and bacterial contaminants (Karumanchi and Doddamane 2002). For the small volumes required for most cell therapies, especially autologous treatments, these novel label-free physiology-based separations provide a cheap, efficient alternative to FACS processing. Other label-free separation techniques include: cell margination (Wei Hou et al. 2012), deformation (Choudhury et al. 2012), and size (Bhagat et al. 2011).

6.5 Concluding Remarks

At present, purification devices for cellular therapies are still in their infancy, encompassing a wide breadth of different challenges dependent on source material, physical cell characteristics and specific formulation requirements. The selection of

purification system is vital to ensure success of therapies. Although a diverse range of both antibody-dependent and physical separations are available at commercial scales, challenges still exist with each technique that limit a gold standard system which fulfils all purification requirements. General limitations include: low selectivity; low cellular recovery; the risk of cell damage and biological instability; limited throughput and difficulties maintaining sterility. At present, cell purification systems are often retrofitted around existing technology, most utilising centrifugation-based separation. Apheresis systems are one of the most widely used devices to separate constituents from whole blood. Procedures are fast and relatively cheap but separation is crude and further processing is often required. Affinity-based technology such as FACS or MACS provides higher resolutions, however, the lack of unique surface markers restrict clinical application. Furthermore, few systems address soluble or intracellular contaminants, with additional wash procedures necessary (such as for the removal of DMSO). A shift towards purification systems designed around regulatory specification is a foreseeable outcome of these challenges. New engineering approaches are being pursued to create closed system, high throughput processes. Microsystems combine fluid flow properties with intrinsic biophysical cell characteristics, which enable high resolution, automated devices. With a dense field of development, the possibility to integrate cell culture, processing (such as a differentiation step), purification and formulation into one system is looking more feasible. Miltenyi Biotec's CliniMACS Prodigy looks to fully integrate an automated closed system, which can standardise cell manufacture. The device combines a cell culture chamber (also capable of running other cell protocols such as differentiation), a centrifuge for washing and fractionation steps, and their own MACS system for target cell isolation. With recent improvements in cell culturing techniques, such as suspension culture of adherent cell lines (Steiner et al. 2010; Larijani et al. 2011) and large scale production using micro-carriers (Alfred et al. 2011), the demand on purification is increasing. Consequently a consideration of the whole bioprocess is required, with integrated microfluidic systems currently presenting the most feasible solution.

Acknowledgements Don Wellings (SpheriTech, UK); Sarah Callens (Exmoor Pharma Concepts, UK); Daniel Bracewell; Rui Tostões (Both University College London, UK). Ben Weil would like to thank the EPSRC and SpheriTech for funding his EngD studies.

References

Adams AA, Okagbare PI, Feng J, Hupert ML, Patterson D, Göttert J, McCarley RL, Nikitopoulo D, Murphy MC, Soper SA (2008) Highly efficient circulating tumor cell isolation from whole blood and label-free enumeration using polymer-based microfluidics with an integrated conductivity sensor. J Am Chem Soc 130(27):8633–8641

Akkök CA, Holte MR, Tangen JM, Ostenstad B, Bruserud O (2009) Hematopoietic engraftment of dimethyl sulfoxide-depleted autologous peripheral blood progenitor cells. Transfusion 49(2): 354–361

Aktas M, Radke TF, Strauer BE, Wernet P, Kogler G (2008) Separation of adult bone marrow mononuclear cells using the automated closed separation system Sepax. Cytotherapy 10(2): 203–211

Albertsson PA (1970) Partition of cell particles and macromolecules in polymer two-phase systems. Adv Protein Chem 24:309–341
Alfred R, Taiani JT, Krawetz RJ, Yamashita A, Rancourt DE, Kallos MS (2011) Large-scale production of murine embryonic stem cell-derived osteoblasts and chondrocytes on microcarriers in serum-free media. Biomaterials 32(26):6006–6016
Amit M, Shariki C, Margulets V, Itskovitz-Eldor J (2004) Feeder layer- and serum-free culture of human embryonic stem cells. Biol Reprod 70(3):837–845
Amos PJ, Cagavi Bozkulak E, Qyang Y (2012) Methods of cell purification: a critical juncture for laboratory research and translational science. Cells Tissues Organs 195(1–2):26–40
Aoki M, Yasutake M, Murohara T (2004) Derivation of functional endothelial progenitor cells from human umbilical cord blood mononuclear cells isolated by a novel cell filtration device. Stem Cells 22(6):994–1002
Armstrong SE, Mariano JA, Lundin DJ (2010) The scope of mycoplasma contamination within the biopharmaceutical industry. Biologicals 38(2):211–213
Arnold FH, Blanch HW, Wilke CR (1985) Analysis of affinity separations II: the characterization of affinity columns by pulse techniques. Chem Eng J 30(2):B25–B36
Baran MM, Allen DM, Russell SR, Scheetz ME 2nd, Monthony JF (1982) Cell sorting using a universally applicable affinity chromatography matrix: solid-phase anti-fluorescein isothiocyanate antibody. J Immunol Methods 53(3):321–334
Berenson RJ, Andrews RG, Bensinger WI, Kalamasz D, Knitter G, Buckner CD, Bernstein ID (1988) Antigen CD34+ marrow cells engraft lethally irradiated baboons. J Clin Invest 81(3): 951–955
Bersenev A (2012) Cell therapy clinical trials in 2011. Cell trials – current trends in cell therapy [Blog] 04 January. Available at: http://hematopoiesis.info/2012/01/04/cell-therapy-trials-2011/. Accessed 23 Mar 2012
Bhagat AA, Hou HW, Li LD, Lim CT, Han J (2011) Pinched flow coupled shear-modulated inertial microfluidics for high-throughput rare blood cell separation. Lab Chip 11(11):1870–1878
Björkstrand B, Sundman-Engberg B, Christensson B, Kumlien G (1999) A controlled comparison of two different clinical grade devices for CD34+ cell selection of autologous blood stem cell grafts. J Hematother 8(1):75–80
Blömer U, Gruh I, Witschel H, Haverich A, Martin U (2005) Shuttle of lentiviral vectors via transplanted cells in vivo. Gene Ther 12(1):67–74
Bonner RF, Emmert-Buck M, Cole K, Pohida T, Chuaqui R, Goldstein S, Liotta LA (1997) Laser capture microdissection: molecular analysis of tissue. Science 278(5342):1481–1483
Braakman E, Schuurhuis GJ, Preijers FW, Voermans C, Theunissen K, van Riet I, Fibbe WE, Slaper-Cortenbach I (2008) Evaluation of "out-of-specification" CliniMACS CD34-selection procedures of hematopoietic progenitor cell-apheresis products. Cytotherapy 10(1):83–89
Burger SR (2003) Current regulatory issues in cell and tissue therapy. Cytotherapy 5(4):289–298
Busca A, Cavecchia I, Locatelli F, D'Ardia S, De Rosa FG, Marmont F, Ciccone G, Baldi I, Serra R, Gaido E, Falda M (2012) Blood stream infections after allogeneic stem cell transplantation: a single-center experience with the use of levofloxacin prophylaxis. Transpl Infect Dis 14(1): 40–48
Carmen J, Burger SR, McCaman M, Rowley JA (2012) Developing assays to address identity, potency, purity and safety: cell characterization in cell therapy process development. Regen Med 7(1):85–100
Choi S, Song S, Choi C, Park JK (2007) Continuous blood separation by hydrophoretic filtration. Lab Chip 7(11):1532–1538
Choi SM, Lee DG, Lim J, Park SH, Choi JH, Yoo JH, Lee JW, Kim Y, Han K, Min WS, Shin WS, Kim CC (2009) Comparison of quantitative cytomegalovirus real-time PCR in whole blood and pp 65 antigenemia assay: clinical utility of CMV real-time PCR in hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients. J Korean Med Sci 24(4):571–578
Choudhury D, Ramsay WT, Kiss R, Willoughby NA, Paterson L, Kar AK (2012) A 3D mammalian cell separator biochip. Lab Chip 12(5):948–953

Civin CI, Strauss LC, Brovall C, Fackler MJ, Schwartz JF, Shaper JH (1984) Antigenic analysis of hematopoiesis. III. A hematopoietic progenitor cell surface antigen defined by a monoclonal antibody raised against KG-1a cells. J Immunol 133(1):157–165

Cooney CG, Sipes D, Thakore N, Holmberg R, Belgrader P (2012) A plastic, disposable microfluidic flow cell for coupled on-chip PCR and microarray detection of infectious agents. Biomed Microdevices 14(1):45–53

Dainiak MB, Galaev IY, Kumar A, Plieva FM, Mattiasson B (2007) Chromatography of living cells using supermacroporous hydrogels, cryogels. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 106: 101–127

de Wynter EA, Coutinho LH, Pei X, Marsh JC, Hows J, Luft T, Testa NG (1995) Comparison of purity and enrichment of CD34+ cells from bone marrow, umbilical cord and peripheral blood (primed for apheresis) using five separation systems. Cells 13(5):524–532

Dharmasiri U, Balamurugan S, Adams AA, Okagbare PI, Obubuafo A, Soper SA (2009) Highly efficient capture and enumeration of low abundance prostate cancer cells using prostate-specific membrane antigen aptamers immobilized to a polymeric microfluidic device. Electrophoresis 30(18):3289–3300

Dharmasiri U, Witek MA, Adams AA, Soper SA (2010) Microsystems for the capture of low-abundance cells. Ann Rev Anal Chem (Palo Alto, Calif) 3:409–431

Diamond AD, Hsu JT (1990) Protein partitioning in PEG/dextran aqueous two-phase systems. AIChE J 36(7):1017–1024

Donmez A, Tombuloglu M, Gungor A, Soyer N, Saydam G, Cagirgan S (2007) Clinical side effects during peripheral blood progenitor cell infusion. Transfus Apher Sci 36(1):95–101

Donmez A, Aydemir S, Arik B, Tunger A, Cilli F, Orman M, Tombuloglu M (2012) Risk factors for microbial contamination of peripheral blood stem cell products. Transfusion 52(4):777–781

Fadel L, Viana BR, Feitosa ML, Ercolin AC, Roballo KC, Casals JB, Pieri NC, Meirelles FV, Martins Ddos S, Miglino MA, Ambrósio CE (2011) Protocols for obtainment and isolation of two mesenchymal stem cell sources in sheep. Acta Cir Bras 26(4):267–273

Farag S (2002) Therapeutic applications of immunomagnetic cell selection: a review. Eur Cells Mater Suppl 3:37–40

FDA (1999) Isolex 300 & 300i magnetic selection systems – PMA application [Online]. FDA. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/BloodBloodProducts/ApprovedProducts/PremarketApprovalsPMAs/ucm091487.htm. Accessed 17 Apr 2012

FDA (2001) CFR – Code of Federal Regulations Title 21 – Part 1271 [Online]. FDA. Available at: http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfcfr/CFRSearch.cfm?CFRPart=1271. Accessed 17 Apr 2012

FDA (2011a) CTGTAC Briefing Document – CliniMACS CD34 Reagent system. Applicant: Miltenyi Biotec. [Online]. FDA. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/downloads/AdvisoryCommittees/CommitteesMeetingMaterials/BloodVaccinesandOtherBiologics/CellularTissueandGeneTherapiesAdvisoryCommittee/UCM272479.pdf. Accessed 17 Apr 2012

FDA (2011b) Hemachord – Full prescribing information [Online]. FDA. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/CellularGeneTherapyProducts/ApprovedProducts/UCM279612.pdf. Accessed 17 Apr 2012

Fink D Jr (2009) FDA regulation of stem-cell-based products. Science 324:1662–1663

FoA (Focus on Alternatives) (2009) Serum-free media for cell culture [Online]. FoA. Available at http://www.docstoc.com/docs/37060487/SERUM-FREE-MEDIA-FOR-CELL-CULTURE. Accessed 5 May 2012

Forest F, Duband S, Pillet S, Stachowicz ML, Cornillon J, Dumollard JM, Peoc'h M (2011) Lethal human herpesvirus-6 encephalitis after cord blood transplant. Transpl Infect Dis 13(6):646–649

Freeman MD, Fuerst MS (2012) Does the FDA have regulatory authority over adult autologous stem cell therapies? 21 CFR 1271 and the emperor's new clothes. J Transl Med 10(1):60

Grützkau A, Radbruch A (2010) Small but mighty: how the MACS®-technology based on nano-sized superparamagnetic particles has helped to analyze the immune system within the last 20 years. Cytometry 77A:643–647

Gryn J, Shadduck RK, Lister J, Zeigler ZR, Raymond JM (2002) Factors affecting purification of CD34(+) peripheral blood stem cells using the Baxter Isolex 300i. J Hematother Stem Cell Res 11(4):719–730

Gulen D, Abe F, Maas S, Reed E, Cowan K, Pirruccello S, Wisecarver J, Warkentin P, Northam M, Turken O, Coskun U, Senesac J, Talmadge JE (2008) Closing the manufacturing process of dendritic cell vaccines transduced with adenovirus vectors. Int Immunopharmacol 8(13–14): 1728–1736

Guo KT, Ziemer G, Paul A, Wendel HP (2008) CELL-SELEX: novel perspectives of aptamer-based therapeutics. Int J Mol Sci 9(4):668–678

Halme D (2006) FDA regulation of stem-cell–based therapies. N Engl J Med 355:1730–1735

Halme DG, Kessler DA (2006) FDA regulation of stem-cell-based therapies. N Engl J Med 355(16):1730–1735

Hammarström B, Evander M, Barbeau H, Bruzelius M, Larsson J, Laurell T, Nilsson J (2010) Non-contact acoustic cell trapping in disposable glass capillaries. Lab Chip 10(17): 2251–2257

Han TT, Huang XJ, Liu KY, Liu DH, Chen H, Han W, Zhang XH, Wang Y, Chen YH, Wang FR, Zhao T, Chen Y, Xu LP (2011) Blood stream infections during agranulocytosis period after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in one single center. Zhonghua nei ke za zhi [Chinese journal of internal medicine] 50(8):654–658

Handgretinger R, Greil J, Schürmann U, Lang P, Gonzalez-Ramella O, Schmidt I, Führer R, Niethammer D, Klingebiel T (1997) Positive selection and transplantation of peripheral CD34+ progenitor cells: feasibility and purging efficacy in pediatric patients with neuroblastoma. J Hematother 6(3):235–242

Hanson JC, Tangrea MA, Kim S, Armani MD, Pohida TJ, Bonner RF, Rodriguez-Canales J, Emmert-Buck MR (2011) Expression microdissection adapted to commercial laser dissection instruments. Nat Protoc 6(4):457–467

Harvest Technologies (2011) SmartPReP BMAC [Online]. Terumo Group. Available at: http://www.harvesttech.com/products/stemcells/smartprep.html. Accessed 13 May 2012

Hassan HT, Zeller W, Stockschläder M, Krüger W, Hoffknecht MM, Zander AR (1996) Comparison between bone marrow and G-CSF-mobilized peripheral blood allografts undergoing clinical scale CD34+ cell selection. Stem Cells 14(4):419–429

Henderson C, Wofford J, Fortune K, Regan D (2010) Evaluation of processing technologies for UCB. In ISCT Meeting, Philadelphia

Herzenberg LA, Parks D, Sahaf B, Perez O, Roederer M, Herzenberg LA (2002) The history and future of the fluorescence activated cell sorter and flow cytometry: a view from Stanford. Clin Chem 48(10):1819–1827

Hibino N, Nalbandian A, Devine L, Martinez RS, McGillicuddy E, Yi T, Karandish S, Ortolano GA, Shin'oka T, Snyder E, Breuer CK (2011) Comparison of human bone marrow mononuclear cell isolation methods for creating tissue-engineered vascular grafts: novel filter system versus traditional density centrifugation method. Tissue Eng Part C Methods 17(10):993–998

Hubel A (2011) Advancing the preservation of cellular therapy products. Transfusion 51: 82S–86S

Hughes AD, Mattison J, Western LT, Powderly JD, Greene BT, King MR (2012a) Microtube device for selectin-mediated capture of viable circulating tumor cells from blood. Clin Chem 58(5):846–853

Hughes AD, Mattison J, Powderly JD, Greene BT, King MR (2012b) Rapid isolation of viable circulating tumor cells from patient blood samples. J Vis Exp 64:e4248

Hur SC, Mach AJ, Di Carlo D (2011) High-throughput size-based rare cell enrichment using microscale vortices. Biomicrofluidics 5(2):22206

Jain A, Munn LL (2011) Biomimetic postcapillary expansions for enhancing rare blood cell separation on a microfluidic chip. Lab Chip 11(17):2941–2947

Jensen B (1989) Flow cytometry: rapid isolation and analysis of single cells. Methods Enzymol 171:549–581

Johansen N (2011) FDA Advisory Panel Miltenyi Biotec – CliniMACS CD34 Reagent System. [Online]. FDA. Available at: www.fda.gov/downloads/AdvisoryCommittees/CommitteesMeetingMaterials/

BloodVaccinesandOtherBiologics/CellularTissueandGeneTherapiesAdvisoryCommittee/UCM279289.ppt. Accessed 15 Mar 2012
Jung JH, Kim GY, Seo TS (2011) An integrated passive micromixer-magnetic separation-capillary electrophoresis microdevice for rapid and multiplex pathogen detection at the single-cell level. Lab Chip 11(20):3465–3470
Jungbauer A, Hahn R (2008) Polymethacrylate monoliths for preparative and industrial separation of biomolecular assemblies. J Chromatogr A 1184:62–79
Karumanchi R, Doddamane S (2002) Field-assisted extraction of cells, particles and macromolecules. Trends Biotechnol 20:72–78
Kassem M (2004) Mesenchymal stem cells: biological characteristics and potential clinical applications. Cloning Stem Cells 6(4):369–374
Kim K, An HJ, Jun SH, Kim TJ, Lim SA, Park G, Na HB, Park YI, Hyeon T, Yee C, Bluestone JA, Kim J, Lee KM (2012) Single step isolation and activation of primary CD3(+) T lymphocytes using alcohol-dispersed electrospun magnetic nanofibers. Nano Lett 12(8):4018–4024
Klimanskaya I (2006) Retinal pigment epithelium. Methods Enzymol 418:169–194
Kneipp K, Wang Y, Kneipp H, Perelman LT, Itzkan I, Dasari RR, Feld MS (1997) Single molecule detection using surface-enhanced Raman scattering (SERS). Phys Rev Lett 78(9):1667–1670
Kumar A, Bhardwaj A (2008) Methods in cell separation for biomedical application: cryogels as a new tool. Biomed Mater 3:1–11
Kumar A, Kamihira M, Galaev IY, Mattiasson B, Iijima S (2001) Type-specific separation of animal cells in aqueous two-phase systems using antibody conjugates with temperature-sensitive polymers. Biotechnol Bioeng 75:570–580
Kuznetsov SA, Mankani MH, Robey PG (2000) Effect of serum on human bone marrow stromal cells: ex vivo expansion and in vivo bone formation. Transplantation 70(12):1780–1787
Larijani MR, Seifinejad A, Pournasr B, Hajihoseini V, Hassani SN, Totonchi M, Yousefi M, Shamsi F, Salekdeh GH, Baharvand H (2011) Long-term maintenance of undifferentiated human embryonic and induced pluripotent stem cells in suspension. Stem Cells Dev 20(11):1911–1923
Lau AY, Lee LP, Chan JW (2008) An integrated optofluidic platform for Raman-activated cell sorting. Lab Chip 8(7):1116–1120
Lawrence B, Bashiri H, Dehghani H (2010) Cross comparison of rapid mycoplasma detection platforms. Biologicals 38(2):218–223
Lemarie C, Calmels B, Malenfant C, Arneodo V, Blaise D, Viret F, Bouabdallah R, Ladaique P, Viens P, Chabannon C (2005) Clinical experience with the delivery of thawed and washed autologous blood cells, with an automated closed fluid management device: CytoMate. Transfusion 45(5):737–742
Li C, Yi-Hong, Tan X, Ai JH, Zhou H, Li SJ, Zhang L, Xia QC, Wu JR, Wang HY, Zeng R (2008) Analysis of microdissected cells by two-dimensional LC-MS approaches. Methods Mol Biol (Clifton, NJ) 428:193–208
Li M, Xu J, Romero-Gonzalez M, Banwart SA, Huang WE (2012) Single cell Raman spectroscopy for cell sorting and imaging. Curr Opin Biotechnol 23(1):56–63
Liandris E, Gazouli M, Andreadou M, Sechi LA, Rosu V, Ikonomopoulos J (2011) Detection of pathogenic mycobacteria based on functionalized quantum dots coupled with immunomagnetic separation. PLoS One 6(5):e20026
Lin K, Matsubara Y, Masuda Y, Togashi K, Ohno T, Tamura T, Toyoshima Y, Sugimachi K, Toyoda M, Marc H, Douglas A (2008) Characterization of adipose tissue-derived cells isolated with the Celution system. Cytotherapy 10(4):417–426
Lin MX, Hyun KA, Moon HS, Sim TS, Lee JG, Park JC, Lee SS, Jung HI (2012) Continuous labelling of circulating tumor cells with microbeads using a vortex micromixer for highly selective isolation. Biosens Bioelectron 40:63–67
Liu P, Zhao Y, Xiao JW, Zhang C, Zhao XD (2011a) Respiratory syncytial virus infection in hematopoietic stem cell transplantation recipients with primary immunodeficiencies. Zhonghua er ke za zhi 49(7):489–494
Liu W, You N, Dou K (2011b) Convenient and efficient enrichment of the CD133+ liver cells from rat fetal liver cells as a source of liver stem/progenitor cells. Stem Cell Rev Rep 7:94–102

Loken MR, Herzenberg LA (1975) Analysis of cell populations with a fluorescence-activated cell sorter. Ann N Y Acad Sci 254:163–171

Long DA (1977) Raman spectroscopy. McGraw-Hill, New York

Mahara A, Yamaoka T (2010) Continuous separation of cells of high osteoblastic differentiation potential from mesenchymal stem cells on an antibody-immobilized column. Biomaterials 31:4231–4237

Martín-Henao GA, Picón M, Amill B, Querol S, Ferrà C, Grañena A, García J (2001) Combined positive and negative cell selection from allogeneic peripheral blood progenitor cells (PBPC) by use of immunomagnetic methods. Bone Marrow Transplant 27(7):683–687

Mata C, Longmire EK, McKenna DH, Glass KK, Hubel A (2008) Experimental study of diffusion-based extraction from a cell suspension. Microfluid Nanofluid 5:529–540

Mattanovich D, Borth N (2006) Applications of cell sorting in biotechnology. Microb Cell Fact 5(1):12

McNiece I, Briddell R, Stoney G, Kern B, Zilm K, Recktenwald D, Miltenyi S (1997) Large-scale isolation of CD34+ cells using the Amgen cell selection device results in high levels of purity and recovery. J Hematother 6(1):5–11

Meehan KR, Areman EM, Ericson SG, Matias C, Seifeldin R, Schulman K (2000) Peripheral blood stem cells: development of a clinical process with associated costs. J Hematother 771:767–771

Miltenyi Biotec (2004) CliniMACS Newsletter, vol. 4, No. 2. [Online]. Miltenyi Biotec. Available at: https://www.miltenyibiotec.com/en/support/resources/publications/clinimacs-newsletters.aspx. Accessed 1 May 2012

Miltenyi S, Müller W, Weichel W, Radbruch A (1990) High gradient magnetic cell separation with MACS. Cytometry 11:231–238

Moon HS, Kwon K, Kim SI, Han H, Sohn J, Lee S, Jung HI (2011) Continuous separation of breast cancer cells from blood samples using multi-orifice flow fractionation (MOFF) and dielectrophoresis (DEP). Lab Chip 11(6):1118–1125

Morecki S, Topalian SL, Myers WW, Okrongly D, Okarma TB, Rosenberg SA (1990) Separation and growth of human CD4+ and CD8+ tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and peripheral blood mononuclear cells by direct positive panning on covalently attached monoclonal antibody-coated flasks. J Immunother 9(5):463–474

Nagamura-Inoue T, Shioya M, Sugo M, Cui Y, Takahashi A, Tomita S, Zheng Y, Takada K, Kodo H, Asano S, Takahashi TA (2003) Wash-out of DMSO does not improve the speed of engraftment of cord blood transplantation: follow-up of 46 adult patients with units shipped from a single cord blood bank. Transfusion 43(9):1285–1295

Nam J, Lim H, Kim D, Jung H, Shin S (2012) Continuous separation of microparticles in a microfluidic channel via the elasto-inertial effect of non-Newtonian fluid. Lab Chip 12(7):1347–1354

Narasipura SD, Wojciechowski JC, Charles N, Liesveld JL, King MR (2008) P-Selectin coated microtube for enrichment of CD34+ hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells from human bone marrow. Clin Chem 54(1):77–85

Naujok O, Francini F, Jörns A, Lenzen S (2008) An efficient experimental strategy for mouse embryonic stem cell differentiation and separation of a cytokeratin-19-positive population of insulin-producing cells. Cell Prolif 41(4):607–624

Nery AA, Wrenger C, Ulrich H (2009) Recognition of biomarkers and cell-specific molecular signatures: aptamers as capture agents. J Sep Sci 32(10):1523–1530

Olack BJ, Swanson CJ, Howard TK, Mohanakumar T (1999) Improved method for the isolation and purification of human islets of langerhans using Liberase enzyme blend. Hum Immunol 60(12):1303–1309

Phinney DG, Prockop DJ (2007) Concise review: mesenchymal stem/multipotent stromal cells: the state of transdifferentiation and modes of tissue repair–current views. Stem cells (Dayton, Ohio) 25(11):2896–2902

Plouffe BD, Mahalanabis M, Lewis LH, Klapperich CM, Murthy SK (2012) Clinically relevant microfluidic magnetophoretic isolation of rare-cell populations for diagnostic and therapeutic monitoring applications. Anal Chem 84(3):1336–1344

Ricci-Vitiani L, Lombardi DG, Pilozzi E, Biffoni M, Todaro M, Peschle C, De Maria R (2007) Identification and expansion of human colon-cancer-initiating cells. Nature 445:111–115

Ringhoffer M, Wiesneth M, Harsdorf S, Schlenk RF, Schmitt A, Reinhardt PP, Moessner M, Grimminger W, Mertens T, Reske SN, Döhner H, Bunjes D (2004) CD34+ cell selection of peripheral blood progenitor cells using the CliniMACS device for allogeneic transplantation: clinical results in 102 patients. Br J Haematol 126:527–535

Robinson LB, Wichelhausen RH (1956) Contamination of human cell cultures by pleuropneumonialike organisms. Science (New York, NY) 124(3232):1147–1148

Roda B, Lanzoni G, Alviano F, Zattoni A, Costa R, Di Carlo A, Marchionni C, Franchina M, Ricci F, Tazzari PL, Pagliaro P, Scalinci SZ, Bonsi L, Reschiglian P, Bagnara GP (2009a) A novel stem cell tag-less sorting method. Stem Cell Rev 5(4):420–427

Roda B, Reschiglian P, Zattoni A, Alviano F, Lanzoni G, Costa R, Di Carlo A, Marchionni C, Franchina M, Bonsi L, Bagnara GP (2009b) A tag-less method of sorting stem cells from clinical specimens and separating mesenchymal from epithelial progenitor cells. Cytometry B Clin Cytom 76(4):285–290

Rodriguez R (2012) FDA: stem cells from your own fat are a drug. CosmeticSurg Blog [Blog] 11 January. Available at: http://www.cosmeticsurg.net/blog/2012/01/11/fda-stem-cells-from-your-own-fat-are-a-drug/. Accessed 5 Mar 2012

Roy I, Pai A (1999) Comparison of batch, packed bed and expanded bed purification of A. niger cellulase using cellulose beads. Bioseparation 8:317–326

Rynans S, Dzieciatkowski T, Basak GW, Snarski E, Przybylski M, Wroblewska M, Jedrzejczak WW, Mlynarczyk G (2012) Human adenovirus infection in patients subjected to allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation–a three-year single center study. Acta Virol 56(1): 85–87

Schambach A, Cantz T, Baum C, Cathomen T (2010) Generation and genetic modification of induced pluripotent stem cells. Expert Opin Biol Ther 10(7):1089–1103

Schriebl K, Lim S, Choo A, Tscheliessnig A, Jungbauer A (2010) Stem cell separation: a bottleneck in stem cell therapy. Biotechnol J 5(1):50–61

Schumm M, Lang P, Taylor G, Kuçi S, Klingebiel T, Bühring HJ, Geiselhart A, Niethammer D, Handgretinger R (1999) Isolation of highly purified autologous and allogeneic peripheral CD34+ cells using the CliniMACS device. J Hematother 8(2):209–218

Seeger FH, Tonn T, Krzossok N, Zeiher AM, Dimmeler S (2007) Cell isolation procedures matter : a comparison of different isolation protocols of bone marrow mononuclear cells used for cell therapy in patients with acute myocardial infarction. Rev Lit Arts Am 28:766–772

Selvaggi TA, Walker RE, Fleisher TA (1997) Development of antibodies to fetal calf serum with arthus-like reactions in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients given syngeneic lymphocyte infusions. Blood 89(3):776–779

Sensebé L (2008) Clinical grade production of mesenchymal stem cells. Biomed Mater Eng 18(1 Suppl):S3–S10

Serra M, Brito C, Correia C, Alves PM (2012) Process engineering of human pluripotent stem cells for clinical application. Trends Biotechnol 30:350–359

Shinozawa T, Furukawa H, Sato E, Takami K (2012) A novel purification method of murine embryonic stem cell–and human-induced pluripotent stem cell–derived cardiomyocytes by simple manual dissociation. J Biomol Screen 17:683–691

Shukla AA, Jiang C, Ma J, Rubacha M, Flansburg L, Lee SS (2008) Demonstration of robust host cell protein clearance in biopharmaceutical downstream processes. Biotechnol Prog 24(3): 615–622

Spees JL, Gregory CA, Singh H, Tucker HA, Peister A, Lynch PJ, Hsu SC, Smith J, Prockop DJ (2004) Internalized antigens must be removed to prepare hypoimmunogenic mesenchymal stem cells for cell and gene therapy. Mol Ther 9(5):747–756

Steiner D, Khaner H, Cohen M, Even-Ram S, Gil Y, Itsykson P, Turetsky T, Idelson M, Aizenman E, Ram R, Berman-Zaken Y, Reubinoff B (2010) Derivation, propagation and controlled differentiation of human embryonic stem cells in suspension. Nat Biotechnol 28(4):361–364

Szczepiorkowski ZM, Bandarenko N, Kim HC, Linenberger ML, Marques MB, Sarode R, Schwartz J et al (2010) Guidelines on the use of therapeutic apheresis in clinical practice: evidence-based approach from the Apheresis Applications Committee of the American Society for Apheresis. J Clin Apher 22(3):83–177

Thomas TE, Miller CL, Eaves CJ (1999) Purification of hematopoietic stem cells for further biological study. Methods San Diego Calif 17(3):202–218

Thomas RJ, Hope AD, Hourd P, Baradez M, Miljan EA, Sinden JD, Williams DJ (2009) Automated, serum-free production of CTX0E03: a therapeutic clinical grade human neural stem cell line. Biotechnol Lett 31(8):1167–1172

Tissue Reference Group (TRG) (2011) FDA claims Adipose SVF fraction is a drug [Online]. FDA. Available at: http://www.docstoc.com/docs/102968214/FDA-Claims-Adipose-SVF-is-a-Drug. Accessed 18 May 2012

Tondreau T, Lagneaux L, Dejeneffe M, Delforge A, Massy M, Mortier C, Bron D (2004) Isolation of BM mesenchymal stem cells by plastic adhesion or negative selection: phenotype, proliferation kinetics and differentiation potential. Cytotherapy 6(4):372–379

Tsukamoto M, Taira S, Yamamura S, Morita Y, Nagatani N, Takamura Y, Tamiya E (2009) Cell separation by an aqueous two-phase system in a microfluidic device. Analyst 134(10):1994–1998

Vykoukal J, Vykoukal DM, Freyberg S, Alt EU, Gascoyne PR (2008) Enrichment of putative stem cells from adipose tissue using dielectrophoretic field-flow fractionation. Lab Chip 8(8): 1386–1393

Wei Hou H, Gan HY, Bhagat AAS, Li LD, Lim CT, Han J (2012) A microfluidics approach towards high-throughput pathogen removal from blood using margination. Biomicrofluidics 6(2): 24115–2411513

Wei H, Chueh BH, Wu H, Hall EW, Li CW, Schirhagl R, Lin JM, Zare RN (2011) Particle sorting using a porous membrane in a microfluidic device. Lab Chip 11(2):238–245

Wiesinger-Mayr H, Jordana-Lluch E, Martró E, Schoenthaler S, Noehammer C (2011) Establishment of a semi-automated pathogen DNA isolation from whole blood and comparison with commercially available kits. J Microbiol Methods 85(3):206–213

Wobus AM, Boheler KR (2005) Embryonic stem cells: prospects for developmental biology and cell therapy. In Vitro 85:635–678

Wognum A, Eaves A (2003) Identification and isolation of hematopoietic stem cells. Arch Med Res 34:461–475

Wojciechowski JC, Narasipura SD, Charles N, Mickelsen D, Rana K, Blair ML, King MR (2008) Capture and enrichment of CD34-positive haematopoietic stem and progenitor cells from blood circulation using P-selectin in an implantable device. Br J Haematol 140(6):673–681

Wu Z, Willing B, Bjerketorp J, Jansson JK, Hjort K (2009) Soft inertial microfluidics for high throughput separation of bacteria from human blood cells. Lab Chip 9(9):1193–1199

Xiang L, Li L (2011) Development and evaluation of an immunochromatographic strip for the detection of Human cytomegalovirus. Lett Appl Microbiol 52(3):233–238

Yokoyama T, Murai K, Murozuka T, Wakisaka A, Tanifuji M, Fujii N, Tomono T (2004) Removal of small non-enveloped viruses by nanofiltration. Vox Sang 86(4):225–229

Yung CW, Fiering J, Mueller AJ, Ingber DE (2009) Micromagnetic-microfluidic blood cleansing device. Lab Chip 9(9):1171–1177

Zhao C, Cheng X (2011) Microfluidic separation of viruses from blood cells based on intrinsic transport processes. Biomicrofluidics 5(3):32004–3200410

Zhou JX, Solamo F, Hong T, Shearer M, Tressel T (2008) Viral clearance using disposable systems in monoclonal antibody commercial downstream processing. Biotechnol Bioeng 100(3): 488–496

Chapter 7
Separation Technologies for Stem Cell Bioprocessing

Maria Margarida Diogo, Cláudia Lobato da Silva, and Joaquim M.S. Cabral

Abstract Stem cells present an enormous potential in a number of fields with a great impact on human health including Regenerative Medicine, drug discovery, toxicology studies and fundamental stem cell biology. Crucial to the accomplishment of this potential is the development of stem cell-based bioprocessing strategies based on the rational integration of cell culture procedures with separation methods towards the isolation of specific stem cell types from tissues and/or purification of stem cells and derivatives after *in vitro* culture. Separation methods/strategies have been applied to stem cells since many years ago, namely the isolation of hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells (HSPC) from bone marrow for the treatment of hemato-oncological diseases using density gradient centrifugation followed by immunoaffinity-based techniques. More recently, novel approaches have been proposed including affinity-based methods that take advantage of the use of more cost-effective ligands (*e.g*. aptamers, lectins), as well as novel biophysical-based methods requiring no cell labelling and integrated with microscale technologies. This chapter presents a critical assessment of these traditional and novel separation methodologies and their present or potential applications to the stem cell field. The techniques are grouped according to their fundamental principles, which are defined by the main physicochemical, biophysical and affinity properties of cells. Nevertheless, enormous challenges still need to be overcome in order to make available a wide range of strategies combining scalability potential with high-resolution abilities, allowing the cost-effective large-scale production of highly purified stem cell populations and/or derivatives. Further developments in this field are thus expected to greatly impact and potentiate the medical translation of stem cell-based therapies.

M.M. Diogo • C.L. da Silva • J.M.S. Cabral (✉)
Department of Bioengineering, Institute for Biotechnology and Bioengineering,
Centre for Biological and Chemical Engineering, Instituto Superior Técnico,
Technical University of Lisbon, Avenida Rovisco Pais,
Lisbon 1049-001, Portugal
e-mail: joaquim.cabral@ist.utl.pt

M. Al-Rubeai, M. Naciri (eds.), *Stem Cells and Cell Therapy*, Cell Engineering 8,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-7196-3_7,

Keywords Stem Cell Bioprocessing • Purification • Stem cell-based therapies • Regenerative Medicine • Stem Cells

7.1 Separation Technologies for Stem Cell-Based Therapies: Relevance and Challenges

The isolation and/or purification of stem cells and their derivatives to be used for cell therapy applications, including fully established stem cell-based therapies, as well as for fundamental biomedical research have been performed over the last decades (Diogo et al. 2012; Gonzalez-Gonzalez et al. 2012). Overall, separation techniques have been used for isolation of stem cell populations from tissues, for separating different stem cell populations from a heterogeneous cell mixture and for purification of stem cell derivatives obtained upon differentiation of stem cells *in vitro*. The most classical example of a stem cell-based separation is the isolation of human hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells (HSPC) from different sources such as bone marrow (BM), umbilical cord blood (UCB) and mobilized peripheral blood (mPB) for the treatment of hemato-oncological diseases. For this purpose, a separation strategy was conceived including a density gradient centrifugation followed by immunoaffinity-based techniques, including magnetic-activated cell sorting (MACS), and fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS), for targeting of $CD34^+$ cells. The main objective of these procedures is the enrichment of rare HSPC present in these sources for further transplantation to restore the blood and the immune system of cancer patients following high-dose chemotherapy or to treat autoimmune, metabolic and genetic diseases (Weissman and Shizuru 2008).

In addition to this widely established procedure, it is nowadays believed that the successful establishment of stem cell based-therapies at different stages of preclinical and clinical tests and other stem cell applications in the biomedical field is highly dependent on the development of more sophisticated and efficient separation technologies and strategies. According to the final stem cell-based therapy application envisaged, different challenges must be faced in this field. One of these challenges is the need for novel techniques with a higher resolution, either for depletion of contaminating cells, or for the separation of stem cell populations sharing similar physicochemical and affinity characteristics but presenting different clinical features. On the other hand, there is also the necessity of scaling-up the separation processes when the cellular product is intended to be used for clinical applications or as a tool for drug screening and pharmacological testing.

These challenges present a different relevance according to the stem cell-based therapy envisaged. Of note, several pre-clinical studies and clinical trials have pointed to the therapeutic potential of mesenchymal stem/stromal cells (MSC), based on their multilineage differentiation potential, but especially on their intrinsic immunomodulatory and pro-regenerative features (Caplan 2007, 2009; Santos et al. 2011; Uchida et al. 2000). These cells have been isolated from different sources such as BM, adipose tissue (AT) and umbilical cord matrix (UCM) typically based

on their adhesion to plastic surfaces, which yields a very heterogeneous cell population. A more rational clinical use of MSC would thus strongly benefit from the development of novel high-resolution separation strategies to capture specific MSC sub-populations with defined properties from a variety of different sources. Other stem cell applications requiring the development of separation techniques with high-resolution abilities are the ones relying on the depletion of rare contaminating cancer stem cells (Geens et al. 2007) and the removal of tumorigenic stem cells from *in vitro* differentiating cultures of pluripotent stem cells (PSC), both embryonic (ESC) and induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSC) (Levenberg et al. 2010). Without these developments, the potential application of human PSC-derived tissue specific cells in clinical settings will remain hampered, among other reasons, by the presence of pluripotent cells or naïve proliferative progenitors that can form teratomas upon *in vivo* transplantation. Importantly, for all the applications that may be considered, separation technologies should be rationally integrated with cell production methods in wider bioprocessing strategies towards the large-scale manufacturing of stem cells and/or their progeny. Overall, the examples aforementioned illustrate the challenge and the relevance of separation technologies to potentiate the medical translation of stem cell-based therapies.

7.2 Cell Separation Technologies: An Overview

Cell separation technologies are selected according to general criteria including the final application of the cellular product, the cellular properties, the resolution capabilities required and the scalability of the process. When considering the cellular properties, different techniques have been explored that can take advantage over the differential physicochemical and biochemical characteristics of cells, including size, density or electrostatic and hydrophobic character, as well as the differential expression of cell-specific surface markers or adhesive properties (Fig. 7.1 and Table 7.1). The techniques that explore the physicochemical properties of cells are generally traditional methods such as centrifugation or membrane filtration. These techniques are characterized by a low resolution capacity and they are typically used at the first stages of cell processing for the separation of very distinct cell types and/or for cell concentration. Moreover, the differential adhesion of distinct cells to tissue culture plastic can also be explored as a low resolution separation/concentration method that is generally used during the first stages of the bioprocess. However, for similar cell phenotypes, high resolution techniques are required and in these cases cell separation has been generally performed by taking advantage of the differential number and type of molecules present on the cell surface that can be targeted by specific monoclonal antibodies, lectins and, more recently, by aptamers. This group of techniques is named immunoaffinity methods. Immunoaffinity cell separation strategies can be conceived by using a single specific ligand only (*e.g.* monoclonal antibody), but by targeting cells with several immunoaffinity ligands at the same time, or in sequential steps, more complex strategies can be conceived. Separation

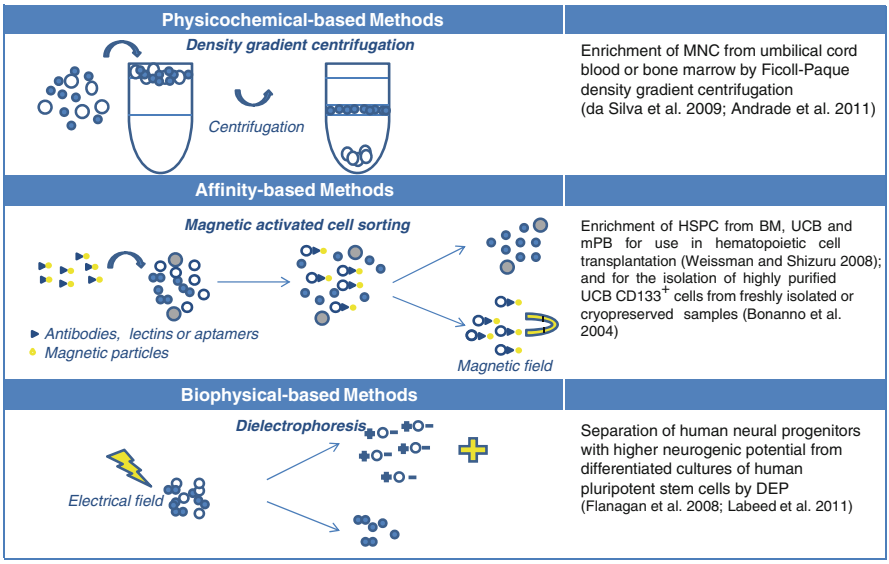


Fig. 7.1 Separation methods in the stem cell field based on cell's physicochemical, affinity and biophysical properties. Physicochemical-based methods such as density gradient centrifugation, take advantage of cell size, cell density, or the capacity to adhere to tissue culture plastic. Affinity-based methods, like MACS, employ specific monoclonal antibodies, lectins or aptamers targeting different types of molecules present on the surface of the cells; Biophysical-based methods, such as DEP, do not require cell labeling and promote selective separation based on inherent differences in cell's biophysical properties

techniques taking advantage of the use of antibodies that bind to surface markers to specifically pick out cells of interest include the very widely used fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS), immunomagnetic cell sorting (MACS), affinity chromatography and aqueous two-phase systems (ATPS) using antibody-modified polymers. Nevertheless, although immunoaffinity separation methodologies typically provide a high resolution in cell separation, for many stem cell or stem-cell derived populations, surface markers for separation and analysis are limited. In addition, these immunoaffinity strategies rely on the formation of a complex cell-antibody or cell-antibody-magnetic particle, which could affect cell function (*e.g.* differentiation) or activation state (Chou et al. 2010). Alternative selection strategies avoiding the use of antibodies and magnetic particles have been more recently provided by novel "tag-less" methods, such as dielectrophoresis (DEP) (Pethig et al. 2010), integrated with microfluidics and other microfabricated structures, and also fluid flow fractionation (FFF) (Reschiglian et al. 2005). DEP and FFF do not require labelling of cells but they allow a selective cell separation based on the inherent biophysical properties of cells.

According to the final purpose and to the characteristics of the starting material, stem cells can be separated by negative or positive selection. A positive selection operation is more adequate for the isolation of specific and low proportion

Table 7.1 Advantages and limitations of cell separation technologies

Cell separation technique	Cell properties	Advantages	Problems
Physicochemical-based			
Centrifugation Membrane filtration Cell adhesion	Size, density, adhesion properties	Cell concentration Avoids cell labelling	Low selectivity
Immunoaffinity-based			
FACS	Expression of surface markers	Highly selective, automated, multiparametric	Low Scalability, requires cell labelling with fluorescently labelled antibodies which might affect cell function; low yield; low throughput; requires skilled technicians; expensive reagents; conveys shear stress to the cells
MACS		Lower cost than FACS, automated, closed-system technology	Requires cell labelling with monoclonal antibodies conjugated with magnetic particles which might affect cell function; lower selectivity when compared to FACS; conveys shear stress to the cells
Affinity chromatography		Highly scalable, highly selective	Requires cell labelling with antibodies which might affect cell function; conveys shear stress to the cells
Aqueous two-phase systems with antibody-modified polymers		Highly scalable	Requires cell labelling with antibodies which might affect cell function; low selectivity
Tag-less methods			
DEP FFF	Biophysical properties	Avoids cell labelling	Low throughput and scalability
Microfluidic devices	Several (according to the technique that is being explored)	Laminar flow, can be automated and integrated in lab-on-a-chip platforms	Low throughput and scalability

populations from a complex cell mixture. In the stem cell field, this strategy has been successfully used for the specific capture of $CD34^+$ HSPC (either by FACS or MACS) from different sources. On the other hand, negative selection techniques are advantageous and required if the target cells have to be untouched

(without magnetic particles or antibodies) for subsequent analysis or application in clinical settings. Moreover, negative selection techniques may also be required if no surface marker/monoclonal antibody specific for the cell of interest is known or available or if the main objective is the high-resolution depletion of an undesired cell type (*e.g.* tumorigenic cells). According to the desired cell phenotype, different separation techniques in different modes may be selected and integrated in order to take advantage of different cellular properties and achieve more efficient separation strategies. Importantly, these downstream processing techniques should also be strategically combined with cell culture operations in order to design a cost-effective and efficient bioprocess for production of stem cells and derivatives.

The following sections of this chapter describe the basic principles of traditional and novel cell separation techniques and their applications in the stem cell field. A critical assessment is provided here concerning their advantages and limitations considering the final usage of stem cells and/or their derivatives in particular for applications in stem cell-based therapies.

7.3 Stem Cell-Based Separation Technologies

7.3.1 Physico-chemical Methods

Centrifugation

One of the most traditional and widely used techniques for primary cell separation is discontinuous density gradient centrifugation (Fig. 7.1). In this separation method, two distinct solutions with different densities are put together forming a system with two immiscible layers. The two-layered system is generally composed of sucrose and a polymer, such as Percoll or Ficoll-Paque. After obtaining this system, cells are added to the less dense solution on the top and a centrifugation is performed causing the cells to cross the system and to be separated according to their densities. Thus, cells with higher density than the more dense solution beneath will cross the interface between the two immiscible layers and settle at the bottom whereas the cells that have a lower density will settle at the interface. This technique is characterized by a low resolution capacity and for that reason it is generally used for enrichment, concentration or as a preparative step before using other separation techniques with higher resolution capabilities, namely immunoaffinity-based methods, such as FACS or MACS (see following sections).

One of the most popular applications of density gradient centrifugation in the stem cell field is the enrichment of mononuclear cells from human UCB or BM by a Ficoll-Paque density gradient (1.077 g/mL) (Andrade et al. 2011; da Silva et al. 2005, 2009). In this case, erythrocytes and granulocytes sediment to the bottom layer, whereas lower density lymphocytes and other slowly sedimenting cells, including stem/progenitor cells, as well as platelets and monocytes, are retained at

the interface between the plasma and the Ficoll-Paque. Cells can then be collected from the interface and subjected to subsequent isolation of HSPC or MSC populations using higher resolution immunoaffinity techniques. More recently, enrichment of mononuclear cells through density gradient-based separation has also been performed using commercially available equipment, the Sepax (Biosafe SA, Switzerland). This equipment is a fully-automated, closed, single-use and mobile system that can be used in GMP compliant environments or directly at bedside in the operating room for Regenerative Medicine applications. In addition to this application, gradient centrifugation was also already used with success for enrichment of human PSC derivatives. In particular, Percoll centrifugation was applied after differentiation of human ESC into cardiomyocytes using a monolayer adherent protocol (Laflamme et al. 2007). This purification methodology increased the purity of cardiomyocytes in cell suspension from 30 to 80 %.

An alternative type of centrifugation that has been recently applied for stem cell isolation is counter-flow centrifugal elutriation (CCE). In this case, cells are separated inside a centrifugal chamber where a continuous pumping of a fluid occurs. This technique was already used with success for the fractionation of umbilical cord (UC)-derived cells. In fact, through CCE it was possible to isolate a sub-population of small-sized UC-derived primary cells with MSC-like characteristics (Majore et al. 2009). This subpopulation exhibited a higher proliferative capacity as compared to the total UC-derived primary cultures and demonstrated a reduced amount of aging cells. The separation of this self-renewing MSC-like subpopulation by CCE provides a valuable tool to be used in Regenerative Medicine and may be an alternative to BM derived MSC.

Membrane Filtration

An alternative physico-chemical method for cell separation that has been recently used in the stem cell field is membrane filtration. In this case, cell separation is achieved based on cell size, according to the membrane pore size, but may also be based on the differential intensity of cell adhesion to the membrane. This technique is characterized by a high processing speed, simplicity, relatively low cost and, importantly, a high potential for scaling-up. In fact, the equipment necessary to perform this operation is already available at an industrial scale.

The isolation of $CD34^+$ cells from mPB was already performed using unmodified polyurethane (PU) foaming membranes, as well as PU membranes modified with -COOH groups and coated with Pluronic F127 or hyaluronic acid at different blood permeation rates (Higuchi et al. 2006, 2008). The permeation ratio of $CD34^+$ HSPC through the membranes was the lowest among blood cells regardless the type of PU membrane used while erythrocytes, platelets, T cells and B cells permeated more freely through the PU membranes. This behaviour was potentially due to the high expression of cell-adhesion molecules on the surfaces of the more primitive HSPC. More recently, the successful isolation of human adipose-derived stem cells (ADSC) with a superior capacity for osteogenic differentiation from a suspension

of human adipose tissue was achieved by this technique also using PU membranes (Wu et al. 2012). Importantly, these cells were isolated in less than 30 minutes whereas the conventional method of adhesion to plastic surfaces (see following section) requires 5–12 days. Although these results are encouraging, many improvements are still needed to increase the potential of this technique for stem cell-based separation settings.

7.3.2 Cell Culture-Based Methods

The differential behaviour of different cell types in culture settings can also be used as a means to obtain their separation. The most classical example is the isolation of human MSC from different sources, namely BM, based on their ability to adhere to tissue culture plastic, which allows the separation of MSC from the majority of hematopoietic cells. In fact, these cells are mainly non-adherent, being eliminated during culture medium exchange (Lennon and Caplan 2006). Differential enzymatic treatment can also be used to eliminate the major cell contaminants in primary cultures of human MSC, namely monocytes, as these need longer incubation times with the enzymatic agent in order to be harvested from culture plastic. Another alternative and relatively straightforward method for the isolation of human MSC in culture settings is based on osmotic selection due to their uncommon resistance to osmotic lysis (Parekkadan et al. 2007).

7.3.3 Immunoaffinity Methods

As previously mentioned, high resolution cell separation can be performed by a group of techniques entitled immunoaffinity methods, in which the cells are targeted by specific immunoaffinity ligands, such as antibodies. This group of methods has been widely used for the high-resolution targeting of stem cells and their derivatives using specific cell surface markers (Table 7.2). One of the first immunoaffinity stem/progenitor cell selection strategies was developed in the hematological field and consists on the isolation and enrichment of human HSPC based on the expression of the surface marker CD34. CD34 antigen is indeed the most utilized in hematopoietic studies, identifying cells from the stem through progenitor states. However, since the expression of CD34 by truly self-renewing HSPC populations is not exclusive, a combination of CD34 and other antigens is often used for isolation and characterization of HSPC (Table 7.2). For example, the more immature hematopoietic stem cells (HSC) should possess a $CD34^{+}CD38^{-}$ phenotype (da Silva et al. 2005). However, this primitive phenotype has been shown to inherently modulate in culture (da Silva et al. 2009), leading to erroneous quantification of engraftment competent cells upon *ex-vivo* cultures. Other phenotypes for human HSP have been proposed (Weissman and Shizuru 2008) including the expression of Thy-1 (or CD90). Another approach

Table 7.2 Surface molecular markers of stem cells and stem cell-derived cells for affinity-based separation

Cell type	Surface molecular markers
ESC and iPSC	SSEA-3, SSEA-4, TRA-1-60 and TRA-1-81, SSEA-5 (Tang et al. 2011) in human and SSEA-1 in mouse; lectin UEA-I (Wang et al. 2011c)
human PSC-derived Neurons	NCAM (Pruszak et al. 2007)
human PSC-derived Cardiomyocytes	VCAM1 (Uosaki et al. 2011)
Human HSC	$CD34^+$, $CD34^+CD38^-$, $CD34^+CD90^+Lin^-$ (reviewed in (Weissman and Shizuru 2008))
Human MSC	STRO-1 (Goncalves et al. 2006; Gronthos and Zannettino 2008), CD73 (Barry et al. 2001) and CD105 (Tondreau et al. 2004) or negative selection for CD45 (Jones et al. 2002)
NSC	CD133 in human (Uchida et al. 2000) and CD15 (Capela and Temple 2002), CD184 (Corti et al. 2005) and CD24 (Rietze et al. 2001) in mouse

Lin^- CD2, CD3, CD11b, CD14, CD15, CD16, CD19, CD56, CD123, CD235a (Glycophorin A)

consists of the use of negative selection for lineage markers associated with terminal maturation of specific blood cell types (Lineage negative (Lin-) cells) combined with CD34 expression (Table 7.2).

When concerning to other multipotent stem cell types, such as human MSC, the scenario is different since few surface markers have been identified for the analysis and isolation of these cells. Moreover, the existence of universal markers for these stem cell types and their derivatives still remains elusive. For that reason, on a routine basis, most laboratories perform the isolation of MSC from BM samples or adipose tissue/UC based on its adherence to culture plastic (Lennon and Caplan 2006). Nevertheless, alternative immunoaffinity methods have been proposed in order to isolate MSC based on surface marker expression, either by positive or negative selection (Table 7.2) to obtain more homogeneous populations. One illustrative example is the purification of human MSC through positive selection using the STRO-1 (Goncalves et al. 2006; Gronthos and Zannettino 2008), CD73 (Barry et al. 2001) and CD105 (Tondreau et al. 2004) antibodies. Negative selection of human MSC has also been performed through the use of the CD45 surface marker (Jones et al. 2002). When considering other multipotent stem cell types, surface markers have also been identified for the analysis and isolation of neural stem cells (NSC) and neural progenitors from brain tissue such as Lex1 in mouse (Capela and Temple 2002) and CD133 in human (Uchida et al. 2000).

In the field of human PSC, expression of the surface markers SSEA-3, SSEA-4, TRA-1-60 and TRA-1-81 has been typically used for identification and separation of these cells, both ESC and iPSC. More recently, efforts have been devoted towards the identification of novel and more specific surface markers to ensure the complete depletion of these teratoma-forming cells from differentiating cultures, such as the SSEA-5 antigen (Tang et al. 2011), as well as novel lectin biomarkers (Wang et al. 2011c). In parallel, the design of complete immunophenotyping screens for

identification and isolation of NSC, neurons and glia obtained during *in vitro* neural differentiation of human PSC has also been focused (Pruszak et al. 2007; Sundberg et al. 2011; Yuan et al. 2011). In what concerns to mouse ESC, SSEA-1 is generally used as universal surface marker for identification and separation of these cells.

The following sections will describe different immunoaffinity-based separation techniques that take advantage of these surface markers for targeting stem cells and their derivatives.

Fluorescence-Activated Cell Sorting (FACS)

Fluorescence-activated Cell Sorting (FACS) is one of the most widely used high-resolution techniques for isolation and purification of cells including stem cells and their derivatives. Cell separation in FACS relies on by Flow Cytometry exploiting cell's size and light-scattering properties. However, the full potential of flow cytometry as a preparative separation technique is only achieved when fluorescently-labelled monoclonal antibodies are used to bind to specific antigen markers responsible for a particular surface phenotype. As previously mentioned, one of the major limitations associated to immunoaffinity techniques is the absence of surface markers to identify and isolate specific stem cell types or their derivatives. In FACS this limitation can be surpassed through the insertion of reporter constructs inside the cells to make fluorescent labels (*e.g.* a fluorescent protein expressed under the control of a specific promoter) (Aubert et al. 2003; Wang et al. 2011a). In addition, the use of reporter constructs also avoids the time-consuming step of immunostaining. Nevertheless, the genetic modification of stem cells to be used in clinical applications can raise important regulatory concerns and others that should be carefully analysed.

Flow cytometry is a powerful analytical and preparative technique with three major components: fluidics, optics and electronics (Brown and Wittwer 2000). After analysis and identification of the target population to be sorted, the cells in the liquid stream will be separated into small droplets through the use of mechanical vibrations. These droplets can be positively or negatively charged and when flowing parallel to electrodes are deflected into sampling tubes depending on the charge of the droplet (*i.e.* a cell generates a negative charge if fluoresces, and a positive charge if not). Since FACS allows the fractionation of one cell at a time this technique presents unique resolution capacities.

When concerning the stem cell field, FACS is widely used for sorting of human HSPC based on CD34 expression after removing the more mature cells and reducing the sample volume by density gradient centrifugation (Weissman and Shizuru 2008). This application is widely used in clinical settings. In fact, FACS would be very time consuming and expensive to process whole blood directly. Importantly, FACS was effective to obtain highly purified mPB $CD34^{+}CD90^{+}$ cells allowing the preparation of cancer-free transplants in breast cancer patients (Negrin et al. 2000). More recently, FACS has also been used for the depletion of PSC from heterogeneous cell populations obtained after cell differentiation, based on the expression of

SSEA-4 in human and primate ESC (Fong et al. 2009; Shibata et al. 2006), TRA-1-60 in human ESC (Fong et al. 2009) and the expression of SSEA-1 in mouse ESC (Fukuda et al. 2006). It was also used for purification of ESC-derived neurons expressing the cell surface marker neural cell adhesion molecule (NCAM or CD56) (Pruszak et al. 2007) and for the isolation of ventricular-like cardiomyocytes differentiated from mouse ESC using a reporter cell line (Muller et al. 2000).

Although FACS presents an impaired high-resolution capacity, the equipment is large, very expensive and requires skilled technicians to operate it. In addition, it imposes significant contamination risks and a high shear stress to the cells. Importantly, the throughput of the technique is limited, with processing times of 3–6 hours including the pre-processing steps for immunostaining. Due to these characteristics, FACS is particularly adequate for purification of cells for biomedical research mainly, but very limited at a process scale for the manufacturing of cells for clinical applications. Therefore, other more scalable immunoaffinity techniques have been proposed.

Immunomagnetic Cell Separation

Magnetic-activated cell sorting (MACS) is a trademark name (Miltenyi Biotec) for a magnetic-based cell separation technique using small, magnetically susceptible beads bound to a monoclonal antibody. To achieve cell separation, cells are mixed with the beads and this mixture is then loaded into a column that is placed under the influence of a magnetic field. Due to this, the bead-carrying cells will be retained in the column whereas the unbound cells will be washed away (Fig. 7.1). The bead-carrying cells can then be recovered by elution after turning off the magnetic field. This technique can be used both for the enrichment of a target cell type (positive selection) or for the depletion of unwanted cells (negative selection).

Since the implementation of the original concept of MACS, this technology has been the focus of important developments (Grutzkau and Radbruch 2010). The most recent advances were the development of column-free systems (*e.g.* EasySep, Stem Cell Technologies) that rely on the use of very small submicron magnetic particles. Due to their biological and optical inertness, colloidal super-paramagnetic particles ranging from 20 to 100 nm have become the gold standard for magnetic cell separation (Grutzkau and Radbruch 2010). These microbeads are always in suspension allowing fast binding kinetics and short labelling procedures. Moreover, due to their small size, these particles do not saturate cell epitopes and thus they do not have to be removed for downstream applications. For example, these particle-antibody complexes do not interfere with subsequent flow cytometric analysis in opposition to cells labelled with microparticles, where the optical properties are changed. Until the introduction of this separation technology, cells labelled with submicron magnetic particles had to be magnetically separated on a column containing a magnetic matrix (*e.g.* StemSep™, Stem Cell Technologies) requiring an extra step to remove the purified cells from the column. Other developments of MACS technology consisted on the development of multimagnetic devices that

allow parallel processing of samples (autoMACS™ Pro, Miltenyi Biotec). In addition, for clinical applications requiring automated cell separation on a large scale, closed and sterile system, the target cells can be enriched from up to 1.2×10^{11} cells using the CliniMACS® system (Miltenyi Biotec). These automated systems have been widely used to enrich stem/progenitor cells from BM, UCB and mPB for use in hematopoietic cell transplantation (Weissman and Shizuru 2008) and for the isolation of highly purified UCB CD133$^+$ cells from freshly isolated or cryopreserved samples (Bonanno et al. 2004).

Traditional MACS technology was already used for the separation of cardiomyocytes derived from human PSC after having identified VCAM1 as a cell surface marker (Uosaki et al. 2011). With this method it was possible to obtain more than 95 % of cells expressing TNNT2 (cardiac troponin – T). It was also used for the separation of undifferentiated mouse ESC from a pool of differentiated and undifferentiated cells in a batch system. By using a mathematical model it was predicted that MACS technology alone would be insufficient to achieve the necessary clearance of teratoma-forming undifferentiated cells for a therapeutic application (Schriebl et al. 2010). However, in a more recent work it was shown that by using MACS followed by selective killing of residual human ESC with a specific cytotoxic antibody, the required purity of human ESC-differentiated cells can be achieved (Schriebl et al. 2012).

When compared to other separation technologies, MACS may present undesirable biological effects from the use of magnetic particles, which can interfere with cell features and further cell analysis, for example using flow cytometry, since the cell's optical properties can change. However, MACS is very easy to use, it is faster than FACS and provides comparable purity (especially if 2 consecutive cycles of magnetic separation are combined) and efficacy, and potentially conveys lower shear stress to the cells (Grutzkau and Radbruch 2010). For instances, concerning the enrichment of UCB CD34$^+$ cells we recently reported average values of 69 % purity (%CD34$^+$) after one round of purification (first column, cell recovery of 93 %). The purity of the cell population obtained could be further increased to 93 % (similar to the purities reached by FACS) after a second round of purification (second column, 52 % cell recovery) (Andrade et al. 2011). Both techniques can be strategically combined, by using MACS for pre-enrichment of rare cells and a subsequent FACS purification. However, both methods may be expensive and unsuitable for large-scale processing. Importantly, MACS has been considered the gold standard for stem cell isolation since it has been approved by FDA for clinical purposes, in particular for the enrichment of CD34$^+$ cells in neuroblastoma ex-vivo therapy (Handgretinger et al. 2002).

Affinity Chromatography

One of the most important requirements when selecting a separation technique for stem cell-based isolation and purification for cell therapy applications is their potential for large scale bioprocessing. Chromatography is one of the most powerful and

widely used separation and purification techniques in downstream processing of biomolecules and the adoption of this method for the separation of different cell types potentially offers many advantages with respect to scalability when compared to FACS and MACS. Since many years ago, several examples have been described in the literature regarding the use of packed bed chromatography for stem cell purification using for example a chromatographic column of avidin-coated Sephadex beads for $CD34^+$ cell enrichment (Johnsen et al. 1999). However, this technique presents several important limitations such as the high shear stress conveyed to the cells, long processing times and the slow rate of diffusion within the pores of the matrix. Indeed, the large size of the cells, their low diffusivity as well as their complex surface structure and chemistry pose severe challenges. Therefore, novel alternatives have been proposed for efficient and gentle cell separation under the principles of chromatography. An alternative to packed bed chromatography can be potentially provided by immunoaffinity expanded bed chromatography (EBC) since this technique is characterized by a high interparticular porosity, high adsorbent surface area and a lower shear hydrodynamic environment. This makes EBC a potentially adequate technique for stem cell-based purification but until now it was only used for the recovery of other human cells, such as human monocytes, from a heterogeneous mixture of blood cells (Ujam et al. 2003). Another alternative can be provided by the use of monolithic chromatographic columns. In this case, columns are made of a continuous matrix rather than beads with porous channels. One possible type of these monolithic chromatographic columns are supermacroporous cryogels (Lozinsky et al. 2003). These columns are prepared by gelation or polymerization at sub-zero temperature under frozen conditions and they have large (10–100 μm) and interconnected pores, allowing micrometer size particles between 1 and 15 μm (like cells) to pass through the columns non-retained (Kumar and Bhardwaj 2008; Kumar and Srivastava 2010). In addition, the hydrophilic nature of pore walls results in a gentle separation system very well suited for large and fragile cells. Envisaging a precise fractionation, these chromatographic columns can be derivatized with a specific antibody ligand introduced at the surface of the pores, allowing the affinity capture of a specific cell type. The application of cryogel-based affinity chromatography was reported for the capture of $CD34^+$ cells from UCB (Kumar and Srivastava 2010). Protein A is a protein obtained from *Staphylococus aureus*, which binds to the Fc portion of IgG from a wide range of species. When it is covalently coupled to Cryogel surfaces it can be used as an efficient adsorbent for cells that have been coated with a specific antibody (IgG type) that can thus be separated from cells that lack the surface antigen against which the antibody is directed. In this specific case, Protein A-captured $CD34^+$ cells were recovered from the Cryogel by mechanical squeezing. Indeed, since these cryogels are elastic and soft they can withstand the pressure and can be compressed four-to-six fold without getting damaged and they re-swell to their original shape upon addition of more liquid. More than 95 % of bound cells were recovered through this method and these cells maintained their proliferative capacity and the expression of CD34 cell surface marker. Nevertheless, the application of this methodology for other stem cell types remains to be explored.

Aqueous Two-Phase Systems (ATPS)

An alternative separation method with a high scalable potential is aqueous two-phase systems (ATPS). ATPS a liquid-liquid fractionation technique used for recovery and primary purification of biological products, including for separation and/or purification of cells (Cabral 2007). This biphasic system is composed of two aqueous solutions at critical concentrations inducing the formation of two immiscible phases. The technique explores the differential partitioning of the biomolecules or cells between the two phases since they will preferentially partition to one of the phases and avoid the other based on their affinity for the compounds that constitute the two phases or the interface. The separation can be performed in one or more steps in negative and/or positive mode according to the required purity degree and cell yield. ATPS can be classified as polymer-polymer and also as polymer-salt systems. Most commonly used polymers include polyethylene glycol (PEG) and dextran whereas the most widely used salts are phosphates, sulphates and citrates (Cabral 2007).

In the case of the more traditional ATPS systems, the affinity of the molecules or cells for one of the two phases or interface is solely defined by their physicochemical properties such as hydrophobicity, size and net surface charge. Nevertheless, novel ATPS strategies for cell separation have been developed that include the use of antibody-conjugated polymers, namely utilizing temperature-sensitive polymers (Kumar et al. 2001). This combined strategy was first employed for type-specific separation of acute myeloid leukemia (KG-1) cells expressing the CD34 antigen in a PEG/dextran system using an antibody conjugated with a temperature-sensitive polymer, the poly-N-isopropylacrylamide (PNIPAM) (Kumar et al. 2001). Under these conditions, the target cells were purified with a high viability, a yield of 75 % and a purity of 80 %. Moreover, the use of PNIPAM allows the potential recovery and re-utilization of the antibody, which turns this method very cost-effective. This separation system was more recently adapted to stem/progenitor cell isolation in our laboratory, more precisely for the isolation of human $CD34^+$ cells directly from whole UCB samples. In this case, the initial population of $CD34^+$ cells (0.2 % of the initial sample) was enriched to values up to 42 % with a yield above 90 % in a single partitioning step. When compared with MACS technology, ATPS provides similar recovery yields (Sousa et al. 2011) and is a more simple method since avoids the use of magnetic particles. Moreover, when compared to FACS, ATPS is more scalable and can be used at an industrial scale. Nevertheless, ATPS still have not addressed the purity standards required for a clinical application (Ruiz-Ruiz et al. 2012) and these systems require the separation of the cells from the phase polymer, which consumes a significant amount of time. Indeed, a repetitive extraction may be required for a sufficient selectivity to be achieved. Considering these characteristics, ATPS can be an adequate solution for purification of stem cells and derivatives for applications in Regenerative Medicine when a precise fractionation is not required but a fast processing is needed. In particular, the ATPS separation method developed in our laboratory is expected to pave a new way to purify HSPC for use in a variety of clinical settings (Sousa et al. 2011).

Other Immunoaffinity Techniques

Immunoadsorption techniques may also be applied for cell separation. One of the most traditionally used is the so-called Panning that consists on the covalent immobilization of antibodies to the surface of polystyrene flasks. The cells with surface receptors that bind to the immobilized ligand will tend to adhere to the plastic, while the loose cell fraction can be removed by gentle washing. One classical example of the use of this technique in the stem cell field is the isolation of $CD34^+$ cells from human BM that was achieved with a purity of about 93 % and with a 74 % yield of the multipotent colony-forming units (CFU-GEMM) (Cardoso et al. 1995). This technique, however, is characterized by a low resolution and scalability.

The distinct transient interactions of different cell types with antibodies or lectins immobilized in a surface under fluid flow can also be used as a strategy for cell separation. It has been described that this characteristic, entitled rolling velocity, can be applied for cell separation when the velocity of a specific cell type is significantly lower than the velocity of a non-interacting cell near the surface (Hammer and Apte 1992). These differential interactions were already used for the separation of primitive populations of HSPC from adult BM and fetal liver ($CD34^+$ and $CD34^+CD38^-$) from more differentiated cells ($CD34^-$ and $CD34^+CD38^+$) since the $CD34^+$ and the $CD34^+CD38^-$ cells were found to roll slowly especially on P-selectin and L-selectin immobilized in a parallel plate flow chamber when compared to more differentiated $CD34^-$ and $CD34^+CD38^+$ cells (Greenberg et al. 2000). The same basic principle was applied for developing an anti-CD34 antibody-immobilized cell-rolling column that can separate cells according to CD34 density on their surface (Mahara and Yamaoka 2010a). This strategy was already applied with success for the separation of different stem cell populations from BM namely MSC with distinct osteoblastic differentiation potential (Mahara and Yamaoka 2010b).

Novel filtration methods that take advantage of affinity interactions have also been applied to the stem cell field. As one example, a separation device that was developed for the isolation of MSC harvests cells via a nonwoven fabric filter composed of rayon and polyethylene, in a semi-closed system reducing contamination risks, without centrifugation (Ito et al. 2010). The filter selectively traps MSC among mononuclear cells based on affinity and not cell size.

7.3.4 Novel Stem Cell-Based Separation Methods

Aptamer-Based Separation

As previously mentioned, immunoaffinity methods are generally used for stem cell-based separation when a high resolution is required. However, this group of methodologies is very expensive mainly due to the necessity of using monoclonal antibodies which may turn unfeasible the application of these technologies on a large-scale for production of stem cells and their derivatives for Regenerative

Medicine. In order to overcome this limitation, novel immunoaffinity alternatives have been recently proposed to the use of monoclonal antibodies, such as the use of synthetic peptides or highly-specific nucleic acids generated by combinatorial chemistry for cell capture, the so-called aptamers (Nery et al. 2009). The use of aptamers may be advantageous since their inherent flexibility enables the molecule to bind to target sites that are not normally accessible for typical antibodies. Due to this characteristic, aptamers can be potentially used to distinguish stem cells of the same lineage and with very similar molecular features but with different degrees of commitment. These novel ligands can potentially be adapted to all types of immunaffinity-based techniques. For example, aptamers can be bound to polymeric matrices such as cryogels, magnetic beads or polymers in order to directly replace them in affinity chromatography, immunomagnetic sorting or ATPS, respectively. Aptamers were already used for stem cell separation, in particular for the isolation of BM MSC (Guo et al. 2006) as an alternative to the traditional adherence to plastic surfaces (Lennon and Caplan 2006) or antibody-based separation. Biotinylated aptamers were developed for the recognition of the molecular signature of MSC that were then used for capturing MSC from BM using anti-biotin microbeads and using a cell sorter after being labelled with fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC). A phenotypic characterization revealed that the purified cells were positive for CD29, CD44 and CD90 expression and most of the cells did not express CD45 being consistent with previous phenotypic characterisation of these cells (Lennon and Caplan 2006). Moreover, following re-plating, the purified cells revealed an increased proliferative capacity and also osteogenic and adipogenic differentiation ability when compared to MSC isolated trough the traditional plastic-adherence method.

Tag-Less Methodologies

In addition to the use of synthetic peptides and aptamers, other alternatives have been proposed to overcome the high-expensive nature of the immunoaffinity-based methods. One recent trend in this field is the development of novel tag-less separation methodologies in which no affinity ligands are required. In this case, cell separation is governed by the biophysical properties of cells. One possible tag-less methodology is Field Flow Fractionation (FFF). FFF encompasses a group of label-free and gentle separation techniques whose principles are based on cellular morphological and biophysical differences such as mass, charge, size, density, shape and rigidity. FFF is achieved within an empty capillary channel by the combined action of a transporting laminar flow of mobile phase and a field that is applied perpendicularly to the flow (Reschiglian et al. 2005). Different types of FFF have been used for stem cell separation (Comte et al. 2006; Guglielmi et al. 2004; Roda et al. 2009a, b) but the simplest variant is gravitational FFF (GrFFF) that makes use of the gravity field. GrFFF was already used for isolating human HSPC from mPB (Roda et al. 2009b) and human MSC from a variety of different sources (Roda et al. 2009a). Undifferentiated human HSPC have “simpler” biophysical properties when compared to more differentiated/committed cells with a spherical/ovoidal shape and

with a low cytoplasm-to-nucleus ratio while committed cells acquire features related to their function that generally correspond to a more irregular shape and to more complex cytoplasm contents and a lower nucleus-to-cytoplasm ratio (Roda et al. 2009b). For this reason, in GrFFF, spherical particles elute later than non-spherical ones of similar size. In the case of human MSC, this technique was used for characterizing MSC populations from different sources, sorting different MSC subpopulations with a high differentiation potential and purifying MSC from epithelial contaminants (Roda et al. 2009a). As a major disadvantage, GrFFF is generally considered an analytical-scale methodology since a low number of cells can be isolated in each run.

Another label-free alternative for identification and separation of stem cells and stem cell-derived cells is dielectrophoresis (DEP). DEP devices consist of microchannels filled with an adequate buffer solution into which the sample is injected. A non-uniform electric field is generated and the cells can be separated, moved or trapped (Fig. 7.1). The response of a cell to DEP-mediated forces depends on the polarization between the suspending medium and the intrinsic dielectrical properties of the cell such as cytoplasm, membrane and cell wall conductivities which are dependent on cell density, size, physiology and differentiation state. In the stem cell field, DEP has been used for enrichment of $CD34^+$ HSPC from BM or mPB (Stephens et al. 1996; Talary et al. 1995). More recently, DEP was also applied to NSC populations derived from PSC (hPSNSC), which allowed to correlate the biophysical properties of cells with their differentiation potential. These studies indicated that the ultimate fate of these cells after differentiation can be predicted by distinct changes in their dielectrophoretic properties before the presence of cell-surface proteins can be detected (Flanagan et al. 2008; Labeed et al. 2011). In particular, recent data demonstrates that membrane capacitance, an electrophysiological property of cells, is inversely correlated with the neurogenic potential of human PSC-derived neural stem/progenitor cells (Labeed et al. 2011). This information indicates a potential mechanism to separate stem cells with different neuronal differentiation potential. DEP does not require a large number of cells nor expensive equipment, which are important advantages when compared to FACS.

Microfluidic Devices

One of the most recent trends in the field of cell separation is the adaptation of the different methodologies to microscale devices. Distinct flow channel designs have been developed for cell sorting based both on the physicochemical (Kim et al. 2008), affinity (Didar and Tabrizian 2010) and biophysical properties of cells. One illustrative example of a classical cell separation method that was recently incorporated into microfluidics is ATPS (Hardt and Hahn 2012). In this case, in opposition to the classic standard batch ATPS, a number of co-flowing streams of immiscible phases are guided through a microchannel while the biological samples partition between the phases. This type of continuous-flow process presents many advantages such as a more rapid mass transfer, an easy separation of the two phases, since

they are recovered from different exit branches, and there is virtually no lower limit for the sample amount to be processed (Hardt and Hahn 2012). Microfluidics present important features for cell separation such as laminar flow, easy integration with mechanical, electrical and optical systems and a low cost fabrication (Wang et al. 2011b). In addition, the use of microfluidics allows handling of very small sample volumes and cell processing on closed systems, which avoids contamination. Although these microscale technologies are very recent, they can potentially be applied to stem cell separation. One example of application of microfluidic devices for stem cell-based separation reported in the literature combines the use of the microfluidic chip technology with optical tweezers, photonic devices that exploit a tightly focused laser beam to manipulate the dielectric properties in three dimensions in a non-invasive manner, for the isolation of human ESC from a mixture of different cells with similar sizes (Wang et al. 2011b). Digital image processing was used for recognition of cell size and fluorescence for separation of human ESC modified with green fluorescent protein (GFP). This microfluidic device thus presents a great potential for depletion of human ESC from cell suspensions obtained after differentiation to eliminate residual tumorigenic, undifferentiated cells.

As another potential application to the stem cell field, microfluidic systems can be used for the development of modern cytometers with enhanced portability for on-site measurements. As one example, micro-fabricated magnetoresistive sensors can be integrated within microfluidic channels for detection of magnetically labelled cells. It was recently described the real-time detection of single magnetically labelled cells with a magnetoresistive based cell cytometer (Loureiro et al. 2011). For KG1-a cells ($CD34^+$) magnetically labelled to anti-CD34-conjugated beads (Miltenyi) and flowing through a 150 μm wide, 14 μm high microchannel, with speeds around 1 cm/s, bipolar signals with an average amplitude of 10–20 μV were observed. This system demonstrated to be effective for cell counting and has potential to be further exploited for stem cell-based separation.

Overall, despite the huge potential of these microscale devices to provide a high resolution separation it should be emphasized that the scaling up of these technologies is limited to the integration of several units in parallel configurations and for this reason the amounts of cells processed is not sufficient for a clinical application requiring $1–2 \times 10^8$ cells per patient. Thus, the application of these novel technologies is still for now restricted to the diagnosis field.

7.4 Large-Scale Manufacturing of Stem Cells and Derivatives for Cell Therapies: Bioprocess Integration

When considering the application of separation technologies for stem cell-based therapies, one of the most important issues to consider is their rational integration with culture technologies, especially bioreactor culture systems. A particularly relevant example in which the rational bioprocess integration will be required is the large-scale production of human PSC-derived cells for Regenerative Medicine applications. In fact, among other issues, the application of human PSC derivatives

in clinical settings is critically hampered by the absence of highly-efficient separation techniques for purification of the desired cell phenotype after human PSC differentiation. An important aspect to consider when designing such a bioprocess is the integration of at least one high-resolution separation operation in a negative mode for the depletion of human PSC. This is a critical issue mainly because these cells can cause the formation of tumours upon transplantation but also because the presence of human PSC in culture, especially at high densities, can negatively influence the outcome of the differentiation process. Another critical issue associated to the use of PSC derivatives in cell therapies is the low efficiency of human PSC differentiation protocols, with the desired phenotype being obtained with relatively low yields. Due to this, high-resolution separation techniques must also be integrated in a positive mode after the differentiation process for capturing the desired cell phenotype with a relatively high yield and purity. A successful bioprocess for the *in vitro* production of PSC-derived cells should thus perform a rational integration of these purification operations with the different steps of PSC expansion, commitment and differentiation in bioreactors.

Another example of an integrated bioprocess based on stem cell technology includes a scalable bioreactor system towards the efficient production of human HSPC featuring *in situ* cell selection to maximize cell productivity. The major objective of this operation is the depletion of mature blood cells arising in culture and their overall effects on culture microenvironment, which is expected to result in a more efficient expansion of HSPC. In fact, these cells are known to secrete negative regulators inhibiting stem cell proliferation and/or inducing differentiation, which may be a major limitation on the expansion of the more primitive HSC. This separation can be performed by using our previously established immunoaffinity ATPS system for UCB HSPC isolation (Sousa et al. 2011). Therefore, the integration of this separation method in a bioreactor system will allow the *in situ* elimination of the more mature cells. The ability to successfully isolate, purify and expand the numbers of human HSPC *ex-vivo*, especially those from the UCB, will be an enormous boost to all current and future medical uses of these cells.

Overall, the ability to purify the cultured stem cell populations or their derived progeny along with cell production in a bioreactor, as well as at downstream processing, will represent a major breakthrough in terms of stem cell processing. The integration of these operations should thus be rationally performed in order to develop robust, scalable and cost-effective Bioprocesses towards the large-scale production of stem cells and their derivatives, which ultimately will have a major impact on the potential clinical use of these cells.

7.5 Conclusions and Future Trends

Considering the present and future applications of stem cells in Regenerative Medicine, drug screening, pharmacological testing as well as in fundamental studies on developmental biology and human disease mechanisms it has been recently identified the urgent necessity of developing novel separation techniques and

strategies that can be successfully used for the isolation and purification of stem cells and their derivatives. According to the challenges to be faced in this field, separation techniques to be adopted should fulfill major requirements including a high-resolution capacity as well as a high potential for scalability. However, as described in previous sections, presently available techniques have a number of limitations such as their low selectivity, low scalability and contamination risks. Stem cell isolation from a variety of tissues has been performed over the years through the use of physicochemical-based methods, such as density gradient centrifugation, membrane filtration and adhesion-based separation, but these techniques are characterized by a low resolution capacity and they are only efficient for the separation of very different cell types. Affinity-based traditional techniques for cell purification, such as FACS and MACS, have also been systematically used in the stem cell field but these methods are not easily scalable and they are very expensive, due to the necessity of labeling the cells with specific targets for surface markers (*e.g.* monoclonal antibodies). In addition, cell labeling procedures (*e.g.* with magnetic particles) can potentially compromise the therapeutic application of cells. Furthermore, with the exception of the hematopoietic family, several stem cell (*e.g.* human MSC) and stem cell-derived populations (*e.g.* human PSC-derived cells) still lack a panel of surface markers that can be used as targets during affinity-based separation methods. A great effort should thus be performed towards the identification of novel more specific antigens that can distinguish similar cell populations of the same lineage. For that purpose, future efforts in this field should be focused on performing a thorough characterization of cell populations towards obtaining panels of novel surface markers similar to the ones already available in the haematological field. In addition, different techniques have been proposed to overcome some of the obstacles associated with affinity-based separation methods. Affinity chromatography and ATPS have been considered attractive alternatives since they present a higher potential for scalability but they still require cell labeling. An alternative to overcome this problem is the use of novel cell ligands, such as lectins and aptamers, that can potentially be less expensive for large-scale applications (*i.e.* aptamers are obtained by chemical synthesis). Microscale technologies based on microfluidic devices have also recently emerged as another powerful tool to overcome these limitations. As a novel trend in this field, microfluidic devices can be designed to perform a high-resolution separation based on the distinct biophysical properties of different cell populations after submitting cells to an electrical stimulation or a gravitational field. These novel "tag-less" biophysical techniques can be combined with other methodologies based on complementary cell properties, such as affinity characteristics, providing an integrated separation strategy. Moreover, the use of laminar flow that characterizes microfluidic systems potentiates a high-resolution separation and parallelization of microfluidic channels in compact arrays increasing the scalability and throughput of the method. Importantly, these devices can be operated as closed systems avoiding cell contamination. Future developments in this field should focus the integration of several microfabricated devices in *lab-on-a-chip* platforms to perform cell separation, culture, monitoring and concentration in a fully controlled, automated and closed system. Finally, when considering the

different applications in stem cell-based therapies, future technological improvements should envisage the development of separation systems with unprecedented selectivity in order to deplete residual pluripotent and immature phenotypes that can cause tumours upon transplantation. Moreover, as an important future trend, integration of separation techniques with stem cell bioreactor culture and cryopreservation is an essential requisite for the translation of stem cells and stem cell-derived products to the clinics and drug discovery. Overall, these progresses are expected to boost the application of stem cell-based therapies in the near future.

Acknowledgments The authors acknowledge the funding from Fundação para a Ciência e Tecnologia (FCT) through the *Compromisso para a Ciência* Program (2007), MIT-Portugal Program and projects PTDC/EBB-BIO/101088/2008, PTDC/EQU-ERQ/105277/2008, PTDC/EQU-EQU/114231/2009.

References

Andrade PZ, da Silva CL, dos Santos F, Almeida-Porada G, Cabral JM (2011) Initial CD34+ cell-enrichment of cord blood determines hematopoietic stem/progenitor cell yield upon ex vivo expansion. J Cell Biochem 112(7):1822–1831

Aubert J, Stavridis MP, Tweedie S, O'Reilly M, Vierlinger K, Li M, Ghazal P, Pratt T, Mason JO, Roy D et al (2003) Screening for mammalian neural genes via fluorescence-activated cell sorter purification of neural precursors from Sox1-gfp knock-in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100(Suppl 1):11836–11841

Barry F, Boynton R, Murphy M, Haynesworth S, Zaia J (2001) The SH-3 and SH-4 antibodies recognize distinct epitopes on CD73 from human mesenchymal stem cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 289(2):519–524

Bonanno G, Perillo A, Rutella S, De Ritis DG, Mariotti A, Marone M, Meoni F, Scambia G, Leone G, Mancuso S et al (2004) Clinical isolation and functional characterization of cord blood CD133+ hematopoietic progenitor cells. Transfusion 44(7):1087–1097

Brown M, Wittwer C (2000) Flow cytometry: principles and clinical applications in hematology. Clin Chem 46(8 Pt 2):1221–1229

Cabral JM (2007) Cell partitioning in aqueous two-phase polymer systems. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 106:151–171

Capela A, Temple S (2002) LeX/ssea-1 is expressed by adult mouse CNS stem cells, identifying them as nonependymal. Neuron 35(5):865–875

Caplan AI (2007) Adult mesenchymal stem cells for tissue engineering versus regenerative medicine. J Cell Physiol 213(2):341–347

Caplan AI (2009) Why are MSCs therapeutic? New data: new insight. J Pathol 217(2):318–324

Cardoso AA, Watt SM, Batard P, Li ML, Hatzfeld A, Genevier H, Hatzfeld J (1995) An improved panning technique for the selection of CD34+ human bone marrow hematopoietic cells with high recovery of early progenitors. Exp Hematol 23(5):407–412

Chou S, Chu P, Hwang W, Lodish H (2010) Expansion of human cord blood hematopoietic stem cells for transplantation. Cell Stem Cell 7(4):427–428

Comte I, Battu S, Mathonnet M, Bessette B, Lalloue F, Cardot P, Ayer-Le Lievre C (2006) Neural stem cell separation from the embryonic avian olfactory epithelium by sedimentation field-flow fractionation. J Chromatogr B Analyt Technol Biomed Life Sci 843(2):175–182

Corti S, Locatelli F, Papadimitriou D, Donadoni C, Del Bo R, Fortunato F, Strazzer S, Salani S, Bresolin N, Comi GP (2005) Multipotentiality, homing properties, and pyramidal neurogenesis of CNS-derived LeX(ssea-1)+/CXCR4+ stem cells. FASEB J 19(13):1860–1862

da Silva CL, Goncalves R, Crapnell KB, Cabral JM, Zanjani ED, Almeida-Porada G (2005) A human stromal-based serum-free culture system supports the ex vivo expansion/maintenance of bone marrow and cord blood hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells. Exp Hematol 33(7):828–835

da Silva CL, Goncalves R, Porada CD, Ascensao JL, Zanjani ED, Cabral JM, Almeida-Porada G (2009) Differences amid bone marrow and cord blood hematopoietic stem/progenitor cell division kinetics. J Cell Physiol 220(1):102–111

Didar TF, Tabrizian M (2010) Adhesion based detection, sorting and enrichment of cells in microfluidic Lab-on-Chip devices. Lab Chip 10(22):3043–3053

Diogo MM, da Silva CL, Cabral JM (2012) Separation technologies for stem cell bioprocessing. Biotechnol Bioeng 109(11):2699–2709

Flanagan LA, Lu J, Wang L, Marchenko SA, Jeon NL, Lee AP, Monuki ES (2008) Unique dielectric properties distinguish stem cells and their differentiated progeny. Stem Cells 26(3): 656–665

Fong CY, Peh GS, Gauthaman K, Bongso A (2009) Separation of SSEA-4 and TRA-1-60 labelled undifferentiated human embryonic stem cells from a heterogeneous cell population using magnetic-activated cell sorting (MACS) and fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS). Stem Cell Rev 5(1):72–80

Fukuda H, Takahashi J, Watanabe K, Hayashi H, Morizane A, Koyanagi M, Sasai Y, Hashimoto N (2006) Fluorescence-activated cell sorting-based purification of embryonic stem cell-derived neural precursors averts tumor formation after transplantation. Stem Cells 24(3):763–771

Geens M, Van de Velde H, De Block G, Goossens E, Van Steirteghem A, Tournaye H (2007) The efficiency of magnetic-activated cell sorting and fluorescence-activated cell sorting in the decontamination of testicular cell suspensions in cancer patients. Hum Reprod 22(3):733–742

Goncalves R, Lobato da Silva C, Cabral JM, Zanjani ED, Almeida-Porada G (2006) A Stro-1(+) human universal stromal feeder layer to expand/maintain human bone marrow hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells in a serum-free culture system. Exp Hematol 34(10):1353–1359

Gonzalez-Gonzalez M, Vazquez-Villegas P, Garcia-Salinas C, Rito-Palomares M (2012) Current strategies and challenges for the purification of stem cells. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 87(1):2–10

Greenberg AW, Kerr WG, Hammer DA (2000) Relationship between selectin-mediated rolling of hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells and progression in hematopoietic development. Blood 95(2):478–486

Gronthos S, Zannettino AC (2008) A method to isolate and purify human bone marrow stromal stem cells. Methods Mol Biol 449:45–57

Grutzkau A, Radbruch A (2010) Small but mighty: how the MACS-technology based on nanosized superparamagnetic particles has helped to analyze the immune system within the last 20 years. Cytometry A 77(7):643–647

Guglielmi L, Battu S, Le Bert M, Faucher JL, Cardot PJ, Denizot Y (2004) Mouse embryonic stem cell sorting for the generation of transgenic mice by sedimentation field-flow fractionation. Anal Chem 76(6):1580–1585

Guo KT, SchAfer R, Paul A, Gerber A, Ziemer G, Wendel HP (2006) A new technique for the isolation and surface immobilization of mesenchymal stem cells from whole bone marrow using high-specific DNA aptamers. Stem Cells 24(10):2220–2231

Hammer DA, Apte SM (1992) Simulation of cell rolling and adhesion on surfaces in shear flow: general results and analysis of selectin-mediated neutrophil adhesion. Biophys J 63(1):35–57

Handgretinger R, Lang P, Ihm K, Schumm M, Geiselhart A, Koscielniak E, Hero B, Klingebiel T, Niethammer D (2002) Isolation and transplantation of highly purified autologous peripheral CD34(+) progenitor cells: purging efficacy, hematopoietic reconstitution and long-term outcome in children with high-risk neuroblastoma. Bone Marrow Transplant 29(9):731–736

Hardt S, Hahn T (2012) Microfluidics with aqueous two-phase systems. Lab Chip 12(3):434–442

Higuchi A, Iizuka A, Gomei Y, Miyazaki T, Sakurai M, Matsuoka Y, Natori SH (2006) Separation of CD34+ cells from human peripheral blood through polyurethane foaming membranes. J Biomed Mater Res A 78(3):491–499

Higuchi A, Sekiya M, Gomei Y, Sakurai M, Chen WY, Egashira S, Matsuoka Y (2008) Separation of hematopoietic stem cells from human peripheral blood through modified polyurethane foaming membranes. J Biomed Mater Res A 85(4):853–861

Ito K, Aoyama T, Fukiage K, Otsuka S, Furu M, Jin Y, Nasu A, Ueda M, Kasai Y, Ashihara E et al (2010) A novel method to isolate mesenchymal stem cells from bone marrow in a closed system using a device made by nonwoven fabric. Tissue Eng Part C Methods 16(1):81–91

Johnsen HE, Hutchings M, Taaning E, Rasmussen T, Knudsen LM, Hansen SW, Andersen H, Gaarsdal E, Jensen L, Nikolajsen K et al (1999) Selective loss of progenitor subsets following clinical CD34+ cell enrichment by magnetic field, magnetic beads or chromatography separation. Bone Marrow Transplant 24(12):1329–1336

Jones EA, Kinsey SE, English A, Jones RA, Straszynski L, Meredith DM, Markham AF, Jack A, Emery P, McGonagle D (2002) Isolation and characterization of bone marrow multipotential mesenchymal progenitor cells. Arthritis Rheum 46(12):3349–3360

Kim SM, Lee SH, Suh KY (2008) Cell research with physically modified microfluidic channels: a review. Lab Chip 8(7):1015–1023

Kumar A, Bhardwaj A (2008) Methods in cell separation for biomedical application: cryogels as a new tool. Biomed Mater 3(3):034008

Kumar A, Srivastava A (2010) Cell separation using cryogel-based affinity chromatography. Nat Protoc 5(11):1737–1747

Kumar A, Kamihira M, Galaev IY, Mattiasson B, Iijima S (2001) Type-specific separation of animal cells in aqueous two-phase systems using antibody conjugates with temperature-sensitive polymers. Biotechnol Bioeng 75(5):570–580

Labeed FH, Lu J, Mulhall HJ, Marchenko SA, Hoettges KF, Estrada LC, Lee AP, Hughes MP, Flanagan LA (2011) Biophysical characteristics reveal neural stem cell differentiation potential. PLoS One 6(9):e25458

Laflamme MA, Chen KY, Naumova AV, Muskheli V, Fugate JA, Dupras SK, Reinecke H, Xu C, Hassanipour M, Police S et al (2007) Cardiomyocytes derived from human embryonic stem cells in pro-survival factors enhance function of infarcted rat hearts. Nat Biotechnol 25(9):1015–1024

Lennon DP, Caplan AI (2006) Isolation of human marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells. Exp Hematol 34(11):1604–1605

Levenberg S, Ferreira LS, Chen-Konak L, Kraehenbuehl TP, Langer R (2010) Isolation, differentiation and characterization of vascular cells derived from human embryonic stem cells. Nat Protoc 5(6):1115–1126

Loureiro J, Andrade PZ, Cardoso S, da Silva CL, Cabral JM, Freitas PP (2011) Magnetoresistive chip cytometer. Lab Chip 11(13):2255–2261

Lozinsky VI, Galaev IY, Plieva FM, Savina IN, Jungvid H, Mattiasson B (2003) Polymeric cryogels as promising materials of biotechnological interest. Trends Biotechnol 21(10):445–451

Mahara A, Yamaoka T (2010a) Antibody-immobilized column for quick cell separation based on cell rolling. Biotechnol Prog 26(2):441–447

Mahara A, Yamaoka T (2010b) Continuous separation of cells of high osteoblastic differentiation potential from mesenchymal stem cells on an antibody-immobilized column. Biomaterials 31(14):4231–4237

Majore I, Moretti P, Hass R, Kasper C (2009) Identification of subpopulations in mesenchymal stem cell-like cultures from human umbilical cord. Cell Commun Signal 7:6

Muller M, Fleischmann BK, Selbert S, Ji GJ, Endl E, Middeler G, Muller OJ, Schlenke P, Frese S, Wobus AM et al (2000) Selection of ventricular-like cardiomyocytes from ES cells in vitro. FASEB J 14(15):2540–2548

Negrin RS, Atkinson K, Leemhuis T, Hanania E, Juttner C, Tierney K, Hu WW, Johnston LJ, Shizurn JA, Stockerl-Goldstein KE et al (2000) Transplantation of highly purified CD34+Thy-1+ hematopoietic stem cells in patients with metastatic breast cancer. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant 6(3):262–271

Nery AA, Wrenger C, Ulrich H (2009) Recognition of biomarkers and cell-specific molecular signatures: aptamers as capture agents. J Sep Sci 32(10):1523–1530

Parekkadan B, Sethu P, van Poll D, Yarmush ML, Toner M (2007) Osmotic selection of human mesenchymal stem/progenitor cells from umbilical cord blood. Tissue Eng 13(10):2465–2473

Pethig R, Menachery A, Pells S, De Sousa P (2010) Dielectrophoresis: a review of applications for stem cell research. J Biomed Biotechnol 2010:182581

Pruszak J, Sonntag KC, Aung MH, Sanchez-Pernaute R, Isacson O (2007) Markers and methods for cell sorting of human embryonic stem cell-derived neural cell populations. Stem Cells 25(9):2257–2268

Reschiglian P, Zattoni A, Roda B, Michelini E, Roda A (2005) Field-flow fractionation and biotechnology. Trends Biotechnol 23(9):475–483

Rietze RL, Valcanis H, Brooker GF, Thomas T, Voss AK, Bartlett PF (2001) Purification of a pluripotent neural stem cell from the adult mouse brain. Nature 412(6848):736–739

Roda B, Lanzoni G, Alviano F, Zattoni A, Costa R, Di Carlo A, Marchionni C, Franchina M, Ricci F, Tazzari PL et al (2009a) A novel stem cell tag-less sorting method. Stem Cell Rev 5(4):420–427

Roda B, Reschiglian P, Alviano F, Lanzoni G, Bagnara GP, Ricci F, Buzzi M, Tazzari PL, Pagliaro P, Michelini E et al (2009b) Gravitational field-flow fractionation of human hemopoietic stem cells. J Chromatogr A 1216(52):9081–9087

Ruiz-Ruiz F, Benavides J, Aguilar O, Rito-Palomares M (2012) Aqueous two-phase affinity partitioning systems: current applications and trends. J Chromatogr A 1244:1–13

Santos F, Andrade PZ, Abecasis MM, Gimble JM, Chase LG, Campbell AM, Boucher S, Vemuri MC, Silva CL, Cabral JM (2011) Toward a clinical-grade expansion of mesenchymal stem cells from human sources: a microcarrier-based culture system under xeno-free conditions. Tissue Eng Part C Methods 17(12):1201–1210

Schriebl K, Lim S, Choo A, Tscheliessnig A, Jungbauer A (2010) Stem cell separation: a bottleneck in stem cell therapy. Biotechnol J 5(1):50–61

Schriebl K, Satianegara G, Hwang A, Tan HL, Fong WJ, Yang HH, Jungbauer A, Choo A (2012) Selective removal of undifferentiated human embryonic stem cells using magnetic activated cell sorting followed by a cytotoxic antibody. Tissue Eng Part A 18(9–10):899–909

Shibata H, Ageyama N, Tanaka Y, Kishi Y, Sasaki K, Nakamura S, Muramatsu S, Hayashi S, Kitano Y, Terao K et al (2006) Improved safety of hematopoietic transplantation with monkey embryonic stem cells in the allogeneic setting. Stem Cells 24(6):1450–1457

Sousa AF, Andrade PZ, Pirzgalska RM, Galhoz TM, Azevedo AM, da Silva CL, Aires-Barros MR, Cabral JM (2011) A novel method for human hematopoietic stem/progenitor cell isolation from umbilical cord blood based on immunoaffinity aqueous two-phase partitioning. Biotechnol Lett 33(12):2373–2377

Stephens M, Talary MS, Pethig R, Burnett AK, Mills KI (1996) The dielectrophoresis enrichment of CD34+ cells from peripheral blood stem cell harvests. Bone Marrow Transplant 18(4):777–782

Sundberg M, Andersson PH, Akesson E, Odeberg J, Holmberg L, Inzunza J, Falci S, Ohman J, Suuronen R, Skottman H et al (2011) Markers of pluripotency and differentiation in human neural precursor cells derived from embryonic stem cells and CNS tissue. Cell Transplant 20(2):177–191

Talary MS, Mills KI, Hoy T, Burnett AK, Pethig R (1995) Dielectrophoretic separation and enrichment of CD34+ cell subpopulation from bone marrow and peripheral blood stem cells. Med Biol Eng Comput 33(2):235–237

Tang C, Lee AS, Volkmer JP, Sahoo D, Nag D, Mosley AR, Inlay MA, Ardehali R, Chavez SL, Pera RR et al (2011) An antibody against SSEA-5 glycan on human pluripotent stem cells enables removal of teratoma-forming cells. Nat Biotechnol 29(9):829–834

Tondreau T, Lagneaux L, Dejeneffe M, Delforge A, Massy M, Mortier C, Bron D (2004) Isolation of BM mesenchymal stem cells by plastic adhesion or negative selection: phenotype, proliferation kinetics and differentiation potential. Cytotherapy 6(4):372–379

Uchida N, Buck DW, He D, Reitsma MJ, Masek M, Phan TV, Tsukamoto AS, Gage FH, Weissman IL (2000) Direct isolation of human central nervous system stem cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97(26):14720–14725

Ujam LB, Clemmitt RH, Clarke SA, Brooks RA, Rushton N, Chase HA (2003) Isolation of monocytes from human peripheral blood using immuno-affinity expanded-bed adsorption. Biotechnol Bioeng 83(5):554–566

Uosaki H, Fukushima H, Takeuchi A, Matsuoka S, Nakatsuji N, Yamanaka S, Yamashita JK (2011) Efficient and scalable purification of cardiomyocytes from human embryonic and induced pluripotent stem cells by VCAM1 surface expression. PLoS One 6(8):e23657

Wang P, Rodriguez RT, Wang J, Ghodasara A, Kim SK (2011a) Targeting SOX17 in human embryonic stem cells creates unique strategies for isolating and analyzing developing endoderm. Cell Stem Cell 8(3):335–346

Wang X, Chen S, Kong M, Wang Z, Costa KD, Li RA, Sun D (2011b) Enhanced cell sorting and manipulation with combined optical tweezer and microfluidic chip technologies. Lab Chip 11(21):3656–3662

Wang YC, Nakagawa M, Garitaonandia I, Slavin I, Altun G, Lacharite RM, Nazor KL, Tran HT, Lynch CL, Leonardo TR et al (2011c) Specific lectin biomarkers for isolation of human pluripotent stem cells identified through array-based glycomic analysis. Cell Res 21(11): 1551–1563

Weissman IL, Shizuru JA (2008) The origins of the identification and isolation of hematopoietic stem cells, and their capability to induce donor-specific transplantation tolerance and treat autoimmune diseases. Blood 112(9):3543–3553

Wu CH, Lee FK, Suresh Kumar S, Ling QD, Chang Y, Wang HC, Chen H, Chen DC, Hsu ST, Higuchi A (2012) The isolation and differentiation of human adipose-derived stem cells using membrane filtration. Biomaterials 33(33):8228–8239

Yuan SH, Martin J, Elia J, Flippin J, Paramban RI, Hefferan MP, Vidal JG, Mu Y, Killian RL, Israel MA et al (2011) Cell-surface marker signatures for the isolation of neural stem cells, glia and neurons derived from human pluripotent stem cells. PLoS One 6(3):e17540

Index

M. Al-Rubeai, M. Naciri (eds.), *Stem Cells and Cell Therapy*, Cell Engineering 8,
DOI 10.1007/978-94-007-7196-3, © Springer Science+Business Media Dordrecht 2014